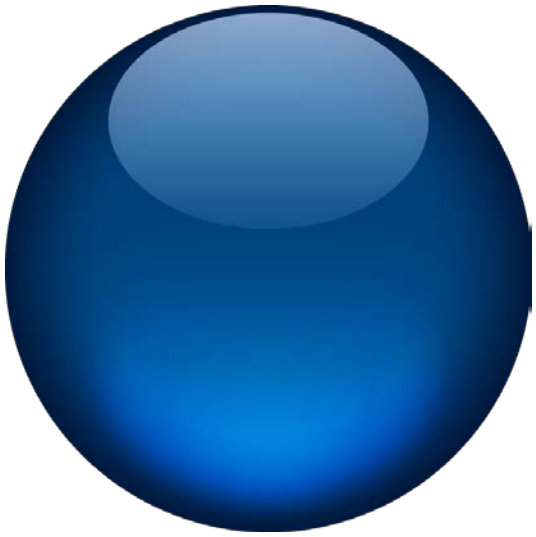


GECDIS v8

User's Manual

IXBLUE
DEEP INSIGHT. SHARPER SENSES.

Revision History

Identification	Ed.	Date	Products release	Note
ISD M 038 A EN	A	12/07/2013	Gecdis v8	ECDIS software user manual
ISD M 038F EN	B	01/01/2013	Gecdis v8	Appendix D rewrited.
ISD M 038F EN	C	11/12/2013	Gecdis v8	Update of the backup / restore documentation
ISD M 038 D EN	D	24/01/2014	Gecdis v8.1.3	Application of the iXBlue charter. Addition of chapters VIII to XIX.
ISD M 038 E EN	E	19/03/2014	Gecdis 8.2.1	Update of chapters I.3.1, I.4.2 and II Addition of chapter I.4.6
ISD M 038 F EN	F	24/06/2014	Gecdis 8.3.1	Update of sections: I.3, I.4.6, V.2.12.4, V.2.13, VII.1, VII.3.1, VIII.3.1 Update of appendices: B.2, E.
ISD M 038 G EN	G	17/09/2014	Gecdis 8.4.1	Addition of section V.2.15 Universal Polar Stereographic Projection. Update of Import bathy - Section XIII.3 Seapix Update - Chapter XVIII Addition of Biomass menu - chapter XVII

Copyright

All rights reserved. No part of this manual may be reproduced or transmitted, in any form or by any means, whether electronic, printed manual or otherwise, including but not limited to photocopying, recording or information storage and retrieval systems, for any purpose without prior written permission of iXBlue.

Disclaimer

iXBlue specifically disclaims all warranties, either expressed or implied, included but not limited to implied warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose with respect to this product and documentation. iXBlue reserves the right to revise or make changes or improvements to this product or documentation at any time without notify any person of such revision or improvements.

In no event shall iXBlue be liable for any consequential or incidental damages, including but not limited to loss of business profits or any commercial damages, arising out of the use of this product.

Trademarks

Microsoft, MS-DOS and Windows are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Intel and Pentium are registered trademarks and Celeron is a trademark of Intel Corporation.

Software license agreement

PLEASE READ THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE INSTALLING OR USING THE SOFTWARE.

BY CLICKING ON THE "ACCEPT" BUTTON, INSTALLING THE SOFTWARE, OR USING THE SOFTWARE, YOU ARE CONSENTING TO BE BOUND BY THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ALL OF THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, CLICK THE "DO NOT ACCEPT" BUTTON AND THE INSTALLATION PROCESS WILL NOT CONTINUE, RETURN THE PRODUCT TO THE PLACE OF PURCHASE FOR A FULL REFUND.

Grant of license

iXBlue grants you a nonexclusive and nontransferable license to use the enclosed iXBlue software in the manner provided below:

- the number of software users depends on the licenses agreed by iXBlue. The user is able to connect with a security key provided by iXBlue for use on a single computer;
- you may couple multiple iXBlue licenses on a single computer;
- you may make up to two (2) copies of the software for archival or backup purposes, provided that you reproduce proprietary notices.

Restrictions

- You shall not share by any means, other than by agreement with iXBlue, the software licenses between multiple computers.
- You shall not copy the software except as set forth in the section above. Any copy of the software that you make must contain the same copyright and other proprietary notices that appear on or in the software.
- You shall not modify, adapt or translate the software. You shall not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to modify or discover the source code of the software.
- You shall not install, neither operate the software on virtual machines.
- You shall not, rent, lease, sublicense, assign or transfer your rights in the software without prior written authorization from iXBlue.

Copyright

The software (including any images, animations and text incorporated into the software) is owned by iXBlue and protected by copyright laws and international treaty provisions.

Maintenance / Data update

iXBlue offers software maintenance during the warranty period. This maintenance includes the delivery of minor documentary and software licenses. The major or intermediary updates are not included and shall be dealt with in a separate agreement. If the software supplied under license is an updated version, the licensee will only be allowed to use the software in order to replace versions of the same software previously and duly acquired under license.

Extended Maintenance

Extended **M**aintenance **A**greements – E.M.A. – may be purchased to extend the product maintenance after the warranty period. An E.M.A. shall be applied to every software license that will be maintained and upgraded.

Technical support

Technical support is available free of charge during the warranty period:

- On iXBlue website: http://www.ixblue.com/contact-ixblue-support-representative
- By dedicated e-mail box: seaxpert.support@ixblue.com
- By hotline: +33 1 30 08 97 11, available Monday to Friday, 09.00 – 17.00

Price

The price comprises the main product together with accessories: grant of license and accrued expenses (as referred to in the order, contract, or in the manufacturer or supplier price list).

The user license is considered to be granted when iXBlue acknowledges reception of the whole price paid by the Buyer. Payment is made by means of a secure electronic payment system or by any other means authorized by iXBlue.

iXBlue will notify reception of payment by electronic mail.

Termination

In case of non-payment and/or non-respect of the present terms, all rights of the license and the use of software will be terminated, without prejudice to any legal action iXBlue may carry out against the defaulting party.

The Buyer will be obliged, at its own expense and risk, to return to iXBlue all copies of the software under license in its possession together with physical protection keys, or to confirm in writing that all software copies under license in its possession have been destroyed.

iXBlue reserves the right to proceed to all the necessary verifications in order to be assured of the buyer's observance of the aforementioned conditions.

Out-of-court settlement, choice of jurisdiction

Both parties will do their utmost to bring an end to disputes relative to the interpretation and/or the execution of this document by settling an agreement between their respective management. If an agreement has not been reached within three months, the dispute will be decided by the Paris tribunal jurisdiction.

Limited Warranty

Warranty period

iXBlue guarantees that the software will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of twelve (12) months from the date of shipment.

Customer Remedies

iXBlue's entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at iXBlue's option, repair or replacement of the software that does not meet iXBlue's Limited Warranty. Warranty service is F.O.B. iXBlue France. All shipping and insurance costs to iXBlue are paid for by the buyer; shipping and insurance costs returning to the buyer will be paid for by iXBlue.

On-site Customer Service and Warranty Repair may be provided by iXBlue, at its own discretion. Travel and accommodation (including travel hours, transportation, lodging and meals) will be charged by iXBlue to the Buyer at cost plus ten (10) per cent. However, actual labor hours to provide this service or repair will be free of charge to the Buyer. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the software or hardware has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement software or hardware will be guaranteed for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer.

Limitations

iXBlue makes no other warranties than the above limited warranties. iXBlue makes no warranties, expressed, implied, statutory, or in any communication with you, and iXBlue specifically disclaims any implied warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. iXBlue does not warrant that the operation of the program will be uninterrupted or error free. The buyer agrees that the responsibility, without tort liability, or the responsibility related to the warranty shall not exceed the price paid for the acquisition of the product.

Liability

To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, in no event shall iXBlue be liable for any damages whatsoever (including, without limitation, damages for loss of business profits, business interruption, loss of business information, or any other pecuniary loss) arising out of the use of or inability to use this iXBlue product, even if iXBlue has been advised of the possibility of such damages.

This application program is only to be used in order to help optimize fishing and shall not exempt the skipper of his responsibilities in terms of navigation security and respect for law enforcement.

Dongles

iXBlue will not replace lost dongles free of charge, neither offer discounted pricing terms for replacement dongles.

iXBlue strongly recommends that you insure your iXBlue products against loss, theft or damage where applicable.

iXBlue will propose the replacement of damaged dongles only for a limited fee, provided that the damaged dongle units are returned to iXBlue. All shipping and insurance costs are paid for by the buyer.

Text Usage

Bold	Bold text is used for items you must select or click in the software. It is also used for the field names used into the dialog box.
Courier	Text in this font denotes text or characters that you should enter from the keyboard, the proper names of disk Drives, paths, directories, programs, functions, filenames and extensions.
Italic	Italic text is the result of an action in the procedures.

Icons

The **Note** icon indicates that the following information is of particular interest and should be read with care.

Important

THE **IMPORTANT** MENTION INDICATES THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION SHOULD BE READ TO FORBID OR PREVENT A PRODUCT DYSFUNCTION OR A FAULTY OPERATION OF THE EQUIPMENT.

The **Caution** icon indicates that the following information should be read to forbid or prevent product damage.

The **Warning** icon indicates that possible personal injury or death could result from failure to follow the provided recommendation.

Table of Contents

I GETTING STARTED 1
I.1 WELCOME 1
I.1.1 Requested Configuration 1
I.1.1.1 Computer 1
I.1.1.2 Screen 2
I.1.2 Installation/uninstallation 2
I.1.3 Launching and Closing Gecdis 4
I.2 HOW TO USE THE EQUIPMENT 6
I.2.1 The Keyboard Shortcuts 6
I.2.1.1 Gecdis Standard Shortcuts: 6
I.2.2 Entering Texts 8
I.2.2.1 Geographic Editor 9
I.2.3 The Mouse 9
I.3 GECDIS OVERVIEW 10
I.3.1 The Screen 10
I.3.1.1 The Main View 10
I.3.1.2 The Menu Bar 11
I.3.1.3 Title Bars 12
I.3.1.4 Status Bar 12
I.3.1.5 Toolbars 13
I.3.1.6 Information Windows 13
I.3.1.7 Secondary Windows 15
I.3.1.8 Information about Chart/Cell 16
I.3.1.9 Pop-up Menus 16
I.3.1.10 Dialog Boxes 17
I.3.2 The Cursor 17
I.3.3 Using Views 18
I.3.4 Accessing Commands 18
I.4 IMPORTANT FEATURES TO KNOW 19
I.4.1 The Own Ship 19
I.4.2 ECDIS and ECS Modes 19
I.4.3 Man Over Board 20
I.4.4 Printing the Screen 21
I.4.5 The modules 21
I.4.6 Back-up 22
I.5 WHAT TO DO BEFORE DEPARTURE 23
I.5.1 Customizing 24
I.5.1.1 Configuring your Screen Size 24
I.5.1.2 Customizing Gecdis Screen 24
I.5.2 Checking 24
I.5.2.1 Datum 24
I.5.2.2 Sensors 24
I.5.2.3 Implementing Alarms 24
I.5.2.4 Route Management 24

I.5.2.5 Charts *25*
I.6 NAVIGATION TASKS **25**
I.6.1 Overview 25
I.6.2 Voyage Planning 25
I.6.2.1 Route Planning *25*
I.6.2.2 Route Calculation *26*
I.6.2.3 Chart Planning *26*
I.6.3 Positioning 26
I.6.3.1 Direct Positioning of Sensors *26*
I.6.3.2 Dead Reckoning Equipment *26*
I.6.3.3 Manual Correction *27*
I.6.4 Steering Modes 27
I.6.4.1 Hand Steering *27*
I.6.4.2 Trackpilot Steering *27*
I.6.4.3 Waypoint Approach Mode *27*
I.6.5 Monitoring 27
I.6.5.1 Display of Electronic Sea Chart *28*
I.6.5.2 Display of Conning Information *28*
I.6.5.3 Alarms *28*
I.6.5.4 Man over Board *28*
I.6.5.5 Data Logging *28*
II GENERAL CONFIGURATION 29
II.1 IDENTIFICATION 29
II.2 DISPLAY 29
II.2.1 Screen Size 30
II.2.2 Color Modes 30
II.2.3 Motion Control 31
II.3 CONFIGURING THE UNITS 32
II.4 THE DATUM 34
II.5 THE TOOLBAR 35
II.5.1 Inserting a New Button 35
II.5.2 Controls 36
II.6 ALARMS 37
II.7 THE USERS 38
II.7.1 Adding a User 38
II.7.2 Configuring Users' Rights 39
II.7.3 Opening a New Session 40
II.8 DANGER DETECTION 41
II.9 SYNCHRONIZATION 43
II.10 USER INTERFACE 45
II.10.1 Tooltips in chart views 46
II.10.2 General Parameters 47
II.10.2.1 Active Window *47*
II.10.2.2 TurboWin Mode *48*
II.11 THE INFORMATION WINDOWS 51

III GECDIS DISPLAY 54
III.1 THE SCALES 54
III.2 COLOR MODE 55
III.3 CENTRING ON A PLACE 57
III.4 CENTRING ON A MOBILE 59
III.4.1 On Own Ship 59
III.4.2 On Any Mobile 59
III.4.3 Motion Control 60
III.4.3.1 Relative and True Motion 60
III.4.3.2 Main view orientation 61
III.5 ALARMS 63
III.5.1 The Alarm Window 63
III.5.2 The Black Box 64
III.5.2.1 Overview 64
III.5.2.2 Configuring the Display of the Events 65
III.6 THE VIEW MENU 67
III.7 THE DISPLAY CONTEXT 69
IV MOBILES AND FLEETS 72
IV.1 NAVIGATION 72
IV.1.1 Mobiles' Vectors 72
IV.1.2 Apparent Wind and True Wind 73
IV.2 THE OWN SHIP 74
IV.2.1 Sizes 74
IV.2.2 Heights 75
IV.2.3 Navigation parameters 76
IV.3 THE MOBILES LIST 76
IV.4 ALARMS 78
IV.4.1 Own Ship Specific Alarms 78
IV.4.1.1 Anti-Collision 78
IV.4.1.2 Inconsistent Positions 79
IV.4.1.3 Inconsistent Depths 80
IV.4.2 Target/AIS alarms 81
IV.4.2.1 High speed 82
IV.4.2.2 AIS Detection 82
IV.4.2.3 AIS Message Filtering 84
IV.5 REPRESENTATION 84
IV.5.1 Defining a Mobile Appearance 84
IV.5.2 Standard Representation 87
IV.5.2.1 Own Ship 88
IV.5.2.2 AIS and ARPA Mobiles 88
IV.5.2.3 ARPA symbols 88
IV.5.2.4 AIS symbols 89
IV.5.2.5 Advanced 90
IV.5.3 Defining a Specific Appearance for a Mobile or a Fleet 90
IV.6 CONFIGURATION 94

IV.6.1 Information 94
IV.6.1.1 System Information 94
IV.6.1.2 Mobiles' Information 97
IV.6.2 Streams 100
IV.6.2.1 Adding and Configuring a Communication Port 100
IV.6.2.2 Adding and Configuring a NET stream 101
IV.6.2.3 Adding and Configuring a FILE Stream 105
IV.6.2.4 Spying Input and Output Data 106
IV.6.2.5 Transmitting Sentences via a Stream 107
IV.6.2.6 Checking Transmitted Sentences 109
IV.6.3 Creating Mobiles and Fleets 109
IV.6.4 Assigning Information to a Mobile 111
IV.6.5 Configuring Information 112
IV.6.5.1 Source Tab 112
IV.6.5.2 Checking Tab 113
IV.6.5.3 Corrections Tab 114
IV.6.5.4 Filtering Tab 115
IV.6.6 Inheriting Information 116
IV.6.7 Sensor Synthesis 117
IV.6.7.1 Synthesis in Basic and Advanced Modes 117
IV.6.7.2 Displaying Real-Time Information 118
IV.6.7.3 Printing the Summary Window 119
IV.7 DEAD RECKONING 120
IV.8 FIX POSITION 121
IV.8.1 Fixing Position 121
IV.8.2 Display of Fix Positions 121
IV.8.3 Fix Position Settings 121
V CHARTS 122
V.1 CHART CATALOGUE 122
V.1.1 Displaying the Chart Coverage 122
V.1.2 List of Charts 123
V.1.3 Filtering Charts 124
V.1.4 Displaying the Planisphere in Background 125
V.2 ENC CHARTS (IXBLUE FORMAT) 126
V.2.1 Introduction 126
V.2.1.1 Launching the ENC Module 127
V.2.1.2 Default Configuration 127
V.2.2 Chart Database Presentation 128
V.2.3 Managing the Chart Database 129
V.2.3.1 Importing a Set of Encrypted ENC Cells 129
V.2.3.2 Importing a Catalog of non Encrypted ENC Cells 130
V.2.3.3 Importing One or Several ENC Cells 131
V.2.4 Getting an Import Report 132
V.2.5 Getting Information on the Cells 133
V.2.6 Resetting the Database 133

V.2.7 Centring the Chart Area on a Cell 134
V.2.8 Importing/Deleting User Permits 134
V.2.9 Loading Certificates 136
V.2.10 Chart Loading Modes 136
V.2.11 Updating 138
V.2.11.1 Semi-Automatic Updating 138
V.2.11.2 Manual Updating 139
V.2.12 Chart Presentation 145
V.2.12.1 Simplified and Traditional Display 145
V.2.12.2 Detail Level of Chart Objects 146
V.2.12.3 The Presentation Library 148
V.2.12.4 Security Options 149
V.2.13 Danger Detection or Anti-Grounding 152
V.2.14 Consulting Information on an Object 155
V.2.14.1 Consulting Information on a Cell 156
V.2.15 Universal Polar Stereographic Projection 157
V.3 ARCS CHARTS 162
V.3.1 ARCS Overview 162
V.3.1.1 Introduction 162
V.3.1.2 Registering ARCS Charts 162
V.3.1.3 Launching ARCS Module 163
V.3.2 Charts 166
V.3.2.1 The Chart Database 166
V.3.2.2 Installing/Uninstalling Charts 167
V.3.2.3 Updating Charts 168
V.3.2.4 Using ARCS Charts 170
V.3.3 Consulting Information about Charts 170
V.3.3.1 Chart General Information 170
V.3.3.2 Mariner's Notes 172
VI NAVIGATION 174
VI.1 BEARING LINES AND BEARING RANGE LINES 174
VI.2 CLEARING LINES 175
VI.3 GEOGRAPHIC CALCULATIONS 177
VI.4 PILOTING FIX 179
VI.4.1 Overview 179
VI.4.2 Using Piloting Fix 180
VI.5 SAR DIAGRAMS 182
VI.5.1 Overview 182
VI.5.2 Square Spiral Route 183
VI.5.3 Sector Route 184
VI.5.4 Parallel Route 185
VII USER OBJECTS 188
VII.1 DATABASES AND FOLDERS 188
VII.2 MANAGING USER OBJECTS 189
VII.2.1 General Operation on User Objects 189

VII.2.2 List of User Objects 189
VII.2.3 Configuring the Filters 190
VII.2.4 Importing User Objects 190
VII.2.4.1 TurboWin/Turbo2000 Import 191
VII.2.4.2 Gecdis Import 191
VII.2.4.3 Turbo Tactic Import 192
VII.2.4.4 MaxSea Import 192
VII.2.4.5 QuodFish Import 192
VII.2.5 Exporting a User Object 193
VII.3 ROUTES 194
VII.3.1 Creating a Route 194
VII.3.2 Route Properties 196
VII.3.2.1 Route Fields 196
VII.3.2.2 Waypoints Fields 196
VII.3.2.3 The toolbar Commands 197
VII.3.3 Planning a Route 199
VII.3.4 Duplicating a Route 200
VII.3.5 Representation of a Route 200
VII.3.5.1 Alternative Route 201
VII.3.5.2 Planned Route 201
VII.3.5.3 Alternative Route that is Highlighted 201
VII.3.5.4 Planned Route that is Highlighted 202
VII.3.6 Switching in Route Monitoring 202
VII.3.7 The Pilot View 203
VII.3.8 Autopilot Control 204
VII.3.9 The channel View 206
VII.3.10 Channelling 207
VII.3.11 Importing/Exporting Routes 207
VII.4 TRACKS 209
VII.4.1 Starting/Stopping a Track 209
VII.4.2 Track Templates 209
VII.4.3 Track Color Filters 210
VII.4.4 Displaying the Track Profile 211
VII.4.5 Changing the Track Properties 212
VII.5 MARKS AND EVENTS 212
VII.5.1 Creating Marks 212
VII.5.2 Configuring Mark Display Options 215
VII.6 AREAS 216
VII.7 CIRCLES AND SECTORS 218
VII.8 TEXT 219
VIII THE RADAR MODULE 221
VIII.1 CONFIGURING THE RADAR SOURCE 221
VIII.2 TURNING THE RADAR ON/OFF 221
VIII.3 CONFIGURING INFORMATION OF THE RADAR SOURCE 222

VIII.4 CUSTOMIZING RADAR DATA DISPLAY 228
VIII.4.1 Choosing the Colors 228
VIII.4.2 Adjusting the display in the view 229
VIII.4.3 Controlling Radar Data Display 229
VIII.4.4 Optimizing the Radar Video Display 230
IX REPLAY MODULE 232
IX.1 CONFIGURING/LAUNCHING THE REPLAY MODULE 232
X TIDE MODULE 234
X.1 CONSULTING TIDAL GAUGES AND TIDAL STREAMS 234
X.2 TIDAL CURVES 235
X.3 CONFIGURING THE TIDAL STREAM DISPLAY 237
X.4 CONTROL OF TIDAL STREAM DATE 238
X.5 REFERENCE STATION 240
X.6 SHIP 'HEIGHT OF TIDE' INFORMATION 240
XI WEATHER MODULE 242
XI.1 DATA DOWNLOAD 242
XI.2 PRESSURE 242
XI.3 WIND 244
XII SEDIMENTS MODULE 245
XII.1 DISPLAY 245
XII.2 CONFIGURATION 245
XIII BATHYMETRY MODULE 248
XIII.1 DISPLAY CONFIGURATION 249
XIII.2 BATHYMETRY DATA TO DISPLAY 250
XIII.3 DATABASE 250
XIV 3D VIEW 254
XIV.1 REPRESENTATION OF 3D VIEW 254
XIV.2 3D TOOLS 255
XV WASSP 257
XV.1 INTRODUCTION 257
XV.2 CONFIGURING AND USING WASSP WITH SEAXPERT 257
XV.2.1 Creating a stream dedicated to Wassp data 257
XV.3 CONFIGURING WASSP MODULE 258
XV.4 CONFIGURING BATHYMETRY AND SEDIMENT MODULES 259
XV.4.1 Bathymetry Module (when available) 259
XV.4.2 Sediment Module (when available) 260
XV.5 USING WASSP MOBILE 260
XVI SIMRAD ES70 264
XVI.1 CONFIGURING THE INPUT STREAM 264
XVI.2 USING THE SIMRAD MODULE 265
XVII BIOMASS MODULE 268
XVII.1.1 Introduction 268

XVII.1.2 Biomass Display 269

XVIII SEAPIX MODULE 271

XVIII.1 INTRODUCTION 271

XVIII.2 CONFIGURATION 273

XVIII.2.1 Creating a Stream Dedicated to SeapiX Communication 273

XVIII.2.2 Configuring SeapiX Module 273

XVIII.2.2.1 Step 1: Stream Configuration 273

XVIII.2.2.2 Step 2: Installation Configuration 274

XVIII.2.2.3 Step 3: Database Configuration 274

XVIII.2.2.4 Step 4: Check SeapiX Mobile Availability 274

XVIII.2.3 Configuring Bathymetry and Sediment Modules 275

XVIII.2.3.1 Bathymetry Module 275

XVIII.2.3.2 Sediment Module (when available) 275

XVIII.3 USING SEAPIX 276

XVIII.3.1 Overview of SeapiX Fire Modes 276

XVIII.3.2 SeapiX Menu and Dedicated Toolbars 277

XVIII.3.3 Start sounder acquisition 279

XVIII.3.4 Use Echogram View 280

XVIII.3.4.1 Echogram Construction Angle 280

XVIII.3.4.2 Echogram Display 281

XVIII.3.5 Record and Display Seabed Data in Real Time 282

XVIII.3.6 Recording Options 284

XVIII.3.6.1 Overlap Management in Real Time Database 284

XVIII.3.6.2 Height of Tide Correction 284

XIX STATISTICS MODULE 285

XX CABLE AND PIPELINE MANAGEMENT MODULE 287

XX.1 PRESENTATION 287

XX.1.1 Provided Functions 287

XX.1.1.1 SML Management Database 287

XX.1.1.2 Bathymetric Data Management 287

XX.1.2 Functions not Included (as compared to MMS-DOS version) 288

XX.2 IMPLEMENTATION 288

XX.2.1 UTM Management 288

XX.2.2 SML Database Management 289

XX.2.2.1 General Overview of Access to Functions 289

XX.2.2.2 Library Management 290

XX.2.2.3 Cable Link and Pipeline Selection 291

XX.2.2.4 Displaying Items Rules 292

XX.2.2.5 Querying 293

XX.2.2.6 SML Properties Window 294

XX.2.2.7 SML creation 306

XX.2.2.8 SML removing 306

XX.2.2.9 SML shifting 306

XX.2.2.10 SML export 307

XX.2.2.11 SML import 307

XX.2.3 Bathymetric data management 308

XX.3 DEFINITIONS 308

IXBLUE CONTACT - SUPPORT 24/7 CUSTOMER SUPPORT HELPLINE 309

IXBLUE CONTACT - SALES 310

APPENDICES 311

A GLOSSARY 311

B ECDIS INFORMATION MANDATORY 320

B.1 Links Table 320

B.2 Applied Standards 320

C THE PRESENTATION LIBRARY, CHART 1 321

C.1 Information about the Chart Display (A, B) 321

C.2 Natural and Man-Made Features (C, D, E) 322

C.3 Port Features (F) 322

C.4 Depths, Currents, etc.(H, I) 323

C.5 Seabed, Obstructions, Pipelines, etc. (J, K, L) 323

C.6 Traffic Routes (M) 324

C.7 Special Areas (N) 324

C.8 Aids and Services (P, R, S, T, U) 325

C.9 Buoys and Beacons (Q) 325

C.10 Topmarks (Q) 326

C.11 Color Test Diagram 326

D EQUIPMENT THAT CAN BE INTERFACED WITH GECDIS 327

D.1 List of NMEA Sentences Used 327

D.2 List of binary AIS Messages Used 328

D.3 Fleet: Mobile, Buoy, Target 329

D.3.1 Summary Table 329

D.3.2 NMEA Information Table 330

D.3.3 AIS-VDM Complementary Information Table 330

D.3.4 IXMIoFormatEx Module Information Table 330

D.4 System, Own Ship and Trawl Net 331

D.4.1 System Information 332

D.4.2 Own Ship System Information 332

D.4.3 Own Ship Information 333

D.4.4 Trawl Net Information 335

D.4.5 GEONET Trawl Net 335

E SHIP OUTLINE 338

I GETTING STARTED

For simplicity in this manual, the term Gecdis is used as a generic name to identify the name of the software, which has several product name: SeaXpert, Gecdis-C, SeaPix.

I.1 Welcome

Gecdis is a navigational aid system with a geographic information system, working on standard computers fitted with Windows® XP, Windows® Vista or Windows® Seven.

Navigational aid is given by displaying electronic charts, on which information from the ship equipment and sensors connected to Gecdis are shown, such as: GPS, gyrocompass or depth-sounder navigation tools.

Gecdis fits IMO regulations for cartographical data storage (SP52) and their displaying (SP57).

Gecdis is fitted with in-line and independent tools, allowing system customization according to three levels: the ship's equipment, the user and his practices, hierarchy and access rights.

Furthermore, Gecdis provides independent back-up arrangements to ensure safe navigation in case of a failure. So if your machine suddenly malfunctions, the parameters the equipment does not need to be reinitialized manually, and operator settings, do not change.

I.1.1 REQUESTED CONFIGURATION

I.1.1.1 Computer

Component	Minimum request / advisable
Operating system	Windows® XP, Windows® Vista or Windows® Seven
Processor	Intel Pentium 4 or more
RAM	1GB
Hard disk	1GB (10GB advisable)
CD/DVD drive	One unit for installation
Pointing device	Mouse or Trackball
Input device	Keyboard
Video card	3D graphic card
USB port	One for HASP key
COM and NET ports	As many communication ports as connected devices

I.1.1.2 Screen

Gecdis has been designed to be used with one or several screens, a minimum of two is recommended.

Here are the necessary criteria of the screen to be consistent with the ECDIS standard:

- The operational display area of the chart presentation for route monitoring shall be at least 270 mm × 270 mm.
- For ECDIS back-up arrangements, the effective size of the chart presentation shall be not less than 250 mm × 250 mm or 250 mm diameter.
- Operational display equipment including multifunction displays (for example, conning displays) shall provide a minimum screen resolution of 1280 × 1024 pixels, or equivalent for a different aspect ratio, except where permitted or not required by the IMO, or when used for a single specific purpose (for example, speed log, echo-sounder).
- Display equipment intended to support the presentation of electronic chart information shall provide a maximum pixel pitch of 0,29 mm/m of nominal viewing distance (1 min of arc), for example, 0,36 mm at 1 237 mm viewing distance.

I.1.2 INSTALLATION/UNINSTALLATION

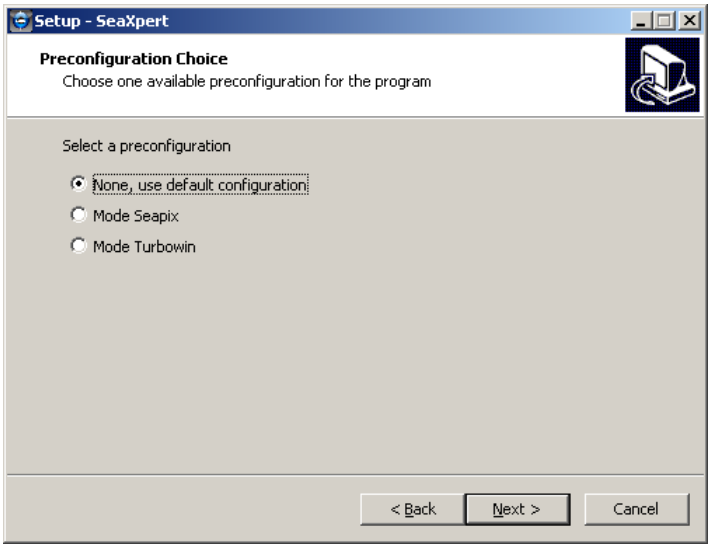
Figure 1 - CD-ROM AutoPlay Menu

To install Gecdis into your hard disk:

Step	Action
1.	Connect the HASP key on the USB port of your machine.
2.	If Windows asks you to install a new device, cancel the procedure, the pilot of the dongle will be installed with the installation of Gecdis.
3.	Put the iXBlue's CD-ROM into the appropriate drive.

Step	Action
4.	Select the first line of the autoplay menu (with product name reference), or if the installation does not start automatically, double-click on the `.exe` file in the setup folder.
5.	Select the language for installation.
6.	An install wizard guides you through the steps of Gecdis installation:

Setup - SeaXpert
Welcome to the SeaXpert Setup Wizard
This will install SeaXpert version 2.0.B1 on your computer.
It is recommended that you close all other applications before continuing.
Click Next to continue, or Cancel to exit Setup.
Next >
Cancel



Note: You can, if you want, use « Turbo Win » menus and shortcuts. To do so, check the option Turbowin Mode in the Wizard Preconfiguration Choice page. However we do not recommend using this mode. Indeed it has limits related to Gecdis interaction modalities. For those who are using TurboWin, it is only intended to help them use Gecdis ergonomics. See 0, page 48 for an overview of this mode.

7.	The CD-ROM content is then copied into your hard disk, and you can eject at the end of the procedure.
8.	End of procedure.

To uninstall Gecdis from your hard disk:

Step	Action
1.	Open Windows Control Panel.
2.	Select **Add/Remove Programs**.
3.	Select **Gecdis** in the list of programs and click **Uninstall**.
4.	An uninstallation wizard will guide you through the required steps.
5.	End of procedure.

I.1.3 LAUNCHING AND CLOSING GECDIS

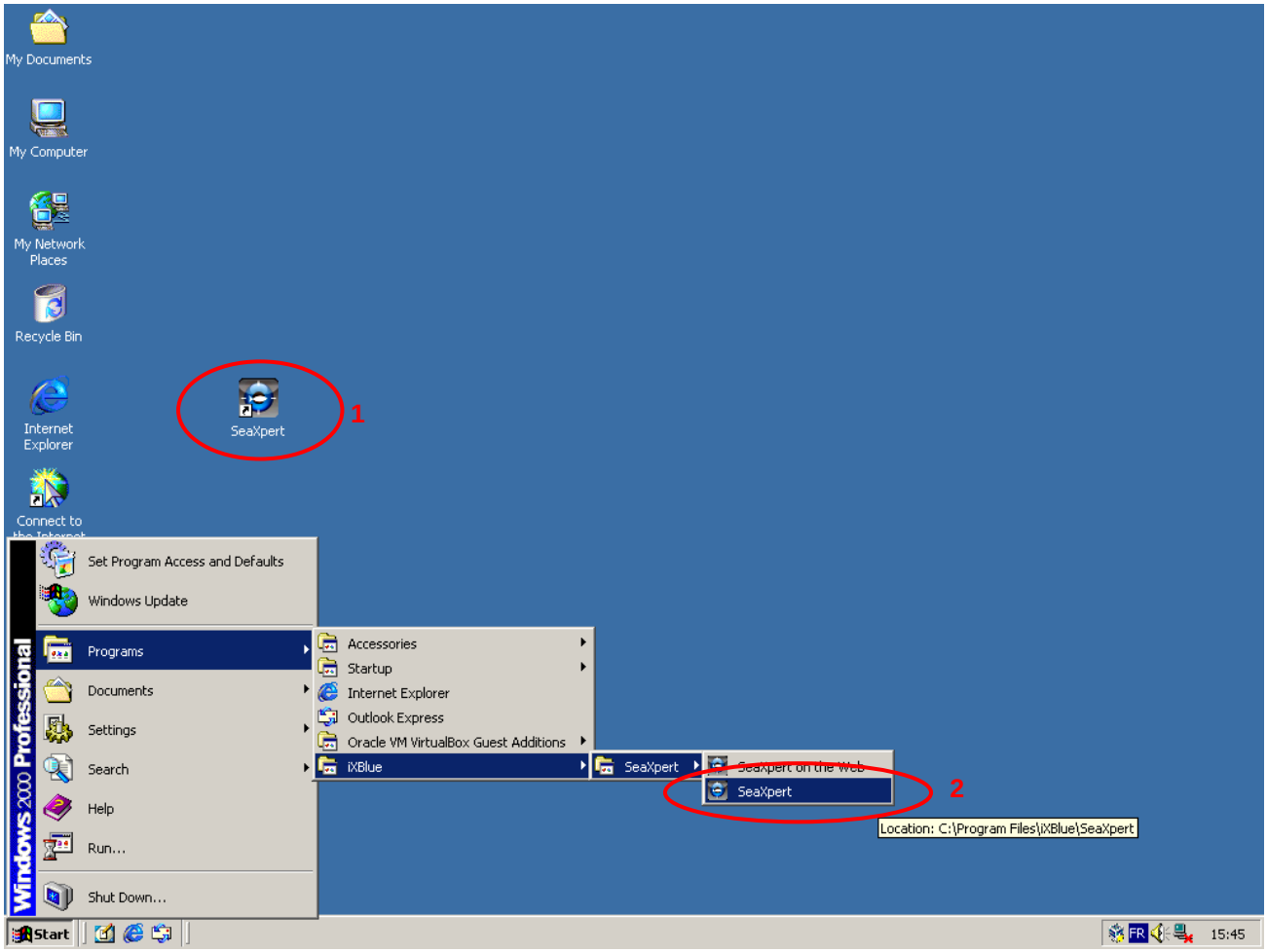


Figure 2 - Launching Gecdis

Gecdis launching and closing are quite typical of Windows® applications, but you must be sure to have connected the dongle software on the computer.

To launch Gecdis:

Step	Action
1.	On the desktop system, there is definitely a shortcut to launch Gecdis. Or otherwise, in the Windows® taskbar, click Start, Programs, iXBlue, then click the line corresponding to the product name (as SeaXpert, Gecdis-C...) to open the last menu and click again on the line product name. *The welcome dialog box opens.*
2.	In the list of the **User** field, select the user you want to log on and enter the password for this user in the **Password** field:
3.	Click **OK**. **Note**: At first start or if you have set a password or more users, you will identifier just after the splash screen to continue launching the software. Otherwise, the identification step is ignored.
4.	End of procedure.

To close Gecdis:

Step	Action
1.	Click **System** and then **Exit**. *A confirmation window is displayed.*
2.	Click **Yes**. **Note**: Before closing, the software saves all the parameters necessary to restart in the same state.
3.	End of procedure.

I.2 How to Use the Equipment

I.2.1 THE KEYBOARD SHORTCUTS

Shortcut keys offer you another way to accomplish common tasks. In many cases, shortcut keys help you to work faster. Using a shortcut key usually consists in pressing and holding one key while pressing a second key.

Important

Important

THE CONCEPT OF ACTIVE WINDOW IS IMPORTANT FOR MANAGING KEYBOARD SHORTCUTS, PARTICULARLY WITH DEAD RECKONING CONTROLS ON A MOBILE ARE INTERCEPTED ONLY BY THE MAIN VIEW.

SEE II.10.2.1, PAGE 47 TO CONFIGURE THE ACTIVE WINDOW.

I.2.1.1 Gecdis Standard Shortcuts:

The following is a list of the shortcut keys currently available in Gecdis. In the following keyboard picture, shortcuts numbers have been assigned to keys. Each number corresponds to a shortcut key combination.

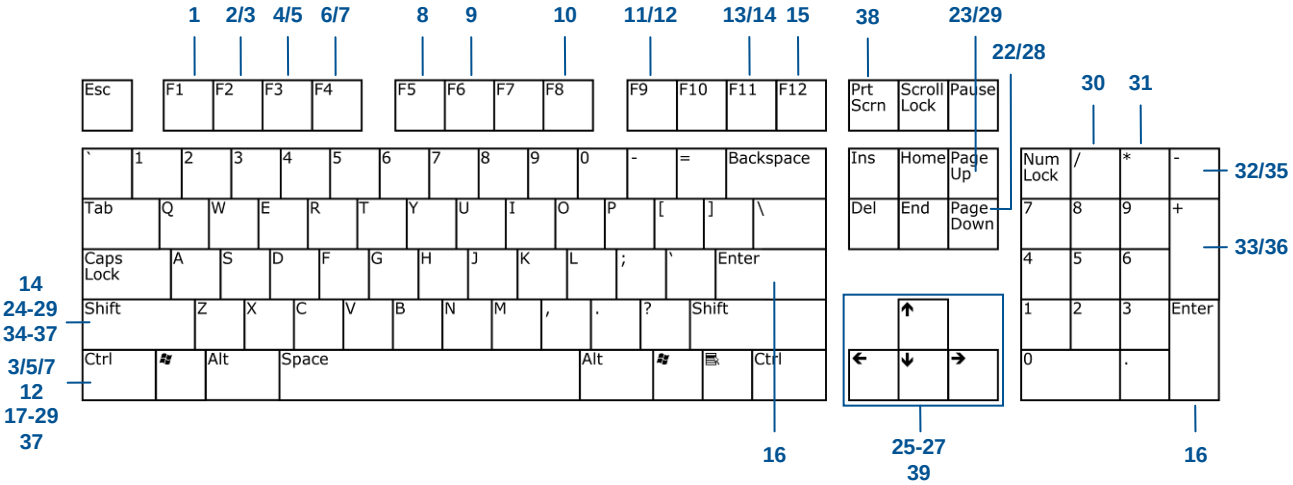


Figure 3 - Keyboard

Table 1 - Shortcuts

Nb	Press	To
1	F1	Access online help.
2	F2	Centre on Own Ship.
3	Ctrl + F2	Skip to relative motion mode.
4	F3	Zoom up.

Nb	Press	To
5	Ctrl + F3	Select the best scale.
6	F4	Zoom down.
7	Ctrl + F4	Close view that has focus (with the exception of the main view).
8	F5	Skip to North-up mode.
9	F6	Skip to Head-up mode.
10	F8	Create a Man Over Board event.
11	F9	Select the next color mode.
12	Ctrl + F9	Select the previous color mode.
13	F11	Acknowledge an alarm.
14	Shift + F11	Show/Hide the alarm menu.
15	F12	Maximize or restore the size of the main view.
16	Enter	Validate (left click).
17	Ctrl	Switch between mouse centre or chart consultation modes.
18	Ctrl + ↓	Reduce the mobile's[1] SOW[2].
19	Ctrl + ↑	Increase the mobile's1 SOW2.
20	Ctrl + ←	Reduce the mobile's1 COW2.
21	Ctrl + →	Increase the mobile's1 COW2.
22	Ctrl + Page Down	Reduce the mobile's1 depth2.
23	Ctrl + Page Up	Increase the mobile's1 depth2.
24	Ctrl + Shift + ↓	Reduce the mobile's1 drift speed2.
25	Ctrl + Shift + ↑	Increase the mobile's1 drift speed2.

[1] This mobile is one that is currently selected or the ownship if none is selected.

[2] Only if the information is configured on an estimated source.

Nb	Press	To
26	Ctrl + Shift + ←	Reduce the mobile's1 drift course2.
27	Ctrl + Shift + →	Increase the mobile's1 drift course2.
28	Ctrl + Shift + Page Down	Reduce the mobile's1 height of tide2.
29	Ctrl + Shift + Page Up	Increase the mobile's1 height of tide2.
30	/	Divide the zoom by 10.
31	*	Raise the zoom by 10.
32	-	Zoom down.
33	+	Zoom up.
34	Shift	Window zooms.
35	Shift + -	Reduce the window zoom.
36	Shift + +	Enlarge the window zoom.
37	Ctrl + Shift	Inverse the zoom window.
38	Print Screen SysRq	Print the main view.
39	← or → or ↑ or ↓	Move the mobile position of the relative motion.

I.2.2 ENTERING TEXTS

Text can be entered to define several elements:

- A position
- Numerical characters (heading, speed, distance, date)
- Free text

In some cases, text is entered "in a controlled way". So when a specific kind of character is to be entered, it is not possible to enter another one. For example, if the character should be a number, it is not possible to enter an alphabetical character. Likewise, while editing a heading, you will not be able to enter a value which is superior to 359.9°.

I.2.2.1 Geographic Editor

As this editor allows you to enter a position in any format, the validity of characters entered is not monitored in real time, but at the end of the entry.
The geographical editor is special because it has a button (with a cross) to use the mouse in a geographic view to set the new position.

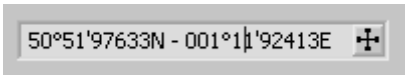


Figure 4 - Geographic editor

It also has a contextual menu to initialize the text in another format:

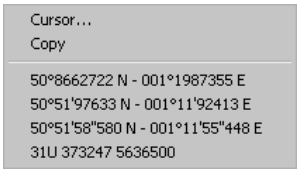


Figure 5 - Geographic editor contextual menu

I.2.3 THE MOUSE

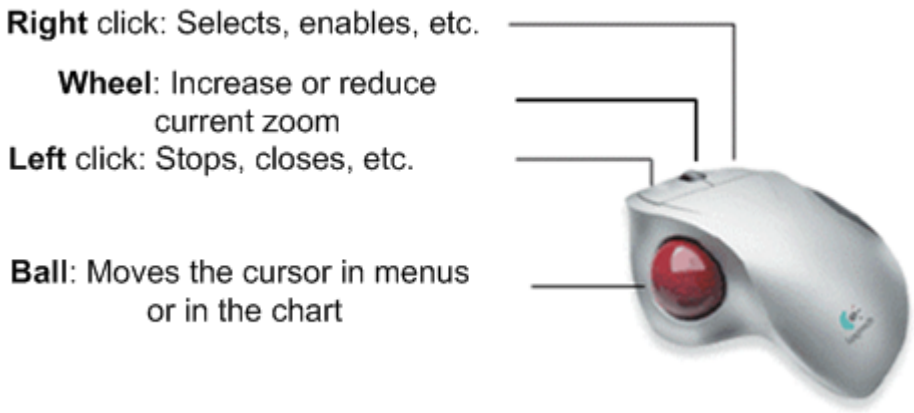

Right click: Selects, enables, etc.
Wheel: Increase or reduce current zoom
Left click: Stops, closes, etc.
Ball: Moves the cursor in menus or in the chart

Figure 6 - Using the Trackball

The mouse is a pointing device allowing you to operate almost any action on the software. It consists of a ball that allows moving the cursor on screen and two or three buttons, each of them having a specific use.

I.3 Gecdis Overview

I.3.1 THE SCREEN

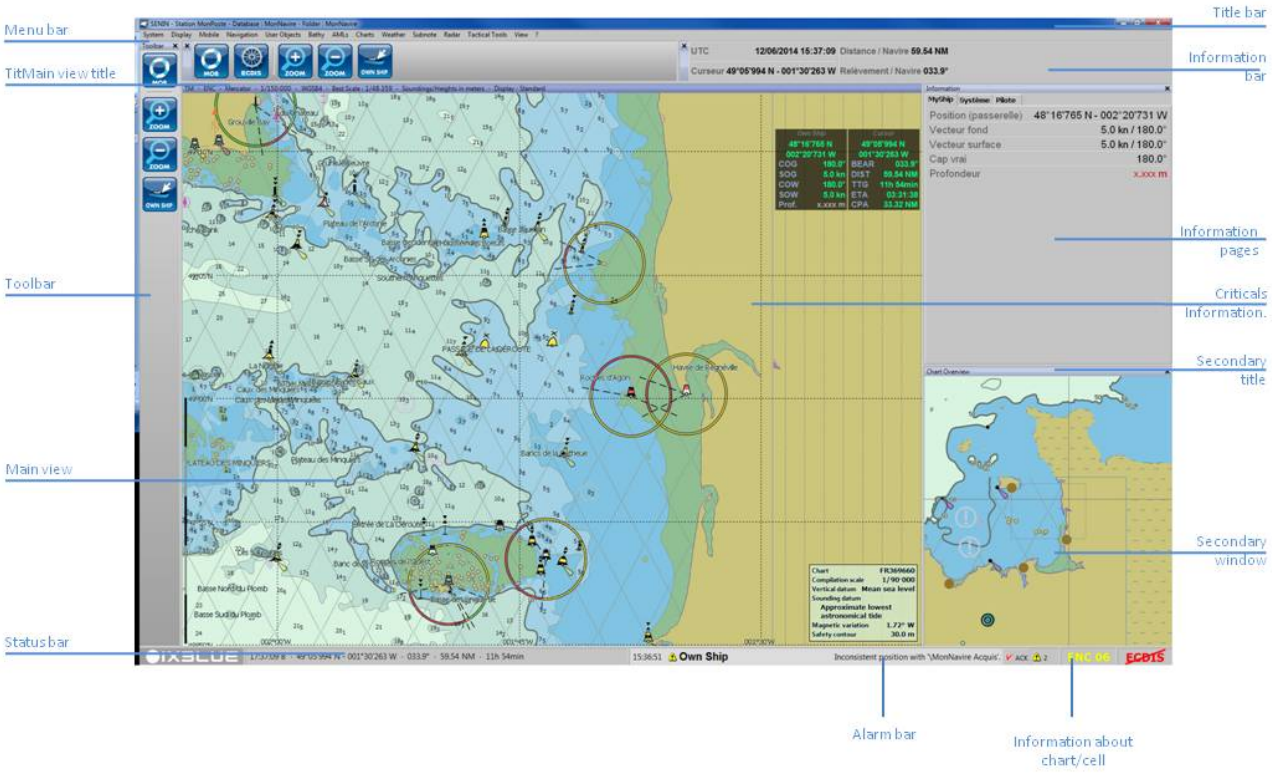


Figure 7 - The Workspace

Gecdis consists of several windows and bars:

- The main view
- The menu bar
- Title bars
- Toolbars
- Information windows
- Secondary windows (Chart Overview, Pilot, consultation, etc.)
- And other specific windows (Alarms, dialogs, information about charts/cells...)

I.3.1.1 The Main View

This is the area's largest map display application.

Allows displaying several layers of information the user can select (e.g.: chart, user objects, mobiles, radar data).

The main view enables to display several types of information layers that the user can select:

- Chart,
- User objects,

- Mobiles (ownship, target...), data provided by the sensors available onboard (radar, trawl system sensors...),
- Additional data provided by commercial databases (current, bathymetry, sediments, oceano...).

I.3.1.2 The Menu Bar

Gecdis is a Windows® based software containing different menus.

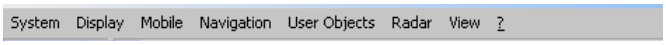


Figure 8 - The menu bar

Here is the list of the basic menus and their use. This list can increase depending on your options (Radar, Oceanography, etc.).

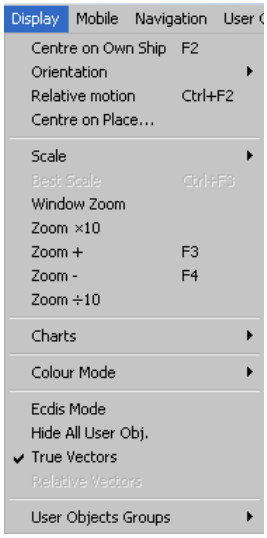


Figure 9 - An example menu - the Display menu

The Windows® type menu bar lists all software menus. A menu is a list of commands that have in common the action they allow to do. It consists of:

- Submenus allowing you to access another menu (example: Orientation). Those kinds of submenus are followed with an arrow;
- Commands allowing you to open dialog boxes (example: Centre on Place…). Those commands are followed with suspension points;
- Commands running directly an action (example: Ecdis Mode).

Selecting a command highlights it in blue. When it is not possible to use a command, this one is grayed (example: Best Scale).

The menu bar includes the following menus:

- System, mainly manages the configuration, print, user change and exit application.
- Display, allow you to use some ECDIS main functions (**zoom**, **colour modes**, etc).
- Mobile, manages the main controls for fleet of mobile.
- Navigation, manages navigation elements and autopilot.
- User Object, creates and manages the user objects.

- View, enables the display of the different windows on the screen and allows you to configure display contexts.
- ?, displays information about the software.

Some other menus may be added depending on the current Gecdis version. These menus are as follows:

- Radar allows you to use Gecdis as a radar
- Bathy allows you to configure and display the bathymetry. You can display a colored layer representing charted depth and also isolines
- **AMLs** presents the commands required to use additional data layers that have been designed to satisfy maritime defense requirements
- **Weather** allows you to display wind and pressure parameters at a particular day and time.
- Tide allows you to display and configure the display of tides.
- ...

Important

THE DISPLAY OF THE MENU BAR DEPENDS ON USER RIGHTS LOGGED ON, FOR EXAMPLE BY DEFAULT NAVIGATORS AND GUESTS USERS DO NOT HAVE ACCESS.

I.3.1.3 Title Bars

Each window or dialog box contains a title bar. Some of them display a title; others display several pieces of information that cannot be modified, which is the case for the title bar of the main view.

Figure 10 - Main view bar title

The pieces of information are as follows:

- The motion control type (TM or RM),
- The chart type (ENC, ARCS…),
- The projection,
- The scale,
- The datum,
- And possibly other information provided by the cartographic module.

I.3.1.4 Status Bar

This is an area at the bottom of the software window dedicated to the display of system information and waiting messages.

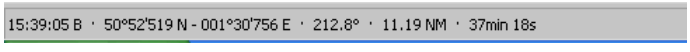


Figure 11 - The status bar

It is mainly composed with information in order:

- Local time (with time zone letter),
- Cursor position or screen center,
- Bearing Ownship-Cursor,
- Distance Ownship-Cursor,
- TTG Ownship-Cursor,

I.3.1.5 Toolbars

The toolbar serves as an easy-to-use interface for performing common functions. It enables you to speed up the implementation of specific actions by a single click on a button.

Figure 12 - Upper toolbar

There are 2 main toolbars:

- The upper toolbar (horizontal) with functions for navigation and security navigation,
- And the lateral toolbar (vertical) displaying the main functions for fishing operation and the access to optional expert modules.

As for specific requirements, the skipper (or the operator when installing the application) can create/modify the commands for each toolbar.

Important

WHEN THE MENU BAR IS NOT DISPLAYED (E.G.: IF A GUESTS-TYPED USER IS LOGGED ON), YOU CANNOT CLOSE THE TOOLBAR.

I.3.1.6 Information Windows

Critical information

The banner with critical information enables to display data types that have been previously selected. They are related to the ownship or to the cursor and are provided by the sensors or computed.

To display the critical information window, you must select the corresponding command in the View menu.

When a piece of information is not available (incorrect or nonexistent), the corresponding field is filled with red '?' character.

Information is displayed with different colors depending on their accurateness:

- High and normal quality information is displayed in green.
- Invalid information is displayed in red.
- Undefined information is displayed in gray.

Figure 13 - Critical information window

This information bar can be displayed either on the chart, or in the information bar in the right hand side of the screen. When displayed on the chart, you can move it to any position on the chart area with the mouse.

Important

IN ECDIS MODE, THIS WINDOW IS AUTOMATICALLY FORCED INTO THE RIGHT HAND SIDE OF THE SCREEN

The information bar

Allows you to display previously selected pieces of information that are computed or that come from sensors.

To display the information bar, you must select the corresponding command in the View menu.

You can superpose several bars, creating bars by themes (for example, one bar may stand for Own Ship's information and another one for information about a route that is monitored).

When a piece of information is not available (incorrect or nonexistent), the corresponding field is not filled in.

Pieces of information are displayed with different colors depending on their accurateness:

- High-quality pieces of information are displayed in blue (e.g.: a position acquired in differential mode)
- Normal quality pieces of information are displayed in black/white.
- Invalid pieces of information are displayed in red (e.g.: a piece of information whose acquisition maximum timeout is over).

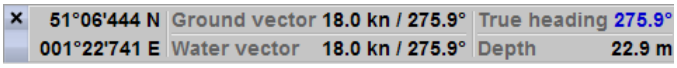


Figure 14 - Default information bar 1 (Ownship)

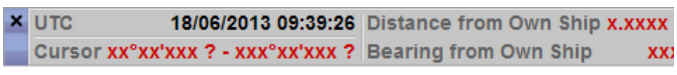


Figure 15 - Default information bar 2 (System)

To skip from a bar to another, click on it.

To configure a bar, right click on it and then click Customize… (see section II.11 page 51).

Information pages

Information pages allow you to display previously selected pieces of information in

another form than information bars.

To display information pages, you must select the corresponding command in the **View** menu.

Three tabs are present by default, each of them displaying pieces of information by theme: about the Own Ship, the system and route monitoring.

You can add or delete tabs and/or pieces of information to create themes. For this, right click on the window and click **Customize…** (see section II.11 page 51)

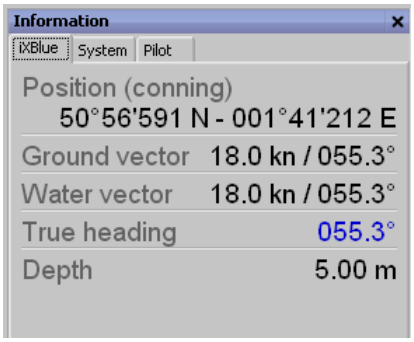


Figure 16 - Information pages

I.3.1.7 Secondary Windows

Secondary windows (General view, Channel view, Pilot View, etc.) correspond to a specific use of Gecdis. Their common characteristics are as follows:

- They can be displayed from the **View** menu, except the *Object information* window, which is displayed after selecting an object in the main view.
- By default they are docked (most of the time), i.e. they are "fixed" in a location of the screen that has been previously defined. They can be moved outside the area; then they are in floating mode and it is possible to resize them. You can also locate several views side by side or one above the other. In the latter case, the first view is displayed above the second one.
- They can be part of a display context. A display context is a configuration of the screen layout that contains, amongst other things, windows that have been previously selected by the user. You can save this configuration, to use and display it later (see III.7, page 69).

Object information windows

When selecting an object in the geographic view, a window is displayed on the right of the screen (by default). It can be moved outside the area by clicking on the white arrow tip .

In the upper part of the window, the selected object is described. In the lower part of the window there are buttons to perform different actions based on the selected object.

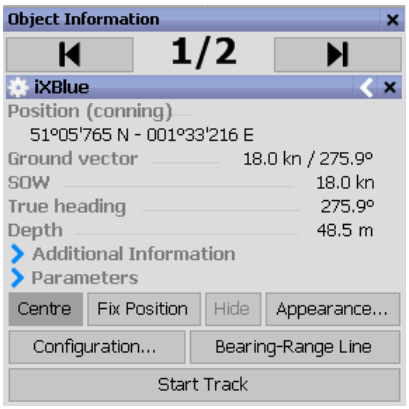


Figure 17 – Object information window

Those buttons are not identical; they depend on the selected object. For example a route will be the only object with an available button called **Planned Route**, this button allows to select the route as the one to be monitored.

List windows

The list windows (e.g., list of user objects) allow you to manage lists that are sorted out in a hierarchical way. Generally they consist of:

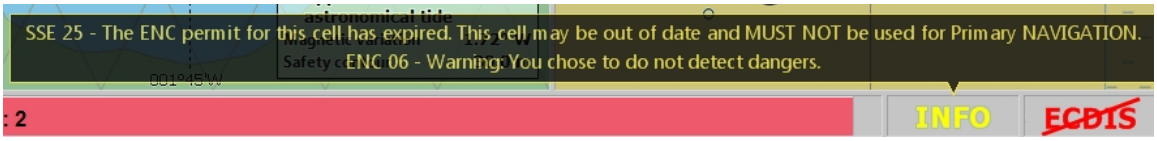
- A menu bar (above),
- A tree that gathers all the folders of the lists (on the left),
- The contents of the element which is selected in the tree.

The contents of these kinds of windows are more likely to fit across widthways. That is why they default below in the screen.

I.3.1.8 Information about Chart/Cell

Information about the chart and/or the cell can be found in the bottom right side of the screen:

- Click on this area to display the whole message:


SSE 25 - The ENC permit for this cell has expired. This cell may be out of date and MUST NOT be used for Primary NAVIGATION.
ENC 06 - Warning: You chose to do not detect dangers.
INFO
ECDIS

- Click again to close the whole message.

I.3.1.9 Pop-up Menus

A pop-up menu is a menu that appears on the screen when you right click, and whose options correspond to the current clicked object.

When you right click the main view on empty area, a pop-up menu displays; this menu includes some commands such as the ability to change user. Other pop-up menus can be displayed, depending on the part of the screen in which you have clicked (e.g., in the Channel window) or circumstances (right click on a selected user object).

I.3.1.10 Dialog Boxes

A dialog box is a specific area of the screen that is displayed after a user's action – when the user gives an order to the software that requires further information or to make choices between several options before running.

There are two kinds of dialog boxes:

- Modal dialog boxes (e.g.: System, Setting, General configuration…): this kind of dialog box requires that the user gives the adequate information before he can continue to work.
- Modeless dialog boxes (e.g.: Mobile, Own Ship Dead Reckoning…): this kind of dialog box is left open as long as the user does not close it; it can then be used several times for different purposes, because the user can work while this dialog box is open.

I.3.2 THE CURSOR

In main view, the cursor appears in different forms and reflects a current action:

ECS mode	ECDIS mode	Action
		Default mode, center with left click and consultation with right click.
		Chart consultation mode by pressing the Ctrl key.
		Object move in progress.
		Geographic scrolling in any direction by pressing the left mouse button.
		Geographic scrolling to the east (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).
		Geographic scrolling to the north (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).
		Geographic scrolling to the north-east (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).
		Geographic scrolling to the north-west (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).
		Geographic scrolling to the south (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).
		Geographic scrolling to the south-east (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).
		Geographic scrolling to the south-west (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).
		Geographic scrolling to the west (when the cursor is near the edge of the view).

ECS mode	ECDIS mode	Action
		Window zoom in by pressing Shift key.
		Zoom out by pressing [**Ctrl]+[Shift]** keys.

I.3.3 USING VIEWS

Gecdis screen includes three default locations for views and windows: above, on the right and below.

When you display a view or a window for the first time, it is located by default on one of these three locations.

You can then move and resize it in order to match with your needs (displaying specific views on specific locations).

You can locate two views side by side or one above the other. In the latter case, the first view is displayed above the second one.

This window management is handled by the display contexts in **View** menu (see III.7, page 69) and all positions of the windows are saved.

To move a view:

Step	Action
1.	Click the blue title bar of the view you want to move and drag it holding down the left button of the mouse.
2.	If you drag the view outside the location in which it should be docked; the view is displayed without icons, in floating mode. **Note**: If you move the location of a view and then you close it, the next time you will display it again it will be located on the new location.
3.	End of procedure.

I.3.4 ACCESSING COMMANDS

Gecdis is a Windows®-based software, and like any Windows®-based software, it allows you to access commands in different ways:

- In the menu bar.
- With Shortcuts.
- With the toolbars.
- With contextual menus.
- With context-sensitive buttons that appear on the right of the screen when you select an object.

- In the dialog boxes and windows.

I.4 Important Features to Know

I.4.1 The Own Ship

Own ship in Gecdis associated with one or more mobile. The Own Ship (with initial uppercase) is the main vessel and is the basis for many treatments (information relative to, alarms, route monitoring, man over board ...).

Several secondary vessels can be added, their goal is to represent other sources of information to compare to that of the main vessel (Own Ship). For example, the Own Ship can be acquired from a GPS and a secondary vessel can be estimated. In this example, if at a given time, the GPS fails, the user can reverse the ship and have therefore estimated Own Ship.

To differentiate vessels in views, the Own Ship is drawn in black/white, the secondary vessels in gray.

When launching Gecdis for the first time, the Own Ship is created with a set of information (position, SOG, COG, SOW, true heading, depth) configured on an automatic source. Generally to receive data, the stream where the sensors are connected must be added, configured and checked.

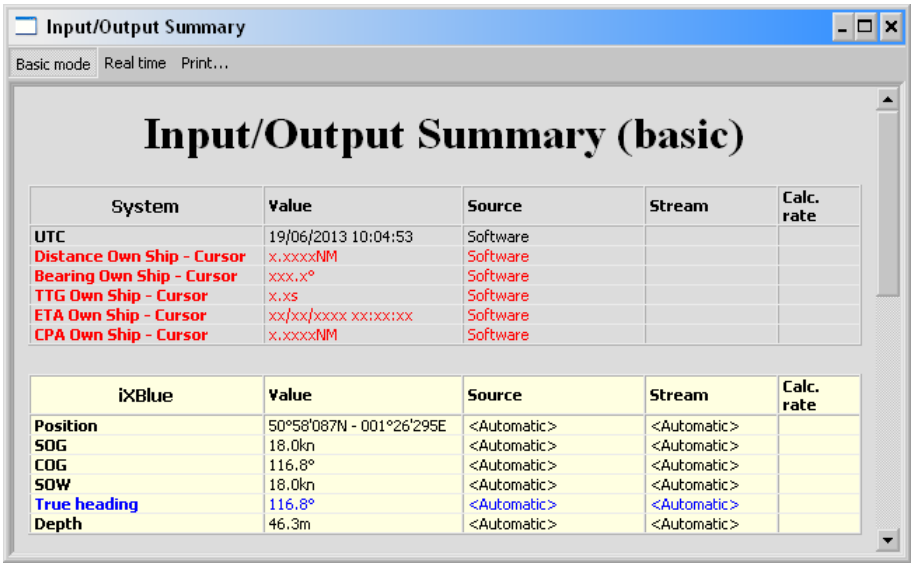


Figure 18 - Default Own Ship configuration

I.4.2 ECDIS and ECS Modes

By a single mouse click, Gecdis allows you to skip from ECS (Electronic Chart System), which is a non ECDIS mode, to ECDIS mode. For this, you can use the command in the **View** menu, or use the default button sets in the horizontal toolbar.

The status of ECDIS mode is given in the bottom left corner of the screen.

Figure 19- ECDIS mode selected

In this case, indication is displayed with green color

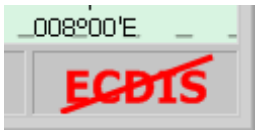


Figure 20- ECDIS mode not selected

In this case, indication is displayed with red color and the text is crossed out in red

When ECDIS option is not included in the license, no indication is given.

Switching to ECDIS mode brings several changes in the display of geographical views and several functionalities:

- If the current chart provider is not compliant ECDIS, no map data will be displayed.
- The cursor has the same shapes as those defined by the ECDIS (see I.3.2 page 17).
- The user objects follow ECDIS appearance: they are orange.
- The symbol of event objects is drawn with special icon (MOB for example).
- Some settings that relate to ships' appearances cannot be performed (see IV.5 page 117). So ship's appearance and the representation of its vectors, labels, etc. may be different.
- The critical information window is docked if it were floating on the main view (chart display mode only).
- The inconsistent position alarm is forced to activate if it was inactive.

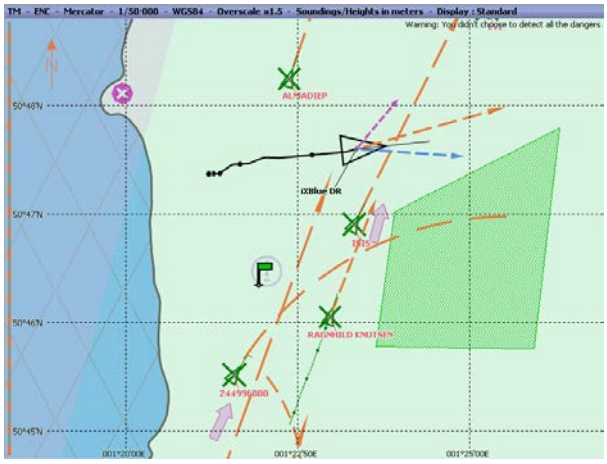


Figure 21- ECS mode

In this case, mobile appearance is non ECDIS, user objects have their own colors.

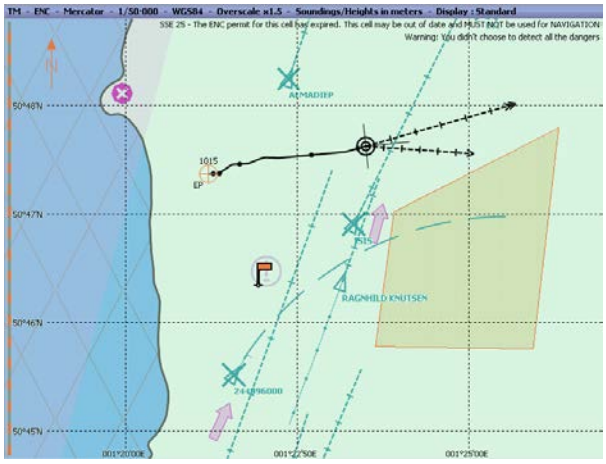


Figure 22- ECDIS mode

In this case, mobile appearance is ECDIS forced, and user objects are always drawn in orange.

I.4.3 MAN OVER BOARD

Man Over Board is a very important command in Gecdis.
This command is available in different ways:

- In the menu **Navigation** by selecting the first line **Man Over Board !**
- In the horizontal toolbar by default, there is an assigned button.

- With the shortcut [F8] key.

This command is not confirmed, a man overboard is created just after validation.

A visible symbol corresponding to the event is created at the Own Ship position and bearing-range line is added.

I.4.4 PRINTING THE SCREEN

Anytime, the software allows you to print the main view, as shown in the screen provided with mobiles and user objects. Everything outside the main view (views, bars, and even dialog boxes) does not appear in the printout.

This function is included in the **System** menu. For greater convenience, you could press the [Print Screen] key of your keyboard. This key allows you to access directly the Windows print dialog box.

The default orientation of the print is always fixed in landscape mode.

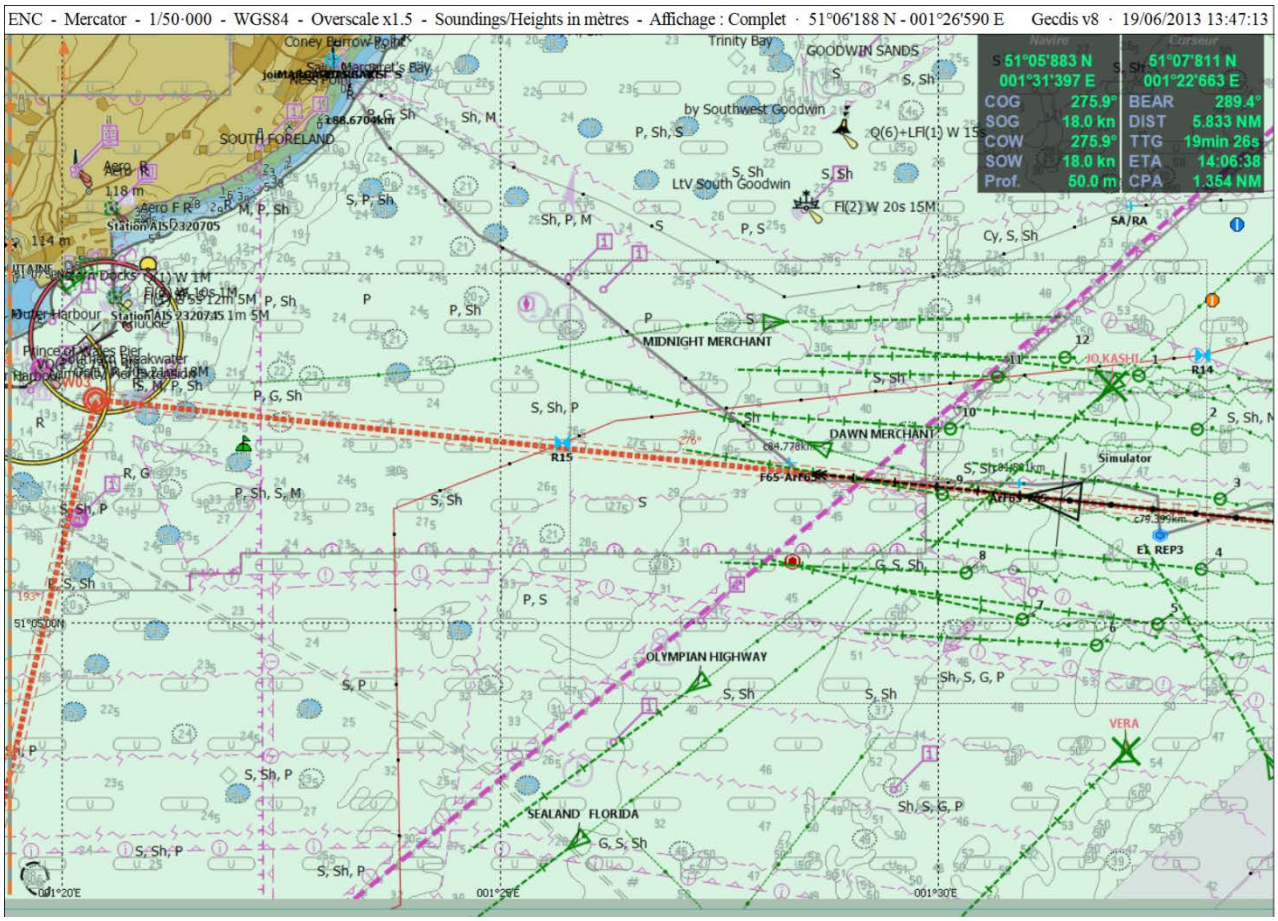


Figure 23 - Printing example

I.4.5 THE MODULES

It should be understood that Gecdis is modular software, i.e., that its features will be dependent on the number of installed and loaded modules according to the license provided with the software.

As its features are not fixed in advance, its interface is evolving accordingly. It is for this reason that the sample screens in this manual may not always be in accordance with your system.

Two types are distinguished module:

- The cartographic modules that are providers of chart data. They are responsible for their own menus to manage their various parameters and display their data. There can only be one active cartographic module. In this category are such basic module Planisphere which manages the display of a world map, and ENCs evolved module that manages the ECDIS charts.

The available sub-menu **System**, **Settings**, **Charts**, **Chart Provider** allows you to control the cartographic modules installed and possibly change the module to use.

- The modules performing various tasks ranging from database management to the management of I/O, mobile, navigation tools, special views, etc ... Unlike the cartographic modules, Gecdis can load as much as the license allows. Some are dependent on the other, such as **Route** module does not load if the **User** module does not. The vast majority of Gecdis menus are built entirely by these modules.

The About Gecdis window allows you to check the number of modules used by clicking in the window and using the mouse wheel

I.4.6 BACK-UP

The backup functionality allows you to backup, into your desired location (the hard disk, a removable disk, etc.), Gecdis settings and data.

Important

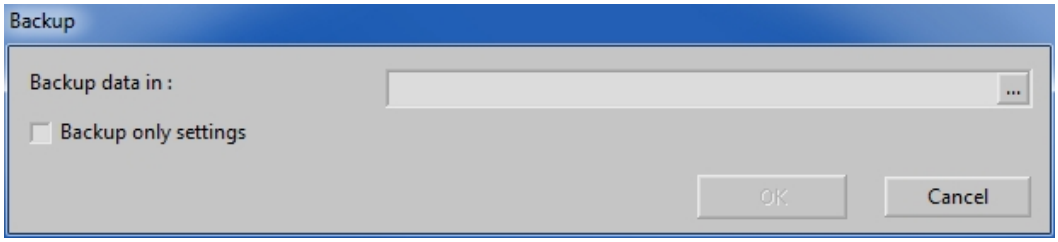
SOME FILES ARE EXCLUDED FROM BACKUP:

- THE LICENSE FILES
- BATHYMETRIC DATABASES IN USE FOR RECORD OR DISPLAY

This backup may be useful in the following cases:

- For a specific reason, Gecdis suddenly stops and configuration data have not been saved
- A unit into your hard disk has a breakdown

To run a backup:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, **click** Run **backup**. *The Backup window opens:* 
2.	Choose to backup only the settings or settings +data by clicking or not the **Backup only settings** option box. If you select settings+ data, the duration of the backup can be long.
3.	Click button to select the directory to save the backup file. *The backup file will be saved in the folder you have selected. The backup file name will be `GecdisBack_yyyymmdd-hhmmss.gbk`, where yyymmdd means year month day and hhmmss means hour minute second.*
4.	End of procedure.

To restore a backup:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, select **Restore a backup** and select the backup file to be restored.
2.	Click **Open**. *Once a backup file is selected to be restored, Gecdis stops, after you have confirmed you agree to exit the program. The selected backup file will be automatically restored on the next Gecdis start.*
3.	End of procedure.

I.5 What to Do Before Departure

The following describes some operations you should do before your departure and where you could find information about them in this manual.

I.5.1 CUSTOMIZING

I.5.1.1 Configuring your Screen Size

Configuring your screen size is a very important step. If it is not correctly configured, objects of the main view may be disproportionate.

See section II.2.1, page 30 to configure your screen size.

I.5.1.2 Customizing Gecdis Screen

You can customize some parts of the Gecdis screen. For example, you can optimize the placement of the various windows that you need, define what own ship information and in what order you want to view or select the commands you use most often.

See section II.5, page 35 to configure the toolbar.

See section II.11, page 51 to configure information windows.

See section III.7, page 69 for more information about Gecdis customization.

I.5.2 CHECKING

I.5.2.1 Datum

You must check that your system is configured with the correct datum to avoid errors while positioning.

See section II.4, page 34 to select the current datum.

I.5.2.2 Sensors

Check the configuration of your sensors. Each sensor must be connected to a communication port of your machine. You add these communication ports to Gecdis and configure them to acquire specific sentences.

See section IV.6.2, page 100 to configure a stream.

See section IV.6.5, page 112 to configure information.

I.5.2.3 Implementing Alarms

Many alarms are managed in Gecdis. Here are some links to set some alarms.

See section II.6, page 37 to configure alarms display.

See section III.5, page 63 to consult alarms.

See section II.8, page 45 to configure the danger detection.

See section IV.3, page 76 to manage specific alarms to Own Ship.

See section VII.5, page 212 to assign to an area an alarm when a ship enters or leaves.

I.5.2.4 Route Management

Routes are a very important step to navigation. You will certainly need to create routes before any departure with a new itinerary.

See section VII.3.1, page 194 to create a route.

See section VII.3.6, page 202 to skip to route monitoring.

See section VII.1, page 188 to learn more about user database.

I.5.2.5 Charts

Check that you have imported all the charts you need for your voyage in the chart databases.

See section V.2.3, page 129 to manage the ENC chart database.

See section V.2.12.4, page 149 to set values for different water contours and depths that will ensure safe navigation.

See section V.3.2.1, page 166 to manage the ARCS chart database.

I.6 Navigation Tasks

I.6.1 OVERVIEW

Navigation consists in four basic tasks:

- Voyage planning,
- Positioning,
- Steering,
- Monitoring.

I.6.2 VOYAGE PLANNING

When you plan a voyage, you prepare it i.e., you define, calculate and optimize the route. You also have to prepare your charts (insertion, updating):

- Route planning,
- Chart calculation,
- Chart planning.

I.6.2.1 Route Planning

Route planning allows you to modify an existing route or create a new one.

A route is defined by the following elements:

- Position of each waypoint,
- Turn radius for each waypoint,
- Safe water calculation based on Safety limits,
- Lane for each leg (cross track error).

Information is available:

- Alarm window to alert operator,
- The object information window to have information on the route, when selected,
- Pilot window.

Customization:

- Information windows allow to display your desired pieces of information,
- The toolbar allows you to insert the buttons that correspond to your needs.

I.6.2.2 Route Calculation

Route calculation for voyage planning includes the following:

- Calculation of the profile of the route:
  - Distance between consecutive waypoints,
  - Course between waypoints,
  - Wheel-over calculation,
  - Total distance,
  - Estimated time for voyage.
- Check of the route:
  - Check of the dangers of the route.
- Voyage optimization:
  - Time table optimization,
  - Optimization based on economical factors,
  - ECDIS processor calculates optimum speed and course between each waypoint, and the ETA following specified data.

I.6.2.3 Chart Planning

- Loading of new ENC charts,
- Updating existing ENC charts,
- User generated safe water areas.

I.6.3 POSITIONING

Positioning is the way to calculate and keep updated the position of the ship during a voyage.

The calculation of the position of the ship is based on available navigation sensors:

- Direct positioning of sensors,
- Dead reckoning,
- Manual correction.

I.6.3.1 Direct Positioning of Sensors

Satellite navigation systems:

- GPS navigator,
- GPS navigator with a differential correction facility, DGPS.

I.6.3.2 Dead Reckoning Equipment

Ship's heading measurements devices:

- Gyro compass (one or two),
- Magnetic compass,
- GPS gyro compass,
- Inertial unit.

Speed measuring devices:

- Single axis speed logs,
- Dual axis speed logs,
- Radio navigation equipment,
- Satellite navigation equipment.

I.6.3.3 Manual Correction

User inputs corrections for the position to adjust the position of the antennas relative to conning.

I.6.4 STEERING MODES

Steering includes all the different operation modes for steering in order to turn the ship through planned voyage (harbor to harbor):

- Hand steering,
- Trackpilot steering,
- Waypoint approach mode.

I.6.4.1 Hand Steering

Hand steering mode:

- Steering wheel.

I.6.4.2 Trackpilot Steering

- Operator sets the required heading of the vessel,
- Turn radius is also set by operator,
- Turn is initiated by operator,
- The navigation system displays required heading, radius, rate of turn and predicted turn.

I.6.4.3 Waypoint Approach Mode

- The system will follow the planned track to next waypoint,
- When reaching the next wheel-over the system alerts operator,
- The system performs the turn at planned radius.

I.6.5 MONITORING

Monitoring is a continuous check of navigation data, user actions and performances of the system.

Part of the monitoring is also the display of electronic sea chart and conning information:

- Electronics sea charts,
- Conning information,
- Alarms,
- Man over board,
- Data logging.

I.6.5.1 Display of Electronic Sea Chart

- Own ship position,
- Planned track,
- Grounding alarm,
- Chart information.

I.6.5.2 Display of Conning Information

- Ship's heading,
- Speed (single or dual-axis),
- Rate of turn order and direction,
- Depth,
- Wind speed and direction,
- Waypoint bearing,
- Waypoint ETA,
- Speed order,
- Steering mode.

I.6.5.3 Alarms

- Route monitoring,
- Position calculation,
- Position monitoring,
- Waypoint approach,
- Sensor failure,
- System failure,
- Incorrect operator action,
- Unsafe water areas.

I.6.5.4 Man over Board

- Built-in function for man over board.

I.6.5.5 Data Logging

- History book,
- Voyage recording.

II GENERAL CONFIGURATION

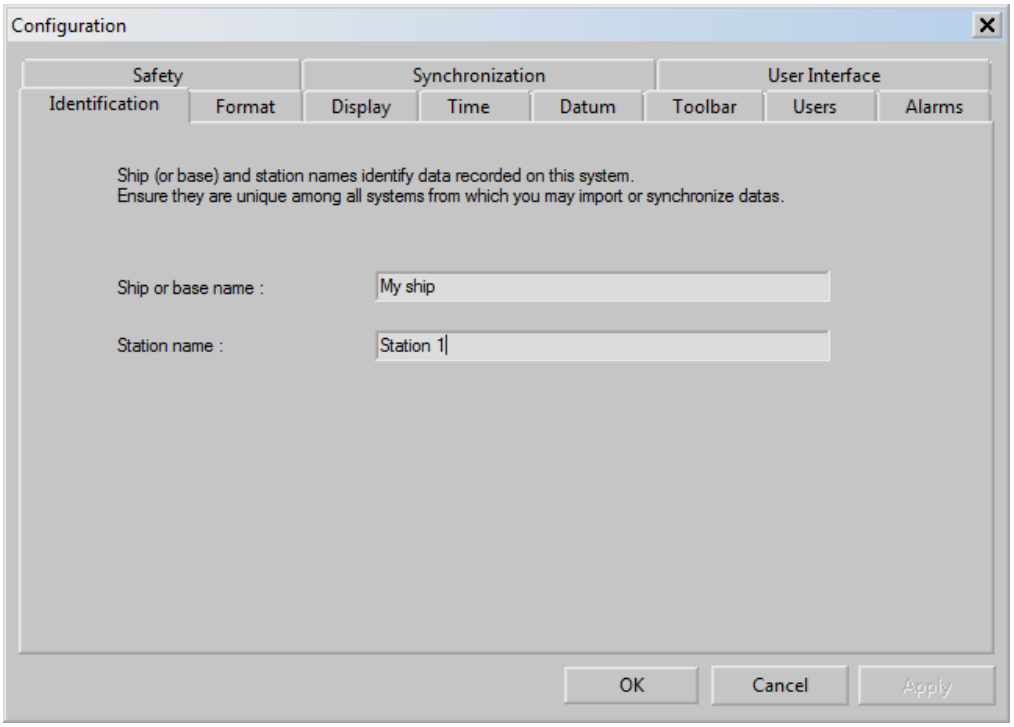
II.1 Identification

The **Identification** tab display ship name and station name defined during installation.

If several Gecdis are installed on the same ship and if synchronization is used, the name of the station must be different for each installation.

The **Identification** tab allows you to change ship name and station name.

To access the Identification tab:

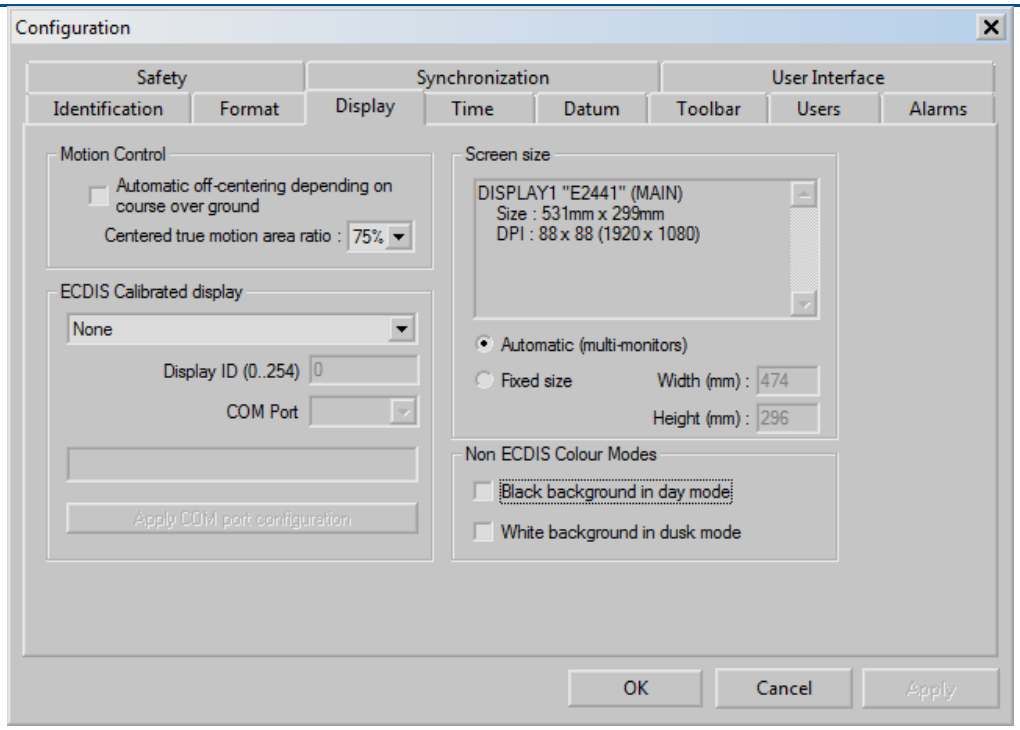
Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, and **General configuration**…
2.	In the *Configuration* dialog box, select the **Identification** tab: 
3.	End of procedure

II.2 Display

The **Display** tab allows you to configure the main display properties: color modes, motion control and screen size.

To access the Display tab:

1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, and **General configuration**…
2.	In the *Configuration* dialog box, select the **Display** tab:



3. End of procedure.

II.2.1 SCREEN SIZE

Important

IT IS VERY IMPORTANT THAT YOU CONFIGURE THE EXACT DIMENSIONS OF YOUR SCREEN. IF YOU DO NOT CONFIGURE THEM, THE MAIN VIEW AND ALL OF ITS ELEMENTS MAY BE DISPROPORTIONATE

Two possibilities to adjust the screen size:

- **Automatic**: in this case, the screens dimensions are determined automatically based on the placement of windows on the screens. This is the most accurate and safest choice, especially when changing or multi-screens. Displays connected and recognized by the system are listed in the upper area specifying their dimensions.
- **Fixed size**: in this case, the dimensions of the screen are entered manually. This is useful if the connected display is not recognized by the system or if its size cannot be known automatically (e.g. with a video projector).

Note on ECDIS compliance: when the size of your screen is correctly configured, Gecdis displays the cartographic texts (ENC) with a height of 3.5 mm, which corresponds to a nominal viewing distance of one meter.

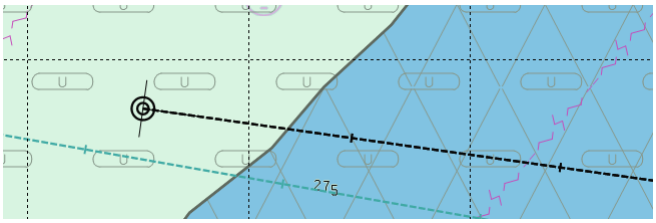
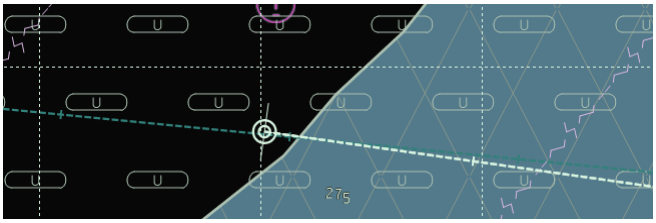
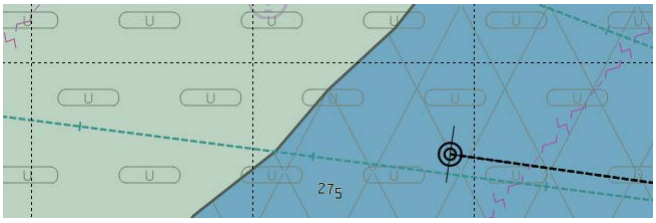
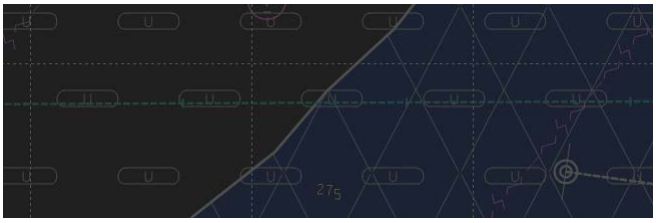
II.2.2 COLOR MODES

In ECDIS Calibrated display topic, you can automatically calibrate screen connected to a serial port. In this case, you must select the type of display connected in the combo box.

The Black background in day mode option enables to display the cartographic in day mode with black background. Normally, the background is white (default configuration).

The White background in dusk mode option enables to display the cartographic in dusk mode with white background. Normally, the background is black (default configuration).

Overview of Color modes:

Colour mode	Result
Day with white background (default)	
Day with black background	
Dusk with black background (default)	
Dusk with white background	
Night with always black background	

II.2.3 MOTION CONTROL

Motion control manages how the main view follows a mobile (Own Ship or any mobile).

You should know that the motion control has two modes: true and relative motion. See III.4.3.1 page 60 for more information on these modes.

In true motion mode, a control area depending on the surface of the view is used to confine the ship inside.

In addition to these modes, you can adjust motion control placement mode:

- The centered mode uses the center of the view to manage the motion control. In this case, you can adjust the surface of the control area from 50% to 90%.

- The anticipated mode uses the course and speed over ground to determine the ideal placement of the view to see as much as possible to the trajectory of vessel. In this case, the surface of the control area is fixed to 50%.

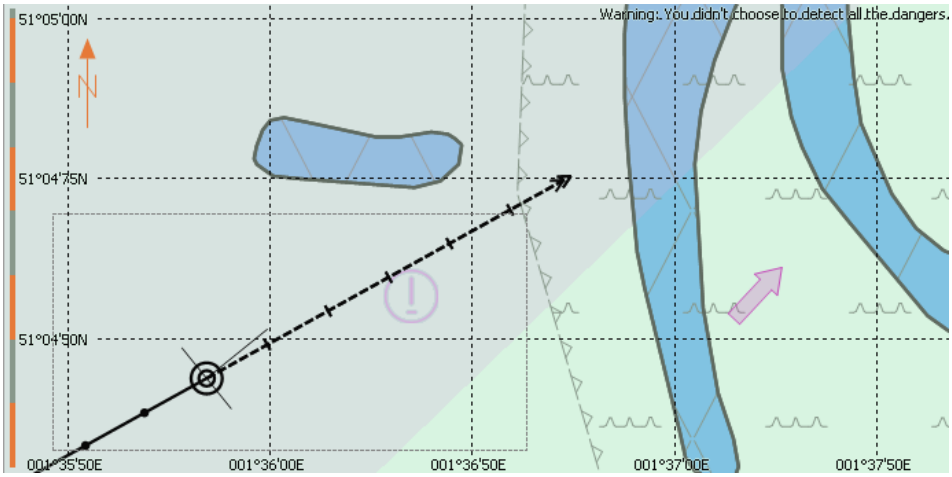


Figure 24 - True motion control anticipated mode

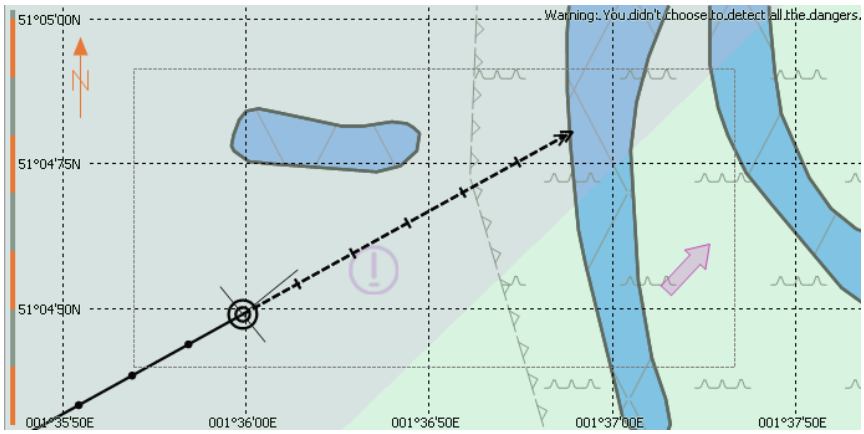


Figure 25 - True motion control centered mode (area to 70%)

In the **Motion Control** topic, you can set the placement mode:

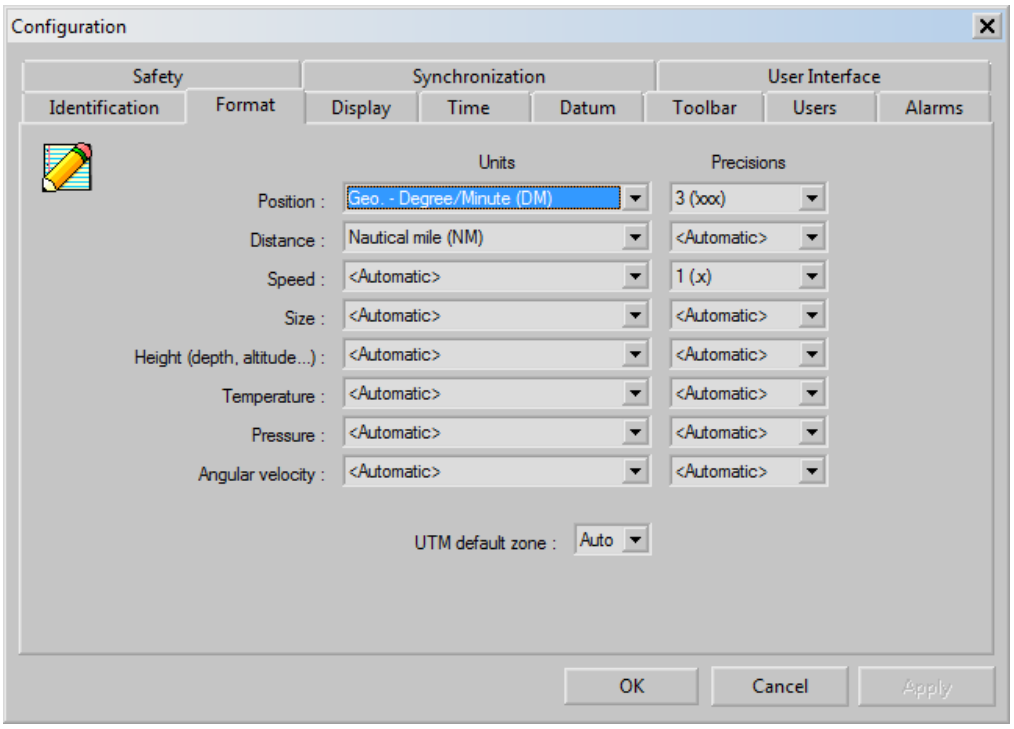
- Check **Automatic off-centering depending on course over ground** to select the anticipated mode.
- Uncheck to select the centered mode. You can adjust the area ratio from 50% to 90%.

II.3 Configuring the Units

The **Format** tab allows you to choose the unit you will define for some parameters (position, distance, speed, size, height, temperature, pressure and angular velocity), and the number of figures after the decimal point. For example, if 1 (.x) has been configured for the Height field, 20.44 knot will be rounded up to the first figure after the decimal point (20.4 knot).

To access the Format tab:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, and **General configuration**…
2.	In the *Configuration* dialog box, select the **Format** tab:
3.	End of procedure.



The configuration of the position is particular. Five formats are available:

- **Geographic – Degree (°):** Representation of the position in degrees, example : 43°610N – 007°265E
- **Geo – Degree/Minute (DM)**: Representation of the position in degrees/minute, example : 43°36'585 N – 004°15'902E
- **Geo – Degree/Minute/Second (DMS):** Representation of the position in degrees/minute/second, example : 43°36'35''109S – 007°15'54''122E
- **UTM – Standard (m):** Representation of the position in UTM, example : 29L 388780 8374767
- **UTM – Signed northing (m):** Representation of the position in UTM signed northing, example : 29L 388780 -1625233

You can select a default zone for formatting positions in UTM coordinate. In this case Gecdis will format any angle to ± a zone rapport in the specified area. Outside this range, the coordinates are expressed with the area assigned to the position.

If you select **<Automatic>** in Distance, distances will be measured in meters until reaching 1 nautical mile.

II.4 The Datum

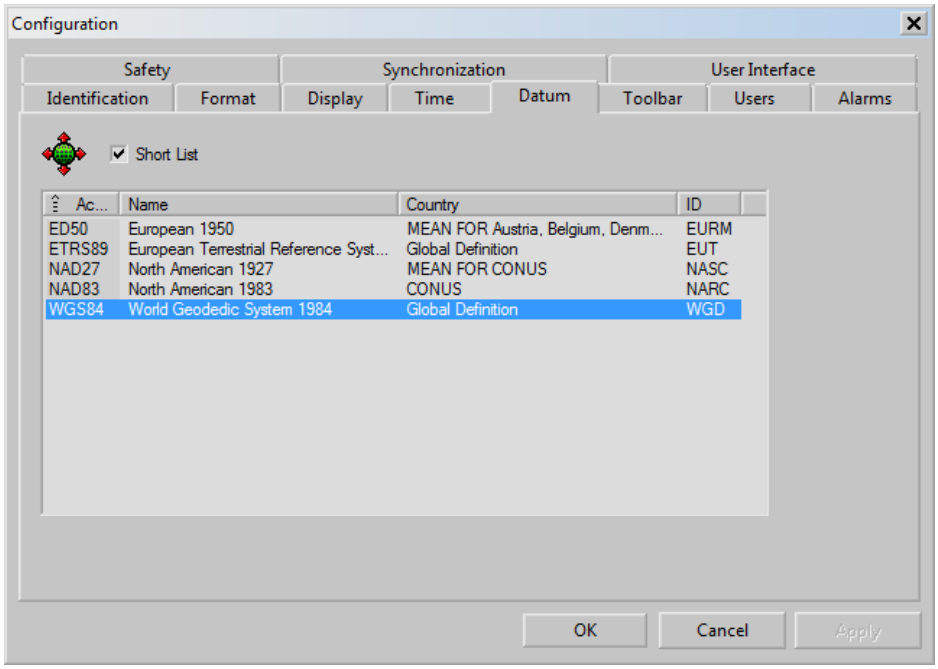
The datum is a science that offers amongst other things constants that define the relationship between a coordinate system and the real Earth (the geoid). There are many different geodetic datum systems, depending on the country or region in the Earth. That is why you may receive data (symbols, routes, etc) with another geodetic system than your traditional system. You will then prefer to change the datum to have a perfect representation of the position of this object.

By default, Gecdis uses the WGS84.

The acronym of the selected datum is indicated in the main view title bar.

To change the datum:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, and **General configuration**…
2.	In the *Configuration* dialog box, select the **Datum** tab.
3.	In this tab, you can see a short list of the main datum systems (ED50, ETRS89, NAD27, NAD83 and WGS84). If you want to display all existing datums, uncheck the **Short List** box.
4.	You can sort the datums in alphabetical order by acronym, name, country and ID clicking the column headings.
5.	Click your desired datum and click **OK**.



The acronym of the datum you have just selected is indicated in the main view title bar.

6.	End of procedure.

All parameters datum are from the special publication of the IHO S-60 (id, name, values...)

II.5 The Toolbar

By default, the toolbar contains several icons associated with major commands (man over board, zoom+, zoom-, centre on Own Ship...), but with Gecdis, you are not limited only to these actions, you can add any button representing the actions you use more frequently. So you can create a toolbar customized to your activity and your needs.

II.5.1 Inserting a New Button

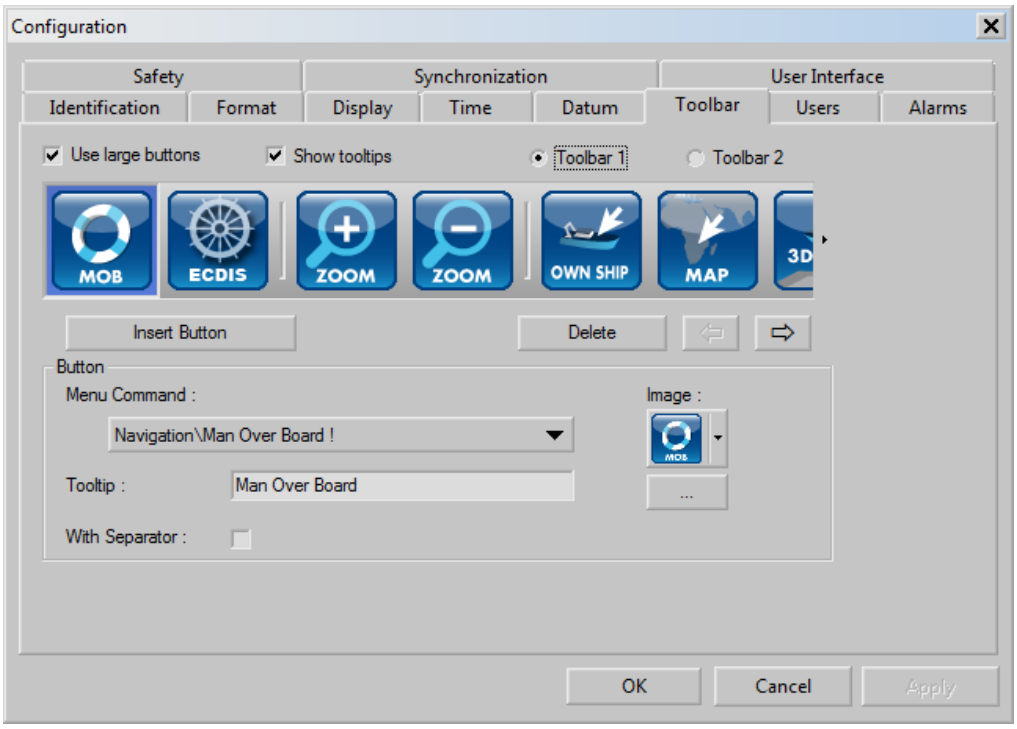


Figure 26 - Configuring the Toolbar

To create a shortcut button in the toolbar:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings** and **General Configuration…**, or right click directly on the toolbar and then select **Customize...**.
2.	On the *Toolbar* page, select the button where you want insert after your new button.
3.	After selecting the emplacement, click **Insert Button**. *The new button is added to the desired location.*
4.	You need to select, in the tree structure of the menus, the associated command for the new button. Items already in the toolbar are automatically disabled.

Step	Action
5.	Select an icon from the library by clicking the button **Image** or browsing the hard drive for the desired image by clicking "**...**" button:

6.	Validate by clicking **OK**.
7.	End of procedure.

II.5.2 CONTROLS

The following list describes the various controls used to manage the configuration of toolbars:

- Use large buttons, allows the use of large buttons (64x64) or small (32x32). This parameter affects the size of the toolbar (and possibly the information bar).
- Show tooltips, controls whether a tooltip is displayed or not when the cursor hovers over a button.
- Toolbar 1, Toolbar 2, allows you to select the toolbar to change.
- Insert Button, adds a button based on the location of the selected.
- Delete, deletes the current button.
- ⇦⇨, moves to the left or right current button.
- Button – Menu Command, selects the associated command with the button.
- Button – Image, selects the image associated with the button from the library or browsing the hard drive.
- Button – Tooltip, allows entering the tooltip associated with the button.
- Button – With Separator, adds a separator before the button.

II.6 Alarms

Configuring alarm display consists in choosing in the list of alarm groups the ones you want to display in the alarm window.

Regardless of the alarm window, all alarms are archived and consultable in the black box.

This configuration is made with checkboxes. By default some alarms are unchecked.

Alarm groups are gathered, depending on the modules they belong to (System, Routes, ENC Charts, etc.). So this is easier to select them.

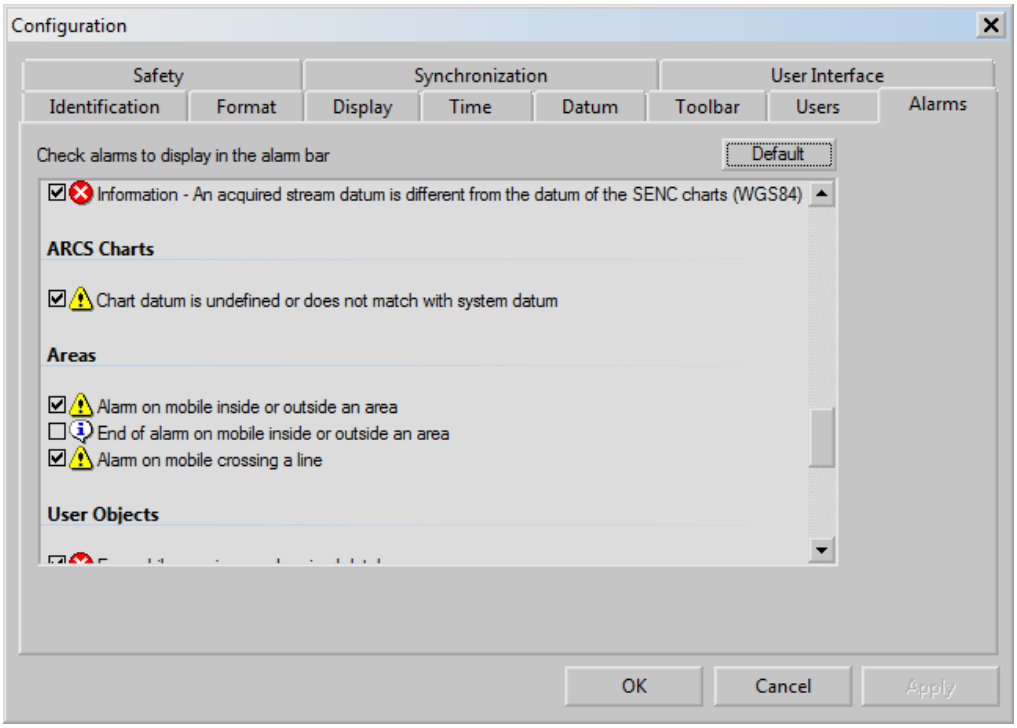


Figure 27 - Configuring Alarms

To configure alarm display:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **System** menu, click **Settings** and then **General Configuration…**
2.	In the *Configuration* dialog box, click the **Alarms** tab.
3.	Check the alarms you want to display in the alarm bar.
4.	To go back to the default configuration, click **Default** button.
5.	Validate and close dialog box by clicking **OK**, or just validate by clicking **Apply**.
6.	End of procedure.

II.7 The Users

Gecdis can be used by many different kinds of users, each one having specific needs. By default, four groups of users are defined: Administrators, Captains, Navigators and Guests.

On one hand, the Administrators group can use all Gecdis functionalities, without any limitation. On the other hand, the other groups are associated to specific access rights you can configure with a checkboxes system.

The three groups have different access rights to commands. So when you will assign a command to the Supervisor group, only this group will be able to use it. However, if you assign one of them to the Navigator group, the Supervisor group will also be able to use it, and assigning one of them to the Guest group will allow the Captain and Navigator groups to use it as well.

II.7.1 ADDING A USER

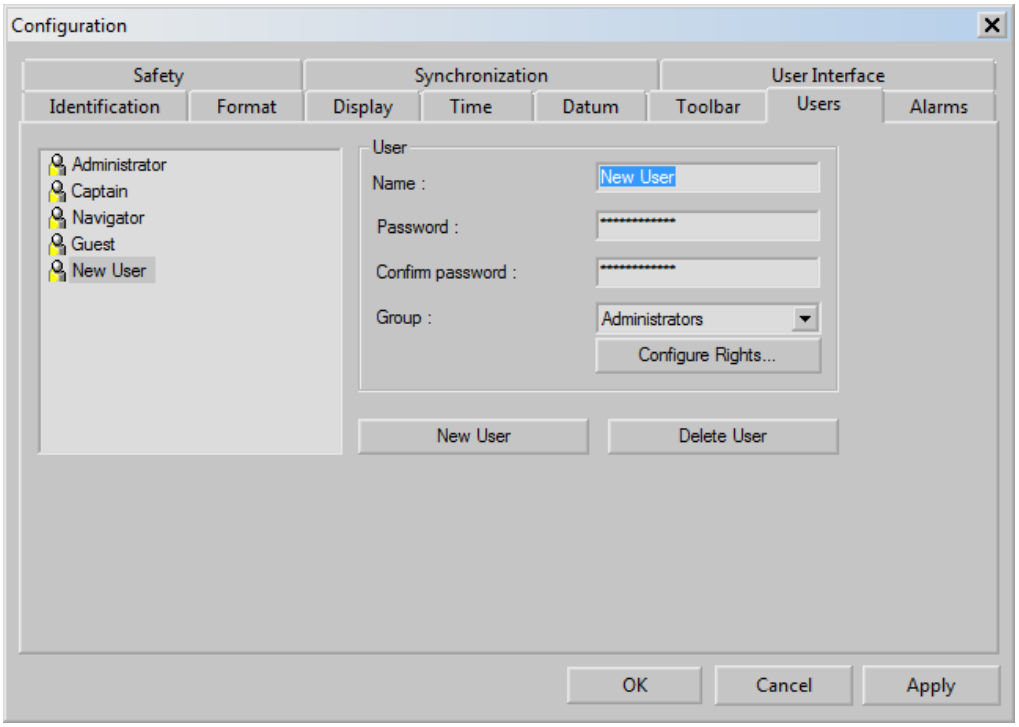


Figure 28 - Adding a user

To add a user to the list of users:

Step	Action
1.	Click **System**, **Settings**, **General Configuration...** and then the **Users** tab.
2.	Click the **New User** button. The **Name** field is filled out with the New User label**.**
3.	Enter the name of the new user in this field.
4.	In **Group** field, select to which group you want the new user to belong.

Step	Action
5.	Enter a password in the **Password** field and confirm this password in the **Confirm password** field.
6.	Validate and close dialog box by clicking **OK**, or just validate by clicking **Apply**. *The user has been added.*
7.	You can now open a new session with this new user. You can also delete a user by selecting it and clicking the **Delete User** button
8.	End of procedure.

Important

IT IS NOT POSSIBLE TO DELETE THE ADMINISTRATOR USER.

II.7.2 CONFIGURING USERS' RIGHTS

Almost every command of the software is assigned to access rights. This configuration only concerns Captain, Navigator and Guest groups, the Administrator group can use all the commands without any limitation.

If a user is not allowed to use a command, he will not be able to open the corresponding dialog box, tab, etc.

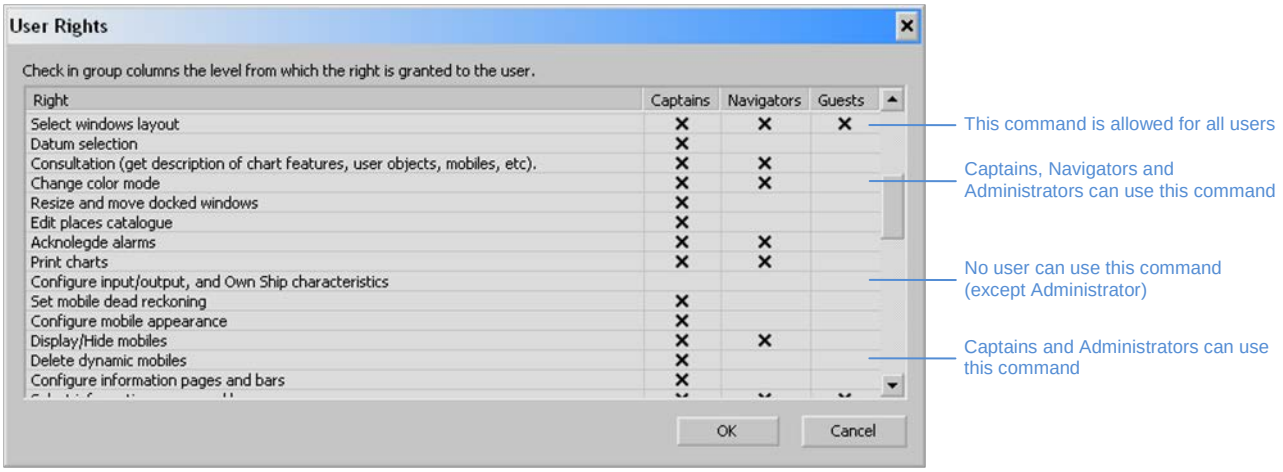

User Rights
Check in group columns the level from which the right is granted to the user.
Right
Captains
Navigators
Guests
Select windows layout
Datum selection
Consultation (get description of chart features, user objects, mobiles, etc).
Change color mode
Resize and move docked windows
Edit places catalogue
Acknolegde alarms
Print charts
Configure input/output, and Own Ship characteristics
Set mobile dead reckoning
Configure mobile appearance
Display/Hide mobiles
Delete dynamic mobiles
Configure information pages and bars
OK
Cancel
This command is allowed for all users
Captains, Navigators and Administrators can use this command
No user can use this command (except Administrator)
Captains and Administrators can use this command

Figure 29 - Configuring Access Rights

To configure access rights:

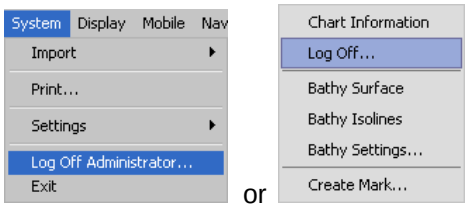
Step	Action
1.	Click **System**, **Settings**, **General Configuration...** and then the **Users** tab.
2.	Click **Configure Rights…** button. *The* User Rights *window is displayed (see Figure 29). This window allows you to select the access rights for the Captain, Navigator and Guest types of users.*

Step	Action
3.	Do one of the following: • To make an action available for the Captain types of users, check the box that crosses the action and the Captains column. • To make an action available for the Captain and Navigator type of users, check the box that crosses the action and the Navigator column. Both types of users are selected. • To make an action available for all types of users, check the box that crosses the action and the Guests column. All users are selected.
4.	You can delete an access right granted to a user by clicking on the corresponding checkmark.
5.	End of procedure.

II.7.3 OPENING A NEW SESSION

While using Gecdis, it is possible to open a new session with a new user. This way, a new user can log in without needing to close and re-open Gecdis. When a user logs in, his own configuration is reloaded, with his specific rights (see section II.7.2).

To open a new session:

Step	Action
1.	Click **System** and **Log Off x...** (where x is the type of user that is currently connected), or right-click on the chart and select the **Log Off...** command:  *A message asks you to confirm that you wish to change session.*
2.	Click **Yes**.
3.	In the **User** field, select the name of the user you want to log in.
4.	Enter the password in the **Password** field.
5.	Validate and close dialog box by clicking **OK**, or just validate by clicking **Apply**.
6.	End of procedure.

II.8 Danger Detection

The danger detection or anti-grounding option enables to detect any danger the ship may encounter when following its route.

When the ship encounters an object considered as dangerous, an alarm is generated to inform the mariner. Currently, only user objects and those of ENC chart can be detected. To do this, you must first select one of these objects will be those dangerous. For this, see section V.2.13 on page 152 to select ENC objects.

Two forms of detection are possible:

- A guard sector, defined by an angle and a distance limit.

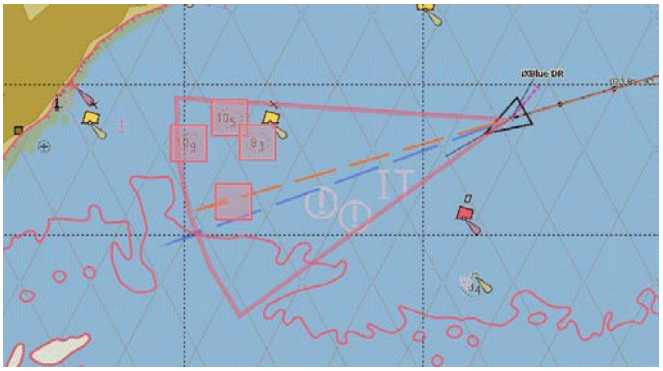


Figure 30 - Guard sector

- A security polygon, defined by safety distance and a distance limit.

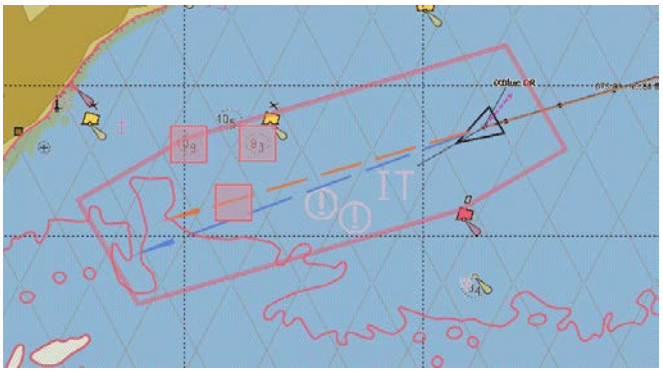


Figure 31 -Security polygon

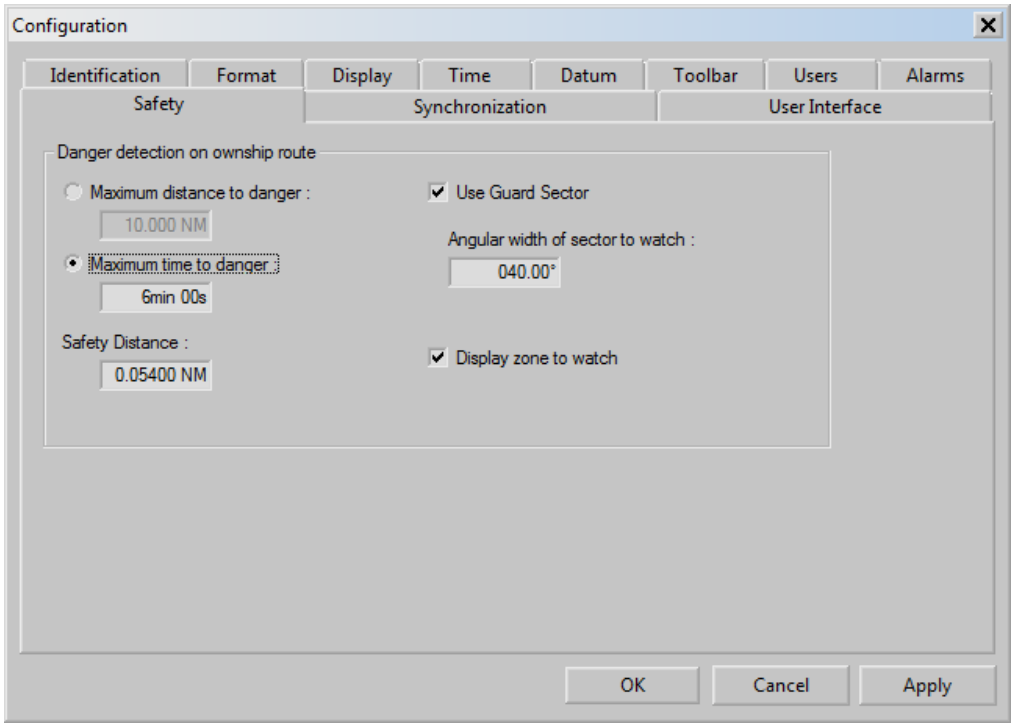
The distance limit in both cases may be defined by:

- Simply by a distance value.
- By a time which is automatically converted by a distance depending on the speed of the Own Ship in real time.

To configure danger detection:

Step	Action
1.	Click **System**, **Settings**, **General Configuration...** and then the **Safety** tab.
2.	Check radio button corresponding to **Maximum distance** or **time to danger**.
3.	Enter the value of the maximum distance or time.

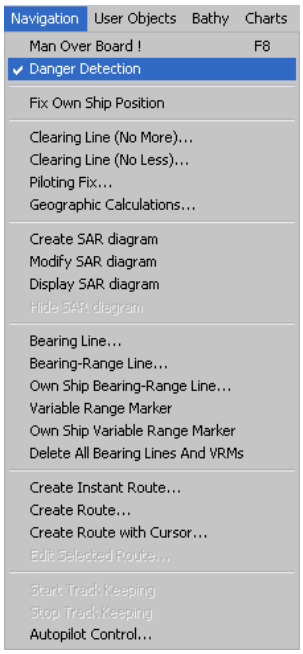
Step	Action
4.	Check **Use Guard Sector** if you want a guard sector, otherwise, a security polygon is used.
5.	Enter the **Angular width of sector to watch** for the guard sector or the **Safety Distance** for the security polygon.
6.	Eventually, check **Display zone to watch** to see the representation of the safety area on the screen.



7.	End of procedure.

To activate danger detection:

Step	Action
1.	Check the **Danger Detection** option in **Navigation** menu:



2.	End of procedure.

II.9 Synchronization

It is possible to synchronize data between several stations.

Two modes of synchronization are available:

- Distributed: each station checks whether changes have been done on the other stations, and if needed, automatically duplicate changes in its own data.

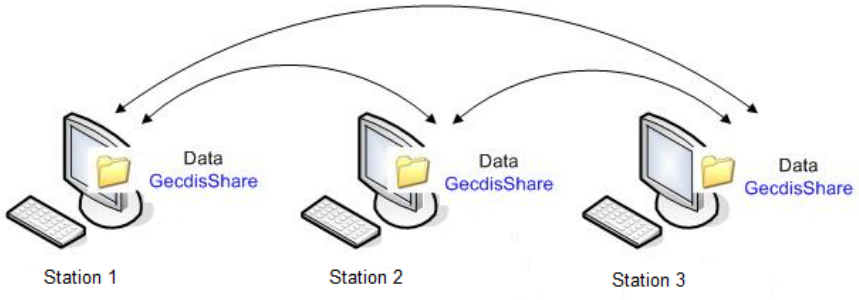


Figure 32 – Synchronization: distributed mode

- Centralized: when a change is made on a station, this station update a copy of the data on a network shared folder localized on a server. The other stations check changes done on the shared folder, and if needed, automatically duplicate changes in its own data.

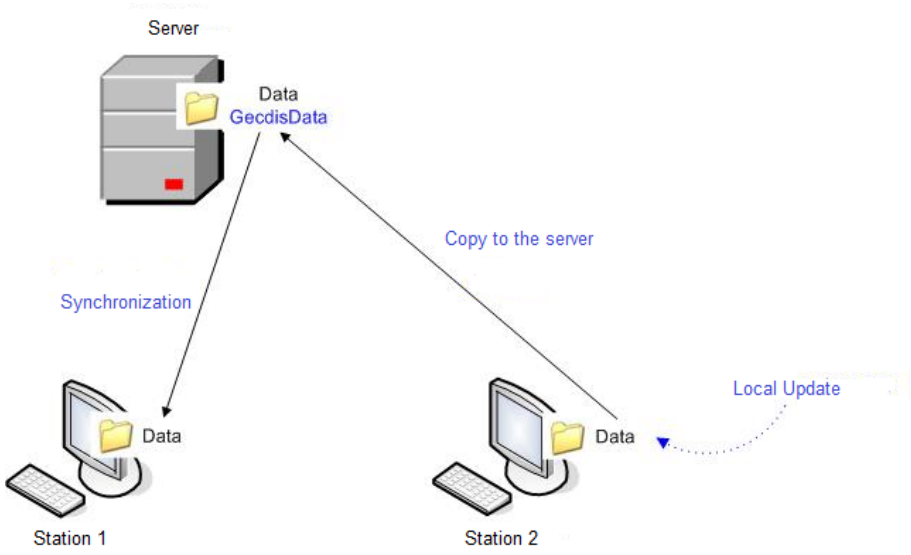


Figure 33 – Synchronization: centralized mode

- Data folder sharing

When distributed mode is selected, each station must share its local data folder.

The sharing is automatically done when this mode is selected. The default name of the sharing is GecdisShare. If this sharing name is already used for another folder, the name is modified 9 times until an available name has been found (GecdisShare1 to GecdisShare9)

When centralized mode is selected, there is no need to share the data folder on each station. The network shared folder must be manually shared with "read" and "write" rights.

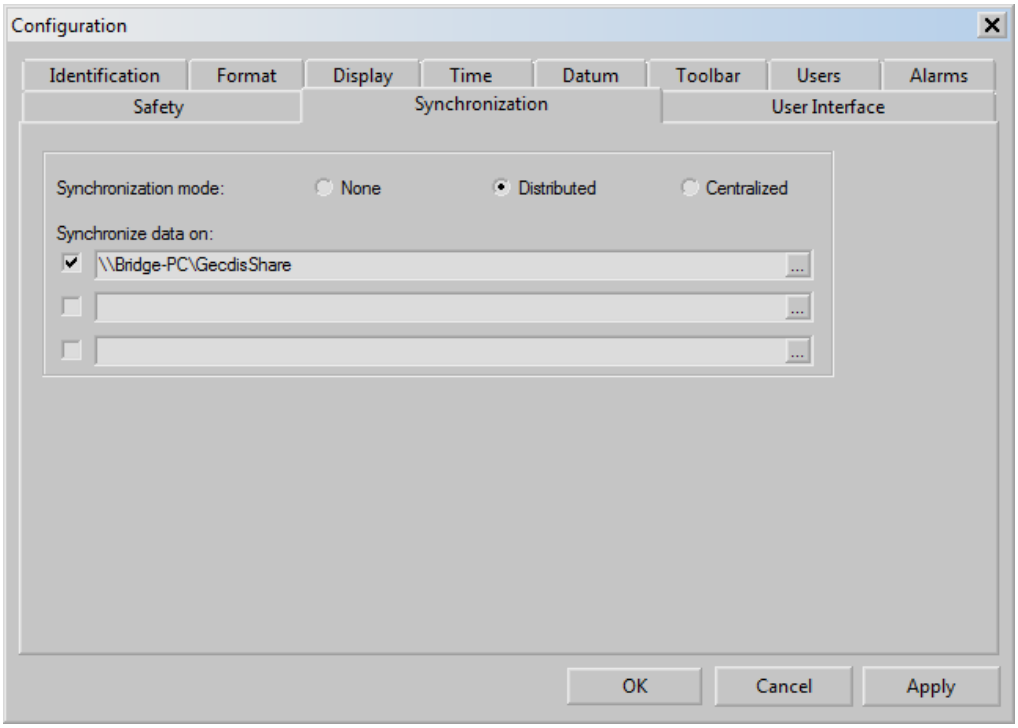


Figure 34 - Synchronizing data

To configure synchronization:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **System** menu, **Settings**, **General Configuration...** and then the **Synchronization** tab.
2.	Select the mode of synchronization.
3.	In distributed mode, select the shared folders on the other stations and click the check-box. In centralized mode, select only the common shared folder on network and click the check-box
4.	Validate and close dialog box by clicking **OK**, or just validate by clicking **Apply**.
5.	End of procedure.

The check-boxes can be unchecked to invalidate the synchronization with the corresponding stations or with the server.

Please, ensure that each station has a different name in **Identification** tab.

II.10 User Interface

The **User Interface** tab allows the user to configure the software interface.

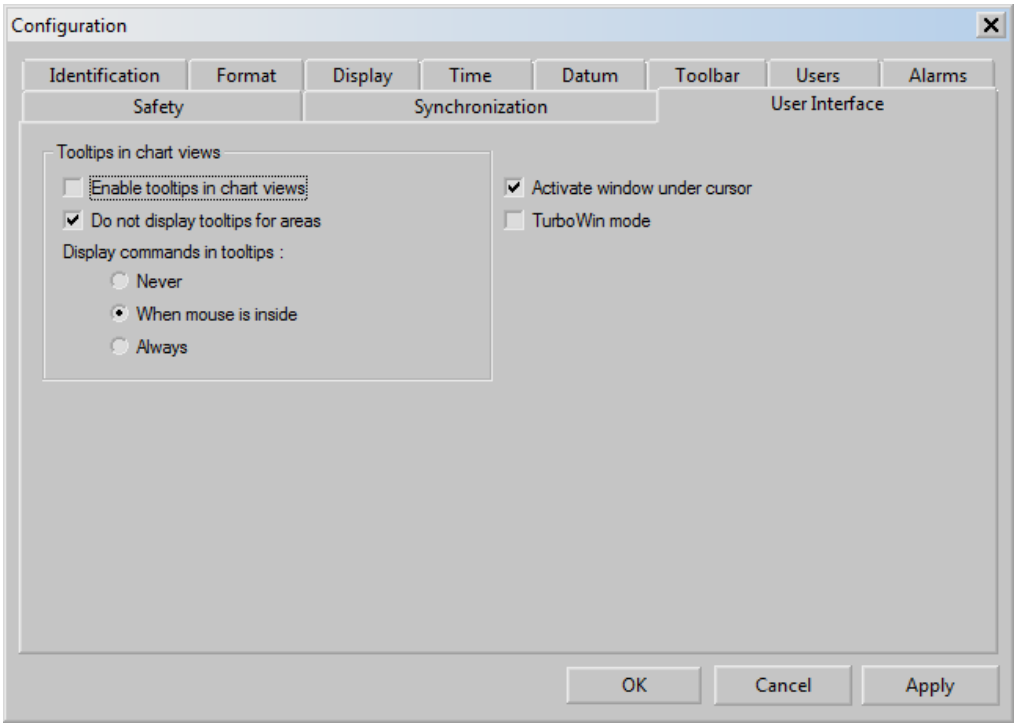


Figure 35 - User interface configuration

To configure the user interface:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **System** menu, **Settings**, **General Configuration...** and then the **User Interface** tab.
2.	Check the parameters you want to use (see section II.10.2).
3.	Validate and close dialog box by clicking **OK**, or just validate by clicking **Apply**.
4.	End of procedure.

II.10.1 TOOLTIPS IN CHART VIEWS

You can define rules to display a tooltip when you pass over an object with the mouse in the chart views.

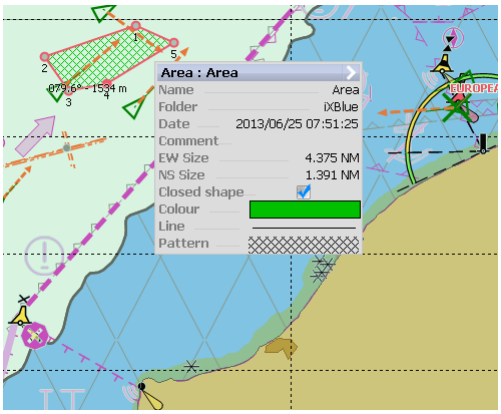


Figure 36 - Tooltip in chart view

Main parameters:

- **Enable tooltips in chart views**, enable or disable the automatic display of the tooltip.
- **Do not display tooltips for areas**, enable or disable the display of the tooltip when the mouse cursor is inside the area, if the cursor is on an area point or border, the tooltip will be displayed independently of this parameter.

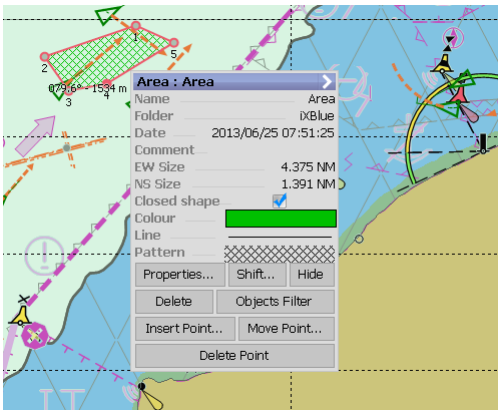


Figure 37 - Tooltip with commands

Display commands in tooltips parameters:

- **Never**, commands are never displayed in the tooltip.
- **When mouse is inside**, commands are displayed in the tooltip when mouse is inside (the tooltip).
- **Always**, commands are always displayed in the tooltip.

II.10.2 GENERAL PARAMETERS

II.10.2.1 Active Window

In the Windows ® environment, there is always only one active window at any given time. This is the window that receives events such as pressing a key or moving the mouse.
In Gecdis, as there may be several windows displayed at the same time, it is advisable to set the automatic activation of the window under the mouse cursor by checking the box **Activate window** under cursor. Otherwise, the last active window will remain as the operator will designate a not clicking.

Important

THE CONCEPT OF ACTIVE WINDOW IS IMPORTANT FOR MANAGING KEYBOARD SHORTCUTS, PARTICULARLY WITH DEAD RECKONING CONTROLS ON A MOBILE THAT ARE INTERCEPTED ONLY BY THE MAIN VIEW.

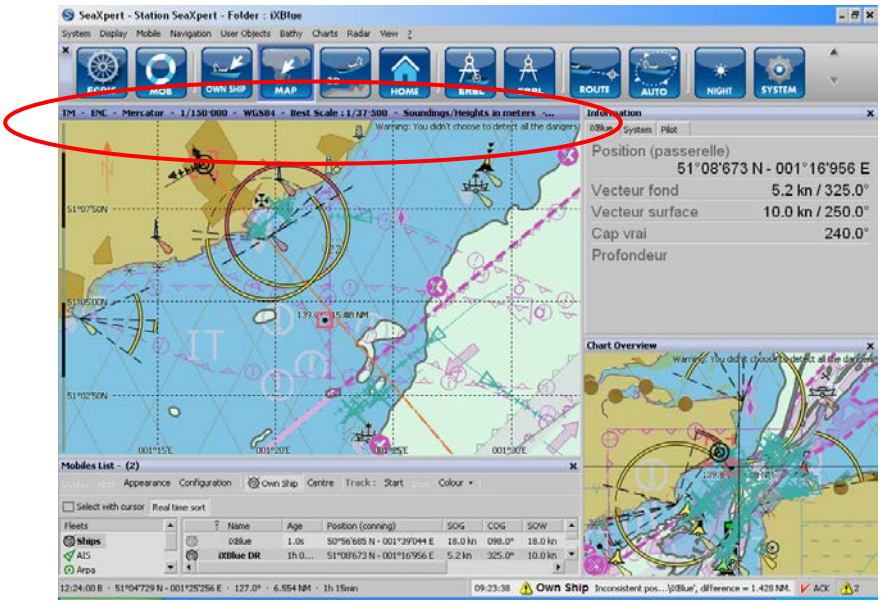


Figure 38 - Active window, example with the main view

The active window is identified with the color of the title bar that is different from others.

II.10.2.2 TurboWin Mode

The TurboWin mode enables to activate an interaction mode close to the mode used by TurboWin software.

This mode is very special because it attempts to replicate the old ergonomics TurboWin (and Turbo2000) with a horizontal menu bar at the bottom of the screen where the mouse cursor is locked.

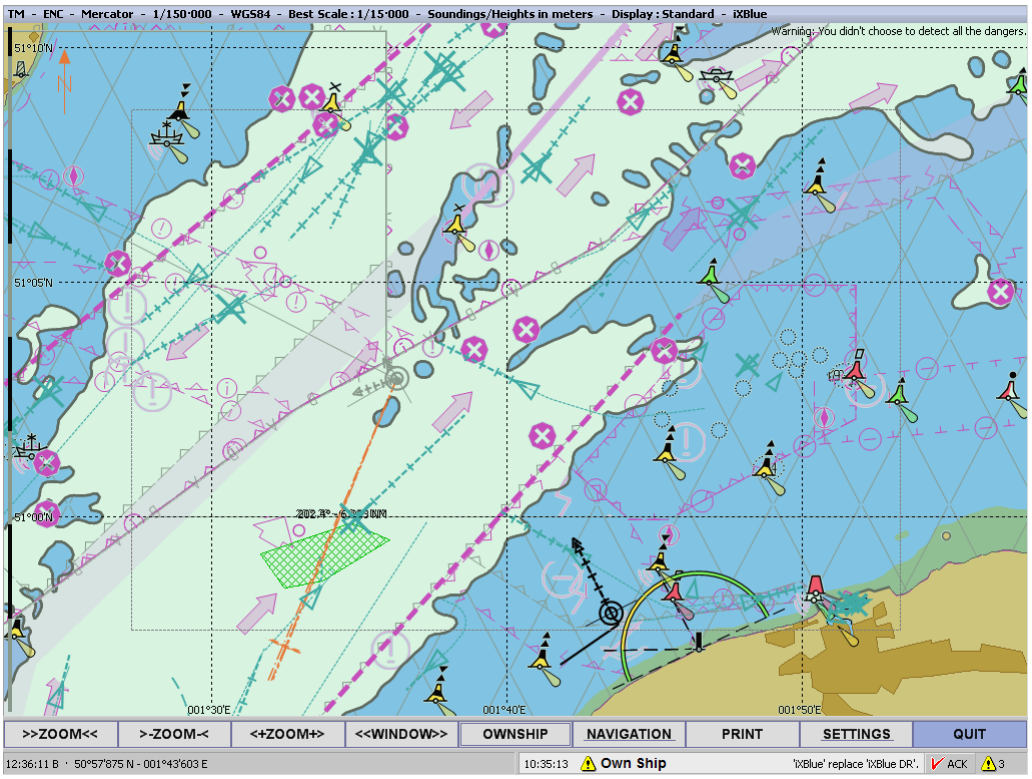


Figure 39 - TurboWin mode

In this mode, the top menu bar and toolbars are hidden.

Controls

This bottom menu is controlled by the mouse and keyboard:

Mouse	Keyboard	To...
Horizontal displacements	← or →	Change the menu selection.
Left button	Enter	Perform the selected command or call another menu (if the text is underlined).
Middle button	Home	Exit the menu to perform an action with the mouse in another window (acknowledge an alarm for example).

Mouse	Keyboard	To...
Right button		Change the current menu, by returning to the previous or jumping to the next if the first level.

Following are the item states:

State	Example	Details
Unselected		Here is unselected command.
Unselected		Here is unselected command with a long description.
Selected		If the operator presses Enter, the associated command is executed.
Disabled		Here is disabled command, nothing will happen if selected.
Underlined		An underlined command indicates calling a submenu.
Checked		A frame indicates a checked command.

Figure 40 - Inactive menu, after pressing Home

Figure 41 - Inactive menu, after opening a dialog

When the menu loses focus (if the operator presses the Home key, or a command opens a dialog box, for example), it changes appearance to indicate inactivity.

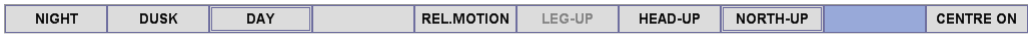
In this case, to return to the menu, press the Home key, the middle click or close the dialog box.

Main menus

Important

WARNING, THESE MAY CHANGE DEPENDING ON THE MODULES AND SOFTWARE LICENSE PROVIDED.

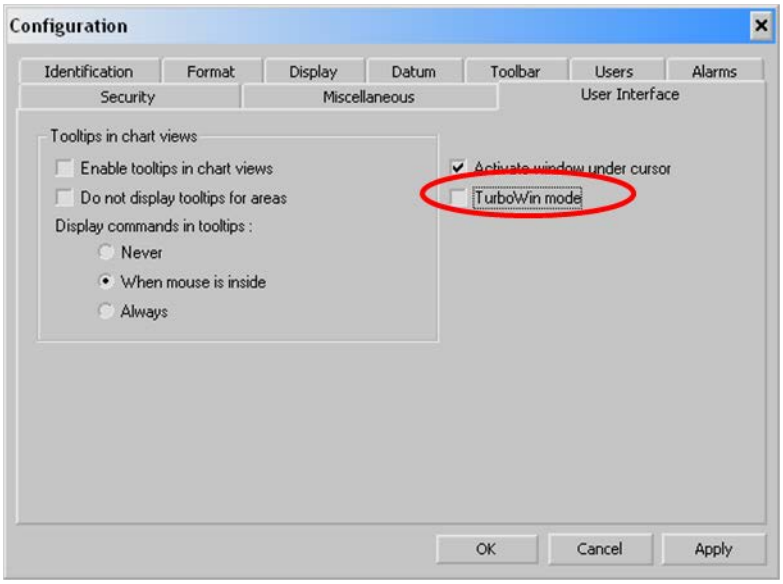
Following are the main menus:

No.	Menu
1st menu	
2nd menu	
3rd menu	
Settings	

No.	Menu
Navigation	DELETE ALL LINES | EBL | ERBL | OWNSHIP ERBL | FIX OWNSHIP | MOB
Create	TEXT | SECTOR | CIRCLE | LINE | AREA | MARK
Mobile	IO SUMMARY | APPEARANCE | ALARMS | RADAR PRIORITY | AIS-RADAR FUSION | RESET COUNTERS | DEAD RECKONING | LIST
Route	AUTOPILOT | STOP KEEPING | START KEEPING | IMPORT | CREATE CUR | CREATE | EDIT | QUICK
Library	HIDE ALL | DISPLAY ALL | FILTER | SELECT | DATABASE | CAMPAIGN | FOLDER | LIST
Views	PILOT | CHANNEL | INFOS PAGE | INFOS BAR | BLACK BOX | CHART OVER | 3D

How to stop using the TurboWin mode

Here's how to deactivate the TurboWin mode:

Step	Action
1.	In the first menu, select and validate **SETTINGS** command:
2.	In the SETTINGS menu, select and validate **GENERAL** command:
3.	Select the **User Interface** tab.
4.	Uncheck **TurboWin mode** check-box: 
5.	Validate and close dialog box by clicking **OK**, or just validate by clicking **Apply**.
6.	End of procedure.

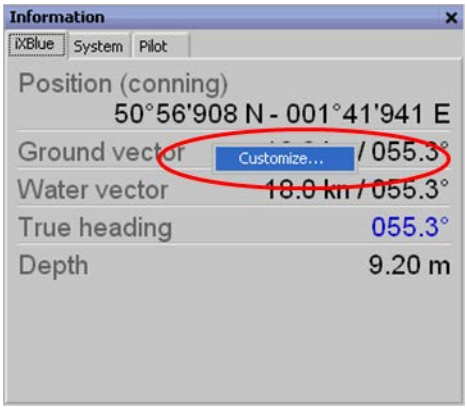
II.11 The Information Windows

Gecdis gives you the possibility to configure the information bar (see the Information bar) and pages (see Information pages) displayed on the screen.

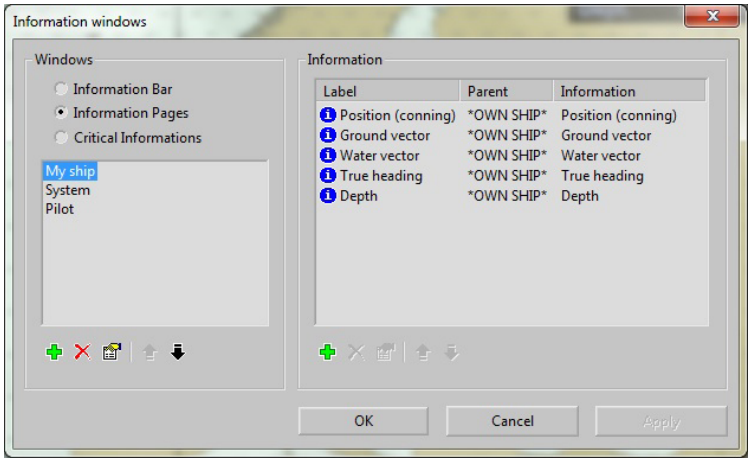
To access the dialog box that allows you to modify them:

Step	Action

1. Right-click in the information bar or in the Information pages then select **Customize…:**



The Information windows displays:



2. End of procedure.

The *Information Windows* dialog box allows you to change the information you will display in the information bar and pages. You can add several types of information about the system or a specific mobile.

The information is organized by category identified by a symbol:

- , main information,
- , auxiliary information,
- , ship handling information,
- , weather information,
- , seabed information.
- , target/buoy information,

- , property information,
- , route information,
- , main information system,
- , cursor information system,
- , auxiliary cursor information system,

The dialog box of the configuration consists of two parts:

- Windows, area corresponding to the information bar or pages to configure.
- Information, area corresponding to the list of pieces of information from the bar or pages.

Each area has its own toolbar to:

- Add (a bar, page or information) after the selected item, if no item is selected, the item is added to the beginning.
- Delete the selected item.
- Edit the properties of the selected item: the title for a bar or page, the label for information.

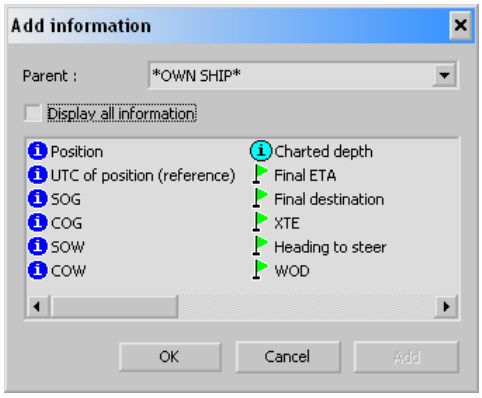
Editing properties of geographic position information is used to select the display format: geographic format with specific datum or UTM format for example.

- Move the selected item.

Important

TITLES AND DEFAULT LABELS CANNOT BE TRANSLATED INTO THE APPROPRIATE LANGUAGE, THE DEFAULT TERMS HAVE BEEN TRANSLATED INTO THE LANGUAGE OF THE FIRST EXECUTION OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS IS BECAUSE THE OPERATOR CAN CHANGE THE TERMS AS HE WANTS, WHICH MEANS THAT THE SOFTWARE DOES NOT TRANSLATE.

To add a piece of information:

Step	Action
1.	Select in the left window, the name of the bar or pages to which you want to add a piece of information.
2.	Select the item in the right part where your new information will be inserted.
3.	Click the ✚ button, or click right on the list and select **Add information** command. *The* Add information *dialog box opens, displaying the available pieces of information.* 
4.	Select a parent (i.e. to which element information you will add must be related). **Note**: When you select *OWN SHIP* as the parent, the piece of information you will add will always concern the Own Ship, even if you change it afterwards.
5.	The list of pieces of information is made with those on the parent and those absent from the window. If you want to display all pieces of information, check the **Display all information** box
6.	Select the piece of information you want to add.
7.	Validate and close dialog box by clicking **OK**, or just add by clicking **Add**.
8.	Optionally change the label by double clicking on it or using the property button.
9.	Repeat the same steps anytime you want to add a piece of information.
10.	When finished, click **OK** on the first dialog box.
11.	End of procedure.

III GECDIS DISPLAY

The section I.3.1 (page 10) provides a detailed content of the Gecdis screen description. This chapter presents different concepts to work properly with Gecdis.

III.1 The Scales

Gecdis gives you the possibility to change the scale of the main view, which default ranges from 1/100 to 1/100 000 000. This range may change depending on the chart module.

Important

IT IS VERY IMPORTANT THAT YOU CONFIGURE THE EXACT DIMENSIONS OF YOUR SCREEN (SEE II.2.1 PAGE 30). IF YOU DO NOT CONFIGURE THEM, THE MAIN VIEW AND ALL OF ITS ELEMENTS MAY BE DISPROPORTIONATE AND THE SCALE WILL NOT BE ACCURATE.

You can either change progressively the scale or assign directly a new scale.

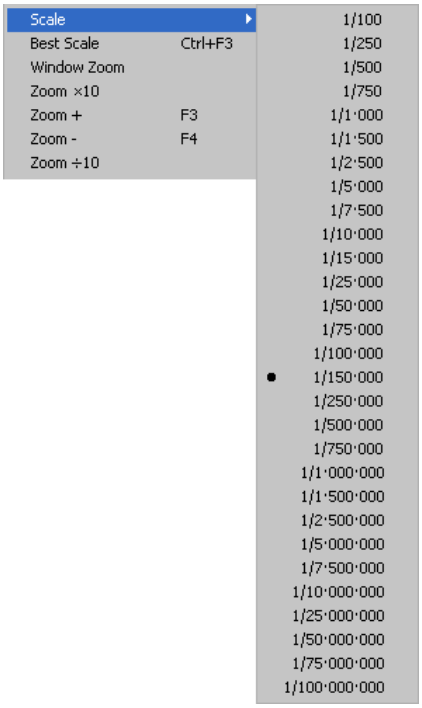


Figure 42 - Default scales menu

To change the scale, you can:

- Use the **Scale** menu from **Display** menu directly to select the scale.
- Use the **Display** menu with scale command:
  - **Best scale**, selects the most appropriate scale for the current chart.
  - **Window Zoom**, focuses the view on a rectangle around the cursor (equals to holding a left click holding the Shift key). When the rectangle is visible, you can change its size with the + and - keys.
  - **Zoom x10**, multiplies the display by ten.

- **Zoom +**, skips to the following scale (is roughly equivalent to double the scale).
- **Zoom -**, skips to the precedent scale (is roughly equivalent to divide the scale by 2).
- **Zoom ÷10**, divides the display by ten.

- Use the toolbars.
- Use the shortcuts, for that, see section I.2.1 page 6.

The scale is accurate at the center of the screen (it is adapted to the average latitude) and is less accurate to the vertical edges, especially at very small scales.

III.2 Color Mode

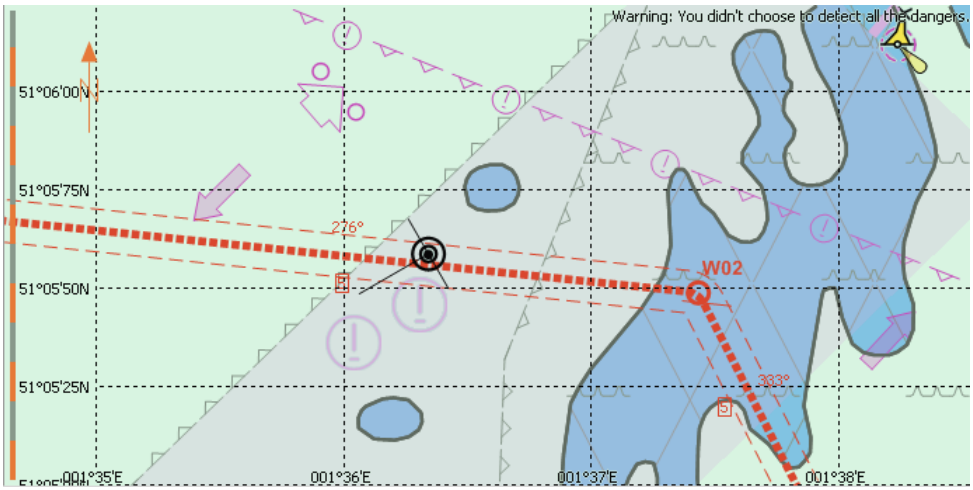
Color graphics and text on the screen is dependent on the ambient light so as not to blind the operator or be unreadable.

Important

USE OF THE BRIGHTNESS CONTROL MAY INHIBIT VISIBILITY OF INFORMATION AT NIGHT. MOREOVER IT MODIFIES THE CURSOR AND THE COLORS OF THE SYSTEM EVEN WITH OTHER APPLICATIONS THAN GECDIS.

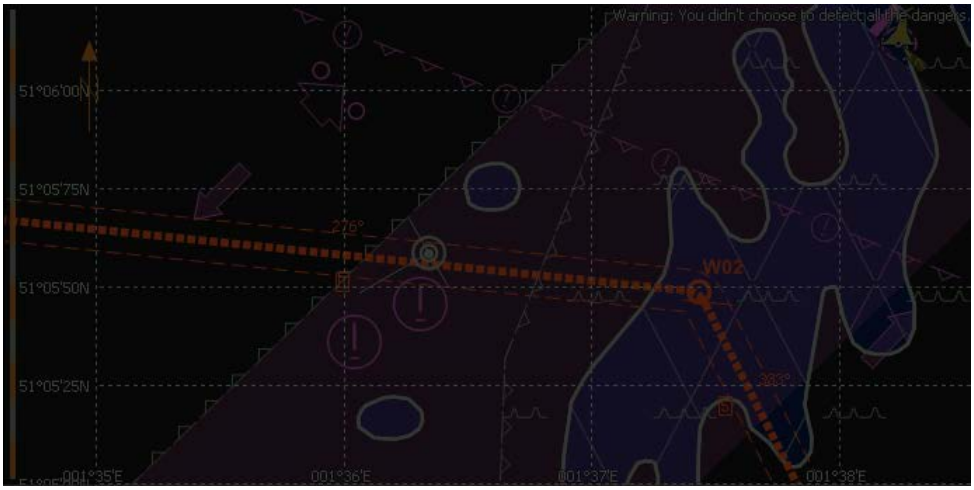
Gecdis uses three color modes to be ECDIS compliant. These modes have been specifically designed to be used at some point in the day:

- Day



- Dusk

- Night



By default the background Day mode is white and Dusk mode is black. See section II.2.2 page 30 to change this behavior.

To change the color mode, you can:

- Use the **Colour Mode** menu from **Display** menu and select the mode.

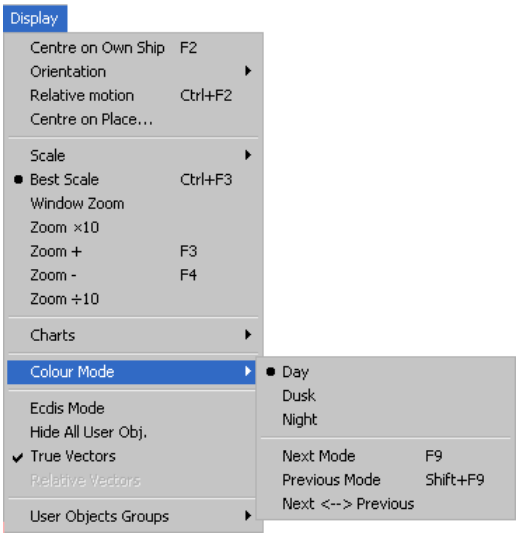


Figure 43 - The color modes menu

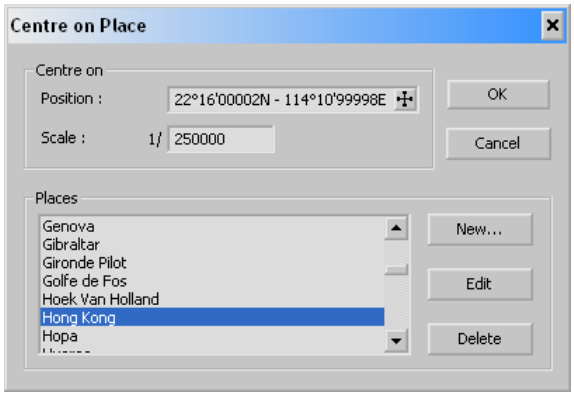
- Use the shortcuts, for that, see section I.2.1, page 6.

III.3 Centring on a Place

Wherever your main view is you can centre it on a specific place anywhere on Earth. The places can also be edited, deleted, etc.

Centring on a place disable the motion mode on a mobile if it was active.

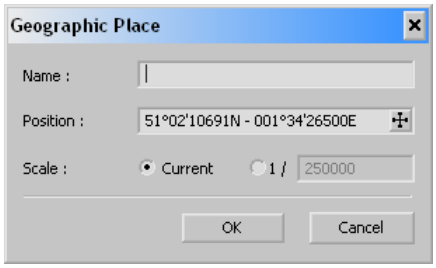
To centre the main view on a place:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Display** menu and then **Centre on Place**… *The following dialog box appears:* 
2.	In the *Centre on Place* dialog box, some default places are specified. Select the place on which you want the main view to be centred.
3.	Optionally, in the **Scale** field change the scale you want to display the place with. This main view will be centred on this place with the scale you have just specified.
4.	Click **OK**.
5.	End of procedure.

Important

IF YOU HAVE SPECIFIED A SCALE, ALL FUTURE PLACES YOU WILL CENTRE ON WILL HAVE THE SAME SCALE IF YOU DO NOT CHANGE IT.

To add a place to centre on:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Display** menu, **Centre on Place...** and then **New...**. *The following dialog box appears:* 
2.	In the *Geographic Place* dialog box, enter the **Name** of the new place, its **Position** and choose your desired **Scale**.
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

To edit a place:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Display**, **Centre on Place...** and select the place you want to edit.
2.	Click **Edit** and change your desired settings in the *Geographic Place* dialog box.
3.	When finished, click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

To remove a place:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Display**, **Centre on Place...** and select the place you want to remove.
2.	Click **Delete** and **Yes** in the warning message.
3.	In the *Centre on Place* dialog box, click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

III.4 Centring on a Mobile

Centring on a mobile is to move the main view but also to enable the motion control on this and update the orientation if head-up mode is enabling.

Centring command on a mobile is a flip-flop command, i.e., it is reversed depending on the current state of the object: with a mobile already centered with motion control, this command stop the motion control.

III.4.1 On Own Ship

To centre on Own Ship, do one of the following:

- Click the **Centre on Own Ship** line in the **Display** menu.

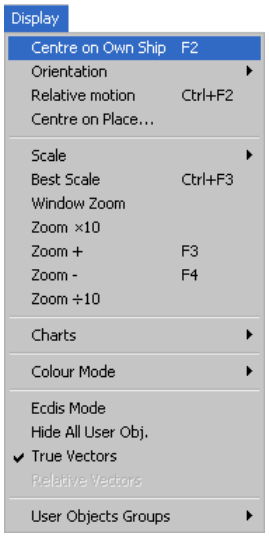


Figure 44 - Display menu

- Use the toolbars.

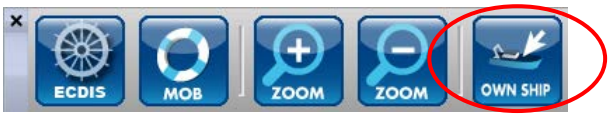


Figure 45 - Default horizontal toolbar

- Use the shortcuts, for that, see section I.2.1 page 6.

III.4.2 On Any Mobile

To centre on a mobile, do one of the following:

- In mobile list (see section IV.3 page 76), select the mobile and click **Centre** button.

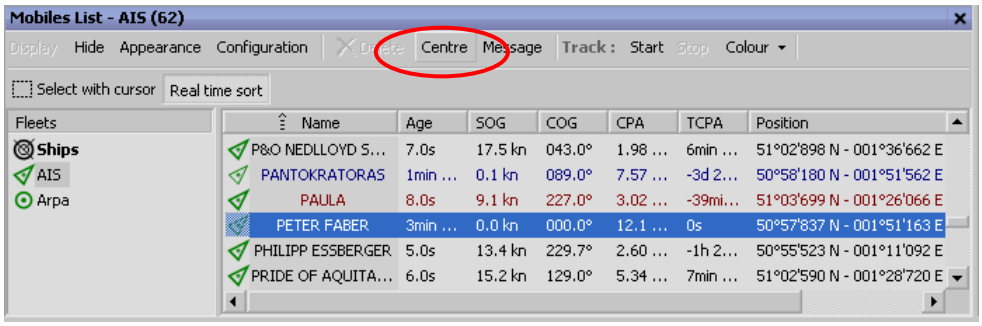


Figure 46 - Centre command in mobile list

- In mobile list (see section IV.3 page 76), double click on the mobile. This action is special not only because it will centre the screen but also add mobile services in the Object Watch window. This case is particularly interesting to follow the mobile (and other).
- In the main view if the mobile is displayed, select it with right click. Then, click on the **Centre** button in the *Object Information* window. This case is particularly interesting to follow the mobile.

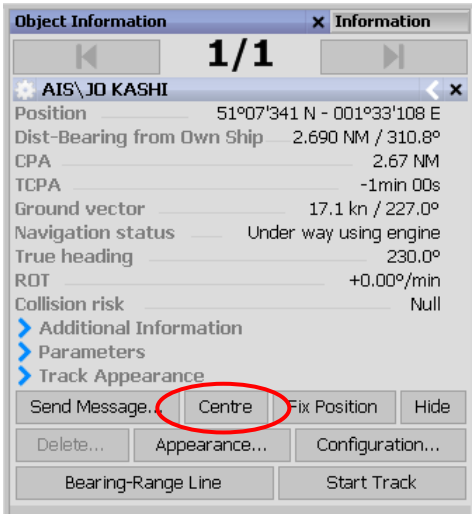


Figure 47 - Centre command in the Object information window of the mobile

III.4.3 MOTION CONTROL

Motion Control manages how the main view follows a mobile (Own Ship or any mobile). When centering on a mobile is activated, the motion control of the main view has too. You should know that the motion control is configurable, see section II.2.3 page 31 for more details.

III.4.3.1 Relative and True Motion

The motion control keeps the mobile in the main view. Two modes are possible:

- **Relative motion**. In this mode, the mobile is at a fixed position in the view, and all other objects are moving when the mobile moves. You can adjust the mobile position in the view with the keyboard arrows.

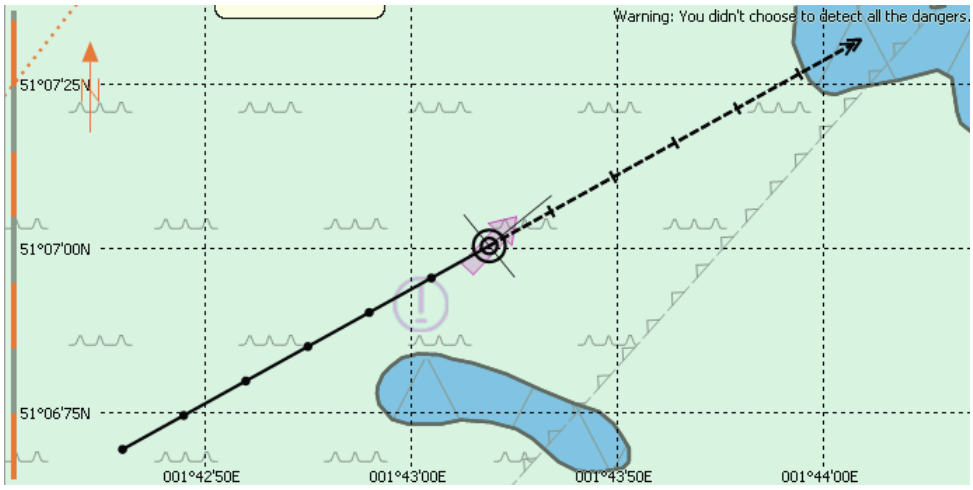


Figure 48 - Relative motion

- **True motion**. In this mode, mobile movements are visible in the view as the fixed objects remain in the same place.

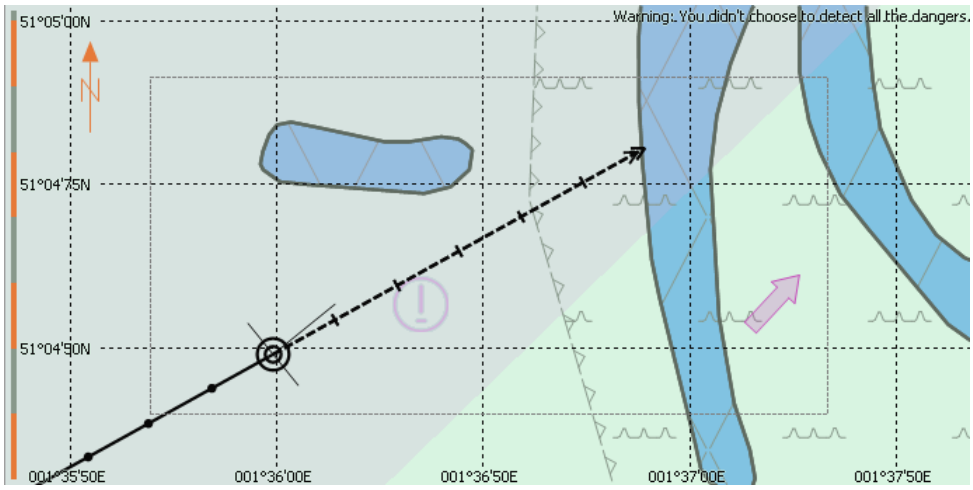


Figure 49 - True motion

True motion mode is more powerful than relative motion.

To change the motion control mode, do one of the following:

- Click the **Relative motion** line in the **Display** menu. The state of this line indicates the current mode.
- Use the shortcut, for that, see section I.2.1 page 6.

III.4.3.2 Main view orientation

There are three different orientations:

- **North-up**, the view is oriented according to the geographic north. It is the default mode.

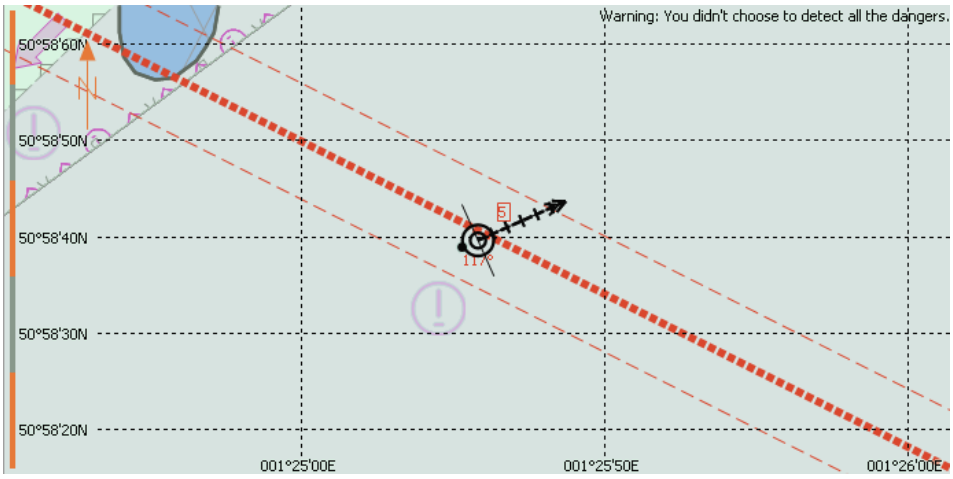


Figure 50 - North-up orientation

- **Head-up**, the view is oriented according to the mobile true heading.

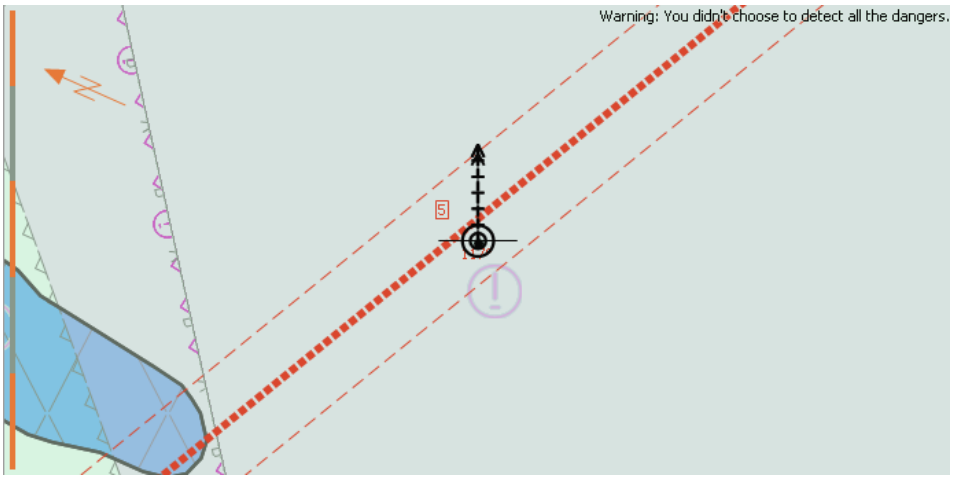


Figure 51 - Head-up orientation

- **Leg-up**, the view is oriented according to the current leg route. It is strongly recommended to use this mode only with route monitoring enabled.

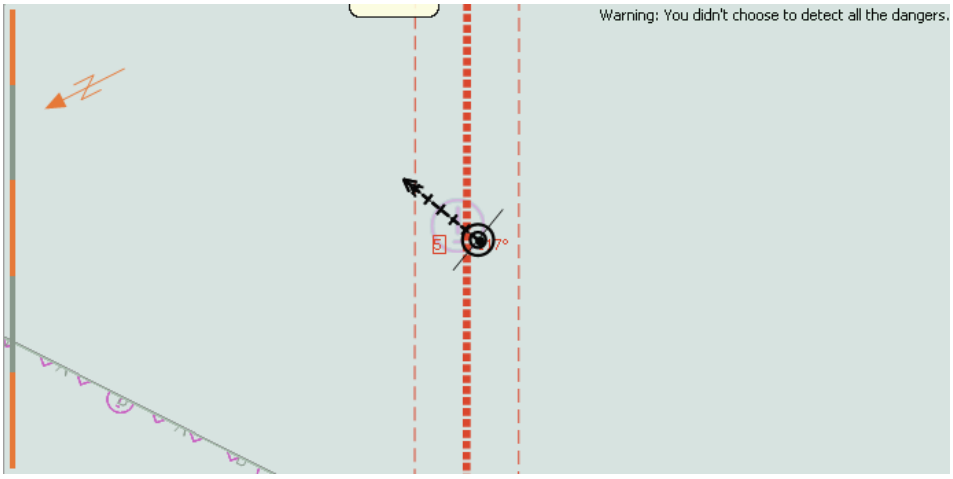


Figure 52 - Leg-up orientation

North-up orientation is more powerful.

To change the orientation, you can:

- Use the **Orientation** menu from **Display** menu and select the mode.

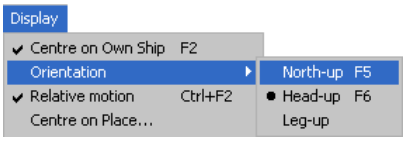


Figure 53 - The orientation menu

- Use the shortcuts, for that, see section I.2.1 page 6.

III.5 Alarms

Alarms are used to draw the user's attention to an abnormal modification in the system status and/or its content.

Alarms aim at alerting you when:

- The system has been altered.
- Data have been modified.
- Information has been taken into account.

All alarms are gathered into three main categories, depending on their effect on the use of the software:

- General information (e.g.: when Gecdis starts).
- Warnings (e.g. when no Own Ship is defined).
- Errors. This kind of message is displayed when a malfunction has occurred (e.g., if an error has occurred on a communication port).

These alarms can be displayed:

- In the Alarm window.
- In the black box.

III.5.1 The Alarm Window

The alarm window is resizable and it is located by default above the screen.

You can see this window as the first alarm is displayed; the last received alarm is constantly displayed. This alarm blinks as long as the user has not clicked above.

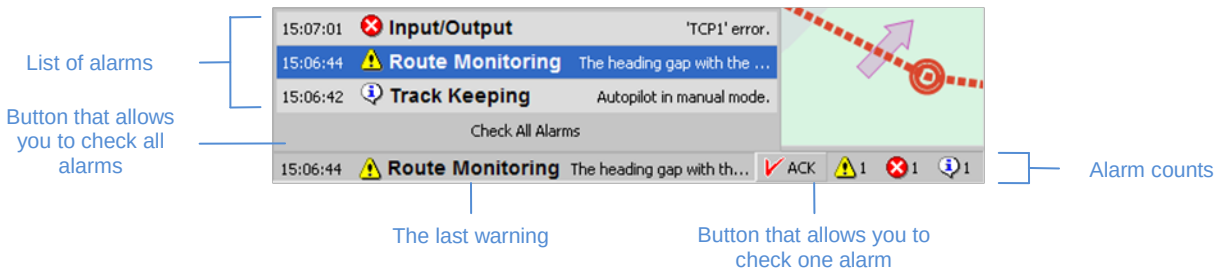

List of alarms
Button that allows you to check all alarms
15:07:01 Input/Output 'TCP1' error.
15:06:44 Route Monitoring The heading gap with the ...
15:06:42 Track Keeping Autopilot in manual mode.
Check All Alarms
15:06:44 Route Monitoring The heading gap with th...
ACK
1
1
1
Alarm counts
The last warning
Button that allows you to check one alarm

Figure 54 - The Alarm Window

See section II.6, page 37 for further information on how to configure the alarms to be displayed in this window.

To check the last alarm:

Step	Action
1.	Click **ACK** button in the status bar or press [F11] shortcut (see section I.2.1, page 6).
2.	Do the same thing as many times as there are alarms. Warning messages are the first messages to be removed, error messages are the second ones and information message are the last ones.
3.	End of procedure.

To check all alarms at the same time:

Step	Action
1.	Click the window that displays the last alarm.
2.	Click on **Check All Alarms** button
3.	End of procedure.

III.5.2 THE BLACK BOX

III.5.2.1 Overview

The black box is a database that stores all alarms and other events, for informative use. As it offers a history of the software use, it will mainly be used to analyze its behavior if a problem occurs.

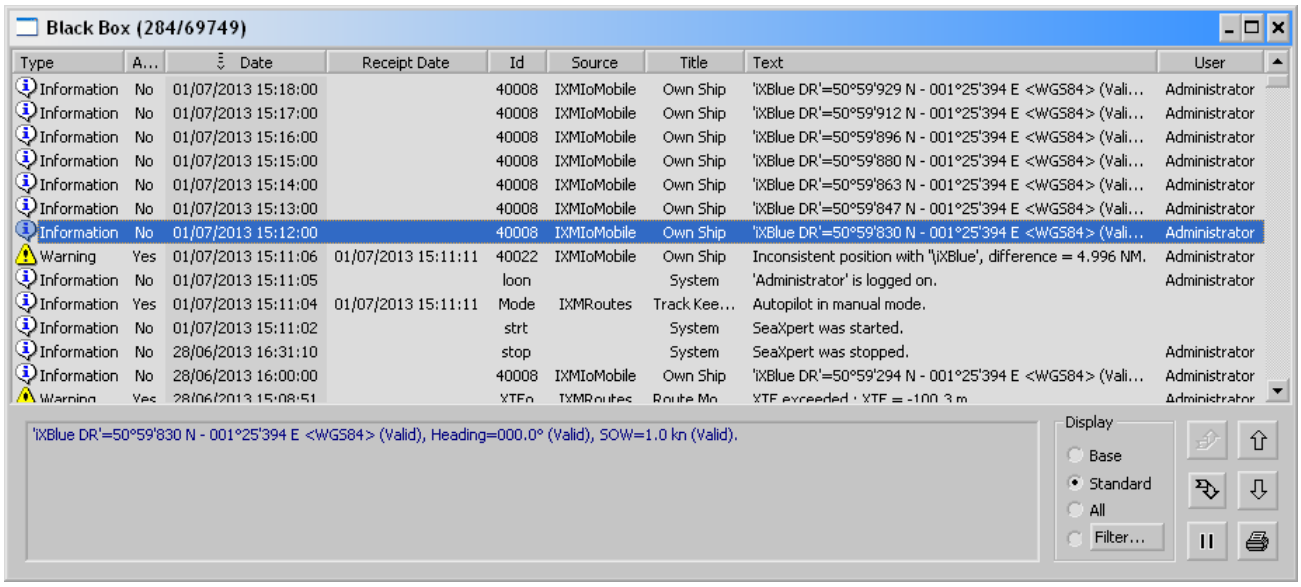

Black Box (284/69749)
Type A... Date Receipt Date Id Source Title Text User
Information No 01/07/2013 15:18:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'929 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 15:17:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'912 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 15:16:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'896 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 15:15:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'880 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 15:14:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'863 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 15:13:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'847 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 15:12:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'830 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
Warning Yes 01/07/2013 15:11:06 01/07/2013 15:11:11 40022 IXMIoMobile Own Ship Inconsistent position with '\iXBlue', difference = 4.996 NM. Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 15:11:05 loon System 'Administrator' is logged on. Administrator
Information Yes 01/07/2013 15:11:04 01/07/2013 15:11:11 Mode IXMRoutes Track Kee... Autopilot in manual mode.
Information No 01/07/2013 15:11:02 strt System SeaXpert was started.
Information No 28/06/2013 16:31:10 stop System SeaXpert was stopped. Administrator
Information No 28/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'294 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Vali... Administrator
'iXBlue DR'=50°59'830 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Valid), Heading=000.0° (Valid), SOW=1.0 kn (Valid).
Display
Base
Standard
All
Filter...

Figure 55 - The Black Box

Above this window, the table gathers all error messages and characteristics as follows:

- **Type**, the type of the message: Information, Warning or Error.
- **Alarm**, specifies whether the message is an alarm.
- **Date**, the date of the event. This is the default sort column (newest to oldest).
- **Receipt Date**, the date when the event has been acknowledged.
- **Id**, the identifier of the event, i.e., the code identifying it and differentiating it from the other events for a specific module (source).
- **Source**, the module of the event.
- **Title**, the title of the event.
- **Text**, the description of the event.
- **User**, the user that was logged in when the event occurred.

You can use any column to sort the list in one way or another.

Below the window a pane shows the message, and a second pane explains this message, when required.

Each event has its own life. The default lifetime is 7 days. Some have very short as one hour (error input / output, for example) or very long as 3 months (position report to multiple 4 o'clock).

Bottom-right of the window, six commands are available:

- Allows you to move up and down in the list of events.
- Allows you to move in the events that specify that Gecdis has been launched.
- Allows you to pause the list. Any new events will not be displayed, which can be useful when analyzing when events are added.
- Allows you to print the black box with the events and the order of presentation on the screen.

To open the black box:

In the **View** menu, select **Black Box…**

III.5.2.2 Configuring the Display of the Events

The black box has three levels of event display that have been previously set:

- **Base** level displays the ECDIS-type events, such as chart databases or position report.
- **Standard** level displays the base events, alarms and some particular events, such as Gecdis launch, autopilot mode, user log on, etc...
- **Full** level displays all events.

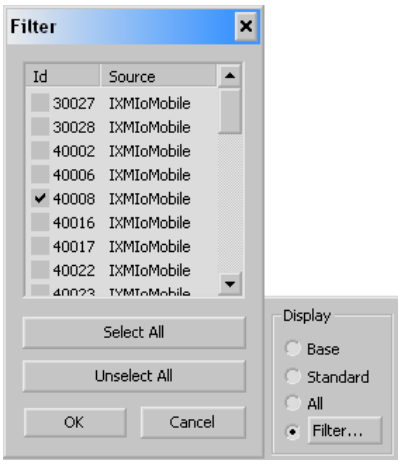
Using them allows you to display only a part of all events that have been generated while using Gecdis, to print only interesting events for example.

Figure 56 - Levels of event display

However, if none of them meets your needs and you want, for example, to display some additional events of the **Full** level, but not all of them, you can customize the display of events. To do so, you need to check your desired events and uncheck the other ones.
In the *Filter* dialog box, events are displayed as a list. For each of them, the ID and source are indicated. You can only select the events that have already appeared in the black box. If a new type of event occurs after the filter has been configured, this event will be displayed by default in the black box. You will be able to remove it from display later.

To select a level of event display:
In the *Black box* dialog box, click the desired level in the **Display** group zone.

To customize the display level of events:

Step	Action
1.	In the *Black Box* dialog box, click the **Filter…** button. 
2.	Select the events to be displayed.
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

For example, if you want to control the geographical positions of the last 12 hours, you can filter the events required by ECDIS standard, to do this:

Step	Action
1.	Deselect all the events by clicking the **Unselect All** button.
2.	Check the box corresponding to the event 40008 of the IXMIoMobile source (see the window displayed in step 1 of the above procedure).
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

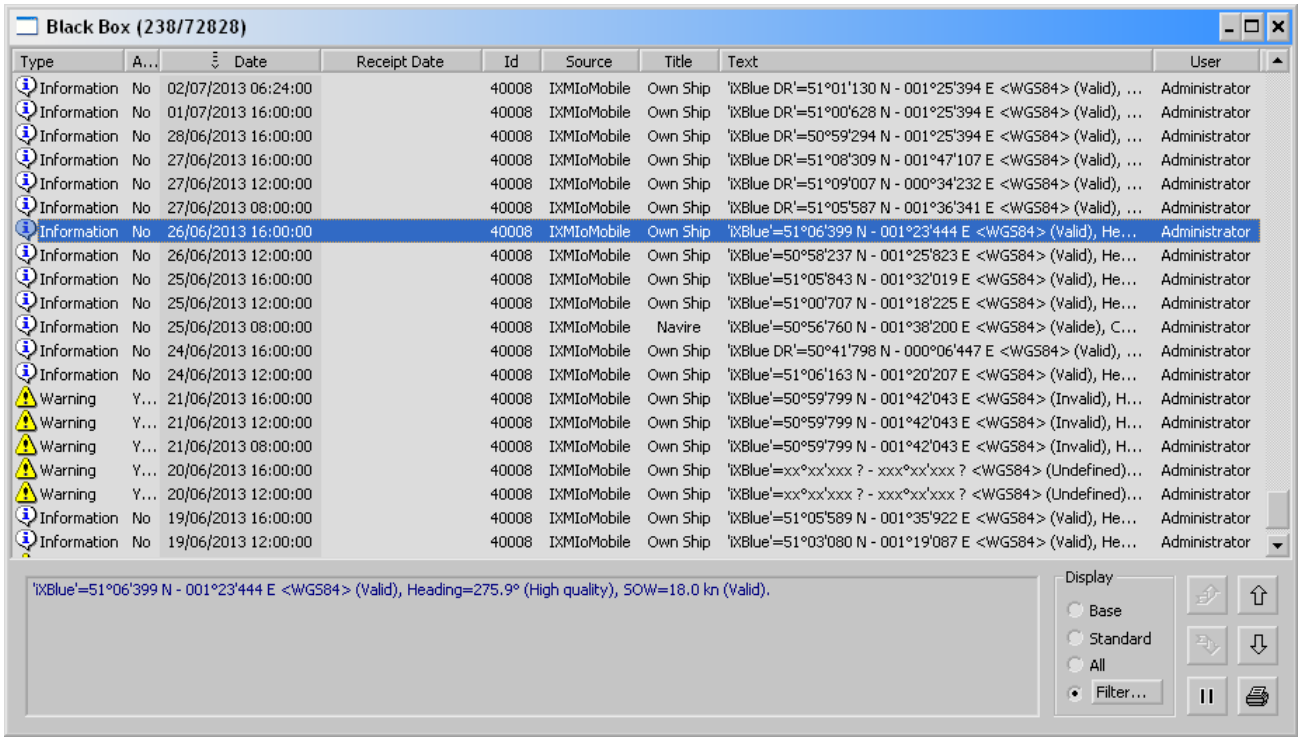

Black Box (238/72828)
Type A... Date Receipt Date Id Source Title Text User
Information No 02/07/2013 06:24:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=51°01'130 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Valid), ... Administrator
Information No 01/07/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=51°00'628 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Valid), ... Administrator
Information No 28/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°59'294 N - 001°25'394 E <WGS84> (Valid), ... Administrator
Information No 27/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=51°08'309 N - 001°47'107 E <WGS84> (Valid), ... Administrator
Information No 27/06/2013 12:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=51°09'007 N - 000°34'232 E <WGS84> (Valid), ... Administrator
Information No 27/06/2013 08:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=51°05'587 N - 001°36'341 E <WGS84> (Valid), ... Administrator
Information No 26/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=51°06'399 N - 001°23'444 E <WGS84> (Valid), He... Administrator
Information No 26/06/2013 12:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=50°58'237 N - 001°25'823 E <WGS84> (Valid), He... Administrator
Information No 25/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=51°05'843 N - 001°32'019 E <WGS84> (Valid), He... Administrator
Information No 25/06/2013 12:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=51°00'707 N - 001°18'225 E <WGS84> (Valid), He... Administrator
Information No 25/06/2013 08:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Navire 'iXBlue'=50°56'760 N - 001°38'200 E <WGS84> (Valide), C... Administrator
Information No 24/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue DR'=50°41'798 N - 000°06'447 E <WGS84> (Valid), ... Administrator
Information No 24/06/2013 12:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=51°06'163 N - 001°20'207 E <WGS84> (Valid), He... Administrator
Warning Y... 21/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=50°59'799 N - 001°42'043 E <WGS84> (Invalid), H... Administrator
Warning Y... 21/06/2013 12:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=50°59'799 N - 001°42'043 E <WGS84> (Invalid), H... Administrator
Warning Y... 21/06/2013 08:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=50°59'799 N - 001°42'043 E <WGS84> (Invalid), H... Administrator
Warning Y... 20/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=xx°xx'xxx ? - xxx°xx'xxx ? <WGS84> (Undefined)... Administrator
Warning Y... 20/06/2013 12:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=xx°xx'xxx ? - xxx°xx'xxx ? <WGS84> (Undefined)... Administrator
Information No 19/06/2013 16:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=51°05'589 N - 001°35'922 E <WGS84> (Valid), He... Administrator
Information No 19/06/2013 12:00:00 40008 IXMIoMobile Own Ship 'iXBlue'=51°03'080 N - 001°19'087 E <WGS84> (Valid), He... Administrator
'iXBlue'=51°06'399 N - 001°23'444 E <WGS84> (Valid), Heading=275.9° (High quality), SOW=18.0 kn (Valid).
Display
Base
Standard
All
Filter...

Figure 57 - Filtered Black Box

III.6 The View Menu

Gecdis screen consists of many different windows: the information bar, the information pages, etc. Most gathered in the **View** menu. This menu allows you to choose to display or not each one of them.

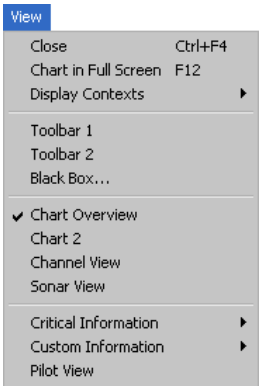


Figure 58 - The View Menu

Here are the main commands:

- **Close**, allows you to close the window that has focus except for the main view. Please note that this command cannot be the desired result when the software is configured to automatically activate the window under the mouse cursor (see section II.10.2.1 page 47).
- **Chart in Full Screen**, allows you to maximize or restore the size of the main view (toggle command).
- **Display Contexts**, allows you to display a configuration of Gecdis display that has been previously set (see section III.7 page 69).
- **Toolbar 1**, allows you to display/close the horizontal toolbar (toggle command). See section I.3.1.5 page 13.
- **Toolbar 2**, allows you to display/close the vertical toolbar (toggle command).
- **Black Box...**, allows you to display/close the dialog box (toggle command) to check the event history. See section III.5.2 page 64.
- **Chart Overview**, allows you to display/close the chart overview (toggle command). This view is the perfect complement to the main view to geographically locate. The context menu for this view can make it on the main view or ship and set its scale (respectively relative or absolute).

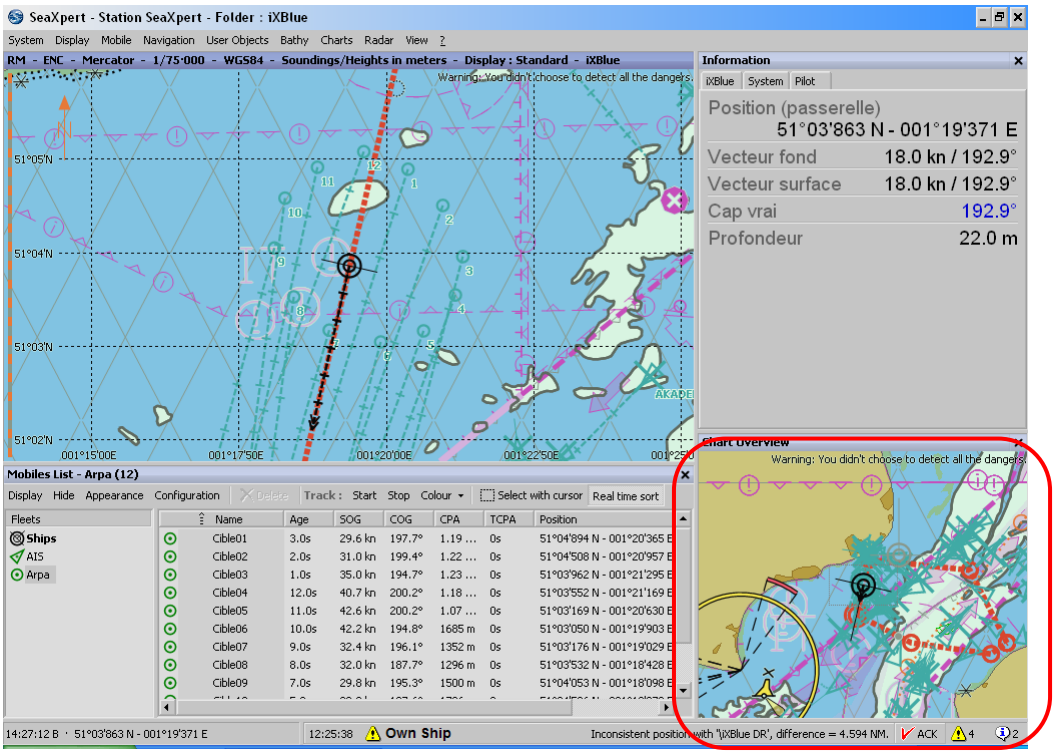


Figure 59 - The Chart Overview

- **Chart 2**, allows you to display/close another main view with the same scale (toggle command). You can resize this second window, and it can be used to display another type of information (e.g.: for oceanographic use). When your cursor moves into this window, its position is represented in the main view.

- **Critical Information**, allows you to open a submenu to critical information window management. See I.3.1.6 page 13.
- **Custom Information**, allows you to open a submenu to display/close the information bar and pages windows (toggle command). See I.3.1.6 page 13.
- **Channel View**, allows you to display/close a leg-up window (toggle command) to have a better appreciation on route monitoring or track keeping. See section VII.3.9 page 206.
- **Pilot View**, allows you to display/close the pilot view (toggle command). Similarly to channel view but with a 3D aspect, it is an example of a view added by an external module (IXMRoutes). See section VII.3.7 page 203.

III.7 The Display Context

A display context is a screen configuration identifying a specific use of the software. It is possible to save this specific configuration to display it later. To give an example, you may have decided to display the information windows but no chart overview, in case you want to have maximum available space on screen. Anytime you wish to skip to this configuration, you will have to load the corresponding display context.

Channelling is a specific use of display contexts. A leg can be assigned to a specific display context. For more details, see VII.3.10 page 207.

The management menu display context is composed of two parts:

- The first part consists of only one command that allows you to manage contexts.
- A second part that is automatically constructed according to the contexts added. Each line of this part corresponds to a command to recall a context.

The new commands of the menu second part can be added when customizing the toolbar (see II.5.1 page 35).

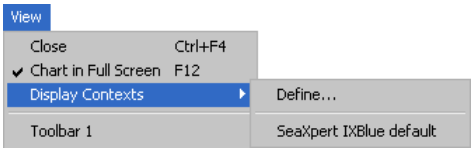
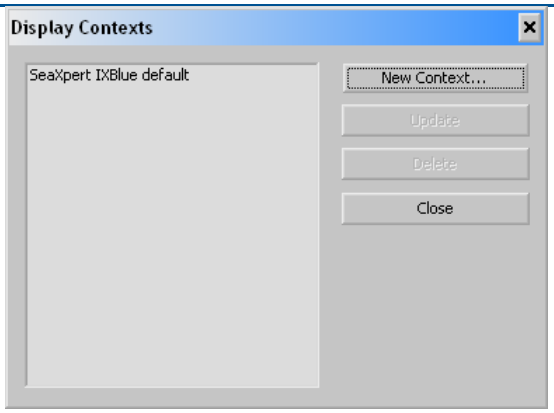


Figure 60 - Display contexts menu

To create a display context:

Step	Action
1.	Define what window and views are present. You can set the zoom factor that will be also recorded in the display context.
2.	Click **View**, point to **Display contexts** and click **Define…** *The* Display Contexts *dialog box opens:*

Step	Action



3.	On the *Display Contexts* dialog box, click **New Context…** and enter a name for the new display context in the **Save current views configuration** as field of the *Save Configuration* dialog box. The current configuration of the software (display context, display of windows, zoom factor) is saved.
4.	If you further change the general display context of the software and you want to display this display context, you just have to select it.
5.	End of procedure.

To select a display context you have already defined:

Step	Action
1.	Click **View** menu and point to **Display contexts**. *A new menu opens. If you have already defined display contexts, the list of the display contexts is displayed in this menu.*
2.	Select your desired display context.
3.	End of procedure.

To update a display context:

Step	Action
1.	Click **View** menu, point to **Display Contexts** and click **Define…**
2.	In the left list of the *Display Contexts* dialog box, select the display context you want to update and click **Update**. The selected display context has been updated to the current configuration of the software.
3.	To close the dialog box, click **Close**.
4.	End of procedure.

Important

DO NOT CONFUSE UPDATED WITH THE SELECTION OF A DISPLAY CONTEXT.

To delete a display context:

Step	Action
1.	Click **View** menu, point to **Display contexts** and click **Define…**
2.	In the left list of the *Display contexts* dialog box, select the display context you want to delete and click **Delete**.
3.	To close the dialog box, click **Close**.
4.	End of procedure.

IV MOBILES AND FLEETS

IV.1 Navigation

IV.1.1 MOBILES' VECTORS

A heading defines how the centre line of a ship is oriented compared with the geographical north. It does not deal with drift notion – a ship berthed has a course. When the ship moves, the heading becomes a course.

Course value may be quite different from heading one. Two elements may change the course of a ship: wind and current.

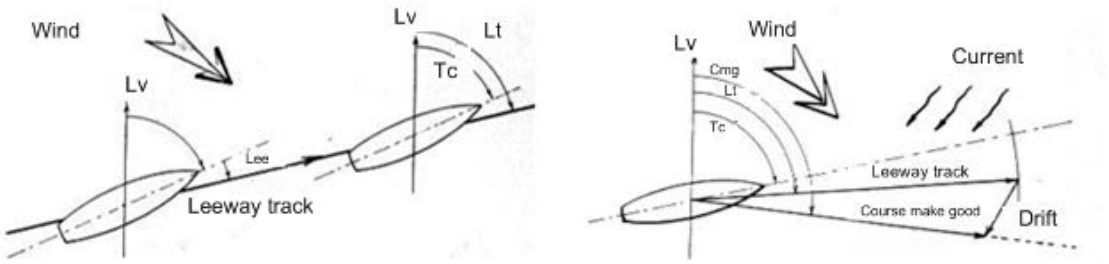


Figure 61 - Ship's Vectors

Wind makes the ship drift and vary. Wind drift is expressed with an angle, i.e., leeway angle. When added to true heading, this angle is the angle of the route in relation to sea (leeway track).

Course make good, which is the movement of a ship in relation to the bottom of the water, is the result of leeway track and the water that bears it (the current drift). So:

- Leeway track = true heading + leeway
- Course make good = Leeway track + current drift

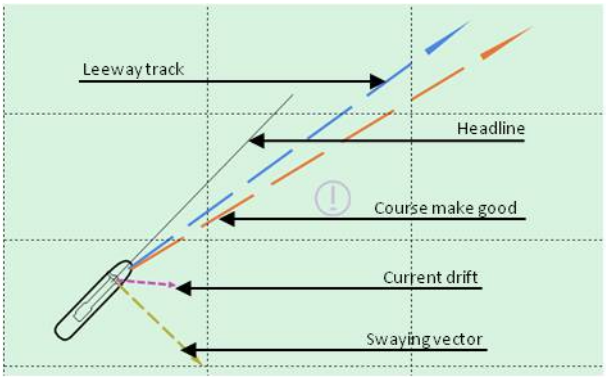


Figure 62 - ECS vectors representation

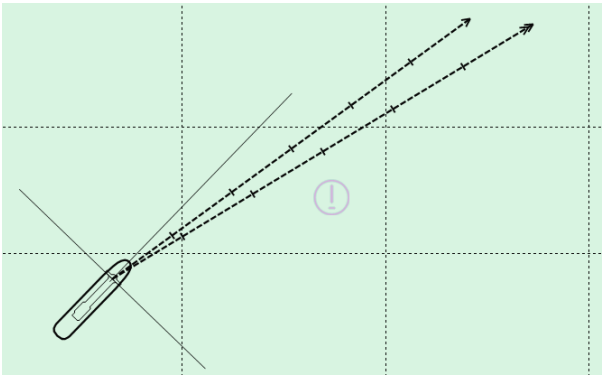


Figure 63 - ECDIS vectors representation

Gecdis allows you to configure information about leeway track, course make good and drifts.

Leeway track represents COW and SOW. It needs true heading to be added.

Current set and speed generate current drift. If both of them are not available, current drift will not be displayed and will be considered as nil.

Course make good's vector is generated by SOG and COG .

Swaying vector is generated by swaying course and speed information. This vector is the lateral projection of the course make good.

Finally vectors will not be represented in the same way, whether in ECDIS or ECS mode, as described in the figure above.

IV.1.2 APPARENT WIND AND TRUE WIND

True wind defines the wind that would be felt if the ship would be motionless on the ground. Apparent wind is the wind that a person feels on a moving ship, i.e., the wind that is acquired by an anemometer and a weather vane.

It is the result of two motions, the real motion of the air (true wind) and the ship (relative wind):

- Apparent wind = True wind + Relative wind.

So if a ship is motionless on the ground, apparent wind is the same as true wind.

While navigating, apparent wind is not so useful, except concerning aircrafts; the true wind is more important and is annotated in log books. It can be computed in relation to wind, as well as ship's COG and SOG.

Relative wind has the same speed as the ship, but its direction is the opposite of the ship:

- True wind = Apparent wind + Ship's speed.

Wind configuration is performed in the *Input/Output & Mobiles Configuration* dialog box.

You can add:

- True wind speed
- True wind bearing
- Apparent wind speed
- Apparent wind bearing

Each of them can be dead reckoned, computed by the software or acquired. However to compute true wind, the software requires that information on apparent wind be dead reckoned or acquired. The same process occurs to compute apparent wind.

The following shows how to compute true wind and apparent wind:

- Example 1: If the vessel is heading west at 7 knots and the wind is from the east at 10 knots, the relative wind is 3 knots at 180 degrees. In this same example, the theoretical wind is 10 knots at 180 degrees (if the boat suddenly stops, the wind will be at the full 10 knots come from the stern of the vessel 180 degrees from the bow).
- Example 2: If the vessel is heading west at 5 knots and the wind is from the southeast at 7.07 knots, the relative wind is 5 knots at 270 degrees. In this same example the theoretical wind is 7.07 knots at 225 degrees (if the boat suddenly stops, the wind will be at the full 7.07 knots come from the port-quarter of the vessel 225 degrees from the bow).

IV.2 The Own Ship

You can assign several mobiles to your ship (e.g. the one representing your GPS and the other one dead reckoning). The Own Ship (with upper cases) is the main representation of this ship that will be taken as the reference. For example, when a mobile is defined as the Own Ship, you will only be able to create an event for this one.

To assign a mobile as the Own Ship:

Important

YOU CAN DEFINE SEVERAL MOBILES FOR YOUR SHIP, BUT ONLY ONE MOBILE WILL BE DEFINED AS THE OWN SHIP.

Step	Action
1.	Click **Mobile** menu and then **Open Mobile List…**
2.	In the list of mobiles, select a mobile then click **on** Own Ship **.**
3.	End of procedure.

To set the parameters of your Own Ship:

Important

IT IS IMPORTANT TO SET THE CHARACTERISTICS OF YOUR SHIP.

Step	Action
1.	Click **System**, **Settings**, **I/O and Mobiles** and then **Own Ship Characteristics….**
2.	In the *Own Ship Characteristics* dialog box, set the parameters to change the default information with information relative to your ship.
3.	End of procedure.

IV.2.1 SIZES

The **Sizes** tab allows you to configure the size of the Own Ship.
If you click **Outline Filename…**, a list of example files is displayed. An example file can define very accurate measurements for your ship. You can change an outline file.

If you want to create a ship's outline, refer to appendix E page 338 that describes the fields (parameters) to enter in order to create an outline.

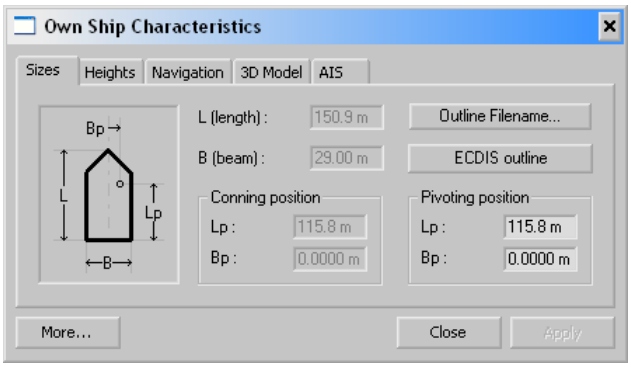


Figure 64 - Own Ship's sizes

(L) Length Represents the total length of your ship.

(B) Beam Represents the total beam of your ship.

Conning Position This position is the reference position of the Own Ship and not necessarily the reference position of the positioning system. The difference between both must be specified in the **Corrections** tab of the **Position** piece of information (see IV.6.5 page 112).

- **Lp** Defines the distance between the rear of the ship and the conning
- **Bp** Defines the distance between the axis of the ship and the conning.

Pivoting Position The pivoting position defines the position in which the ship will pivot.

- **Lp** The distance between the rear of the ship and the pivoting position
- **Bp** The distance between the axis of the ship and the pivoting position (used in dead reckoning mode)

IV.2.2 HEIGHTS

The **Heights** tab allows you to configure the height of the ship, and its draught.

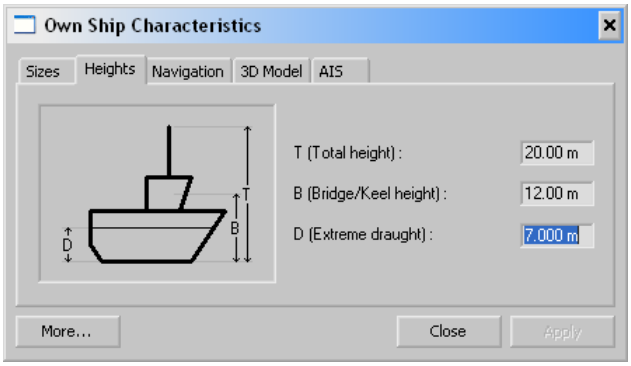


Figure 65 - Own Ship's heights

T (Total height) The total height of your ship.

B (Bridge/Keel height) The height between bridge and keel of your ship.

D (Extreme draught) The maximum value you can assign to your ship's draught. If draught is superior to the one specified, an alarm is generated.

IV.2.3 NAVIGATION PARAMETERS

The **Navigation** tab changes some of the routes' parameters.

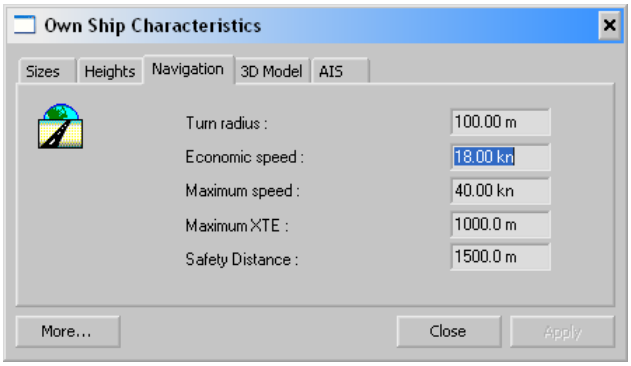


Figure 66 - Own Ship's navigation parameters

Turn radius	The radius of the Own Ship when it turns while in route monitoring..
Economic speed	The default speed of the Own Ship for each leg of a route.
Maximum Speed	The maximum speed that cannot be exceeded, in route planning matters.
Maximum XTE	The maximum error that defaults on the legs of a route.

Explanatory and cinematic pieces of information about the Own ship are available and can be observed in a resizable HTML-typed window. For this, click **More...** button.

Normally information comes from the ship's RPC (*Registre de préparation au combat*, register of preparation to fighting). It is summed up in the `ixm\IXMIoMobile\Ownship.html` file.

IV.3 The Mobiles List

The mobiles list displays the list of all mobiles and fleets, and allows you to manage them. The corresponding dialog box consists in three parts:

- Above, a menu bar allows you to manage mobiles
- On the left, the list of all kinds of mobiles, i.e. Ships and each fleet
- On the right, the mobiles and possibly the trawl net, of the selected element in the left-hand pane and information about them. The pieces of information are gathered into several columns. You can sort them out either in ascending or in descending order.

The menu bar allows you to hide/display objects, and open the dialog boxes about mobile and fleet dead-reckoning, appearance, and configuration. You can also select a mobile, centre and display its related information in the *Object information* window, on the right of the screen. To do so, you must double click the desired mobile.

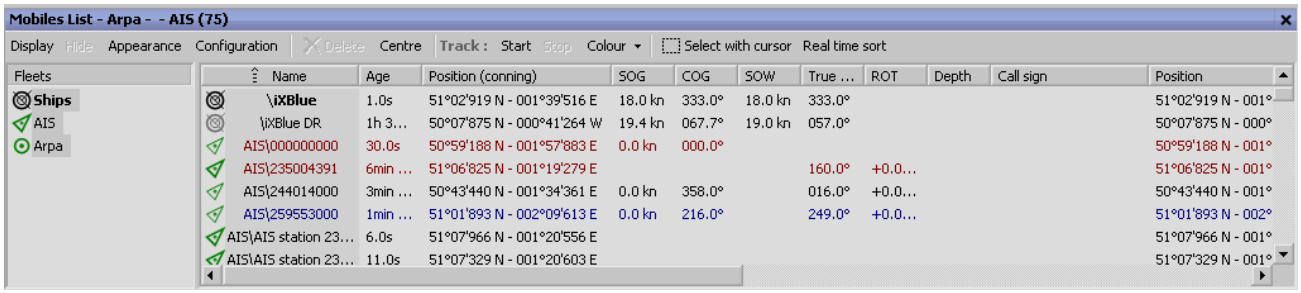


Figure 67 - List of Mobiles

Centre on	Centres and controls a mobile on the main view. The **Centre on** button is then pressed.
Display	Displays the selected mobile, if hidden. When a mobile is displayed, its specific pieces of information are displayed in black.
Hide	Hides the selected mobile in the main view. When a mobile is hidden, its specific pieces of information are displayed in grey.
Dead Reckoning	Opens the Dead Reckoning dialog box (see section 0 page 120).
Appearance	Opens the mobile or fleet appearance dialog box (see section IV.5.1 page 84). If you click this command after selecting Ships, in the left-hand pane, the mobile general appearance dialog box is displayed. If you select a mobile, the specific appearance dialog box of this mobile is displayed.
Configuration	Opens the Input/Output & Mobile Configuration dialog box. See section IV.2 page 74.
Own Ship	Gives the Own Ship status to the selected mobile (see section IV.2 page 74). The button is pressed if the Own Ship is selected.
Select with cursor	Allows to select several mobiles close the ones from the others, by dragging the mouse in the main view.

To open the list of mobiles:

Click **Mobile** and then **Open Mobile List…**

To hide a mobile:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Mobile** menu and then **Open Mobile List…**to open the Mobiles list.
2.	In the left-hand pane, select the category to which the mobile you want to hide belongs.
3.	In the right-hand pane, select your desired mobile.
4.	In the menu bar, click **Hide**.
5.	End of procedure.

You can hide all the mobiles of a category selecting the category and clicking **Hide**.

To centre a mobile:

Double click a mobile, in the right-hand pane. The mobile is then centred on the main view. Would it had been hidden, it had become visible.

To sort out a column:

On the right-hand pane, click the column header of the piece of information you want to sort out. An up or down arrow indicates whether the column is sorted out in descending or ascending order.

IV.4 Alarms

IV.4.1 OWN SHIP SPECIFIC ALARMS

IV.4.1.1 Anti-Collision

Anti-collision allows to compute how lucky the Own Ship is to strike other mobiles (that belong to fleets) and react from this.

Several notions are implied by anti-collision:

- **Allowed Closest Point of Approach** (Allowed CPA), which is the minimum distance from which the captain lets the officer of the watch pass from a ship (if sea traffic or proximity of dangers makes it impossible to operate to respect the Allowed CPA, the officer of the watch gives notice of it to the captain);
- **Minimum Time to Closest Point** (Minimum TCPA), which is a user-defined duration to specify the Minimum TCPA to reach the Allowed CPA.
- CPA and TCPA between the Own Ship and the other mobiles computed from the real time navigation parameters.

For a collision risk to occur, the following things must be gathered:

- CPA between the dangerous mobile and the Own Ship is inferior to the Allowed CPA
- TCPA is a positive value – if TCPA is negative, there is no more collision risk
- TCPA is inferior to the Minimum TCPA

For example, if Allowed CPA is 5 nm and Minimum TCPA is 15 minutes, the mobile of a fleet will be considered as dangerous if TCPA between it and the Own Ship ranges from 0 to 15 minutes before reaching a 5 nm radius around the Own Ship.

On screen, a circle is drawn around the Own Ship to symbolise to the Allowed CPA with a red colour in Non ECDIS mode and an orange color in ECDIS mode.

When a mobile is dangerous, it is surrounded by a red and blinking triangle that points at the top. The following alarm is displayed first, and then each 30 seconds in the alarm bar:

Collision risk with x : CPA=y, TCPA=z

where x is the dangerous mobile, y is the CPA and z is the TCPA between the Own Ship and the dangerous mobile.

You can decide not to generate this alarm, neither in the alarm bar nor in the black box. To do so, uncheck **Periodic report (30 s)** in the *Own Ship Specific Alarms* dialog box.

When the danger is passed, the following alarm is generated, only in the black box.

Collision risk avoided with x: CPA=y, TCPA=z,

Where x is the dangerous mobile for the Own Ship, y is the CPA and z is the TCPA between the Own Ship and the former dangerous mobile

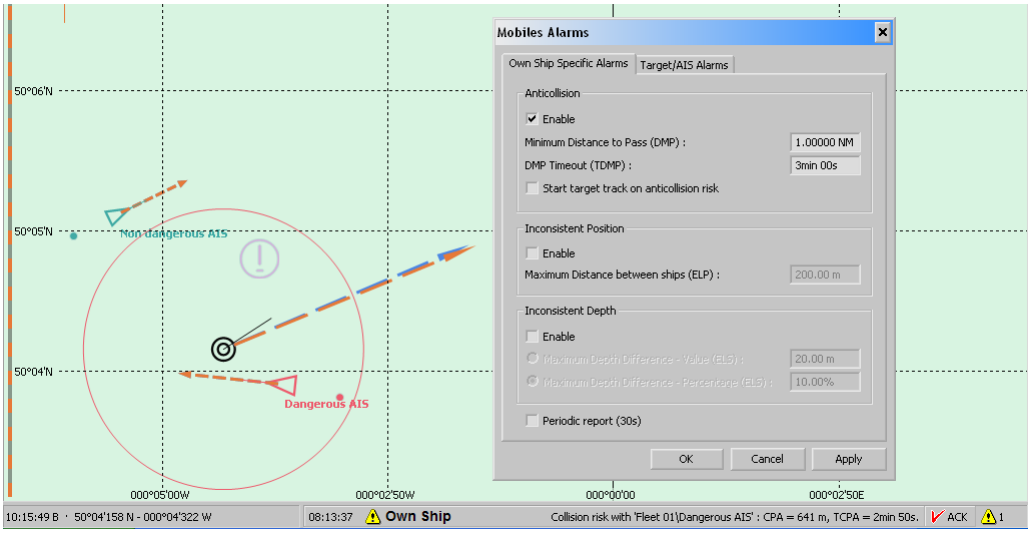


Figure 68 - Anti-collision alarm

To use anti-collision:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **I/O and mobiles**, and then **Alarms…** *The* Mobiles Alarms dialog *box is displayed.*
2.	Click the **Own Ship Specific Alarms** tab.
3.	In **Anticollision** area, check **Enable** and then specify a **DMP** and a **TDMP** in the corresponding fields.
4.	Check **Periodic report (30 s)** to generate an alarm each 30 seconds in case of a collision risk.
5.	Click **OK**.
6.	End of procedure.

IV.4.1.2 Inconsistent Positions

Several mobiles can be assigned to your ship: a main one (the Own Ship) and other secondary ones. Inconsistent positions aim at telling the user when the Own Ship's conning position is too different from secondary ships. To do so, you must enter an ELP (*Ecart Limite de Position*, Maximum difference between positions), if the distance between positions of conning is superior or equal to ELP, the following alarm is generated:

Inconsistent position with x, difference=y where x is the mobile that is too far from the Own Ship and y is the difference between positions.

Figure 69 - Inconsistent position alarm parameters

Important

ELP IS COMPUTED BETWEEN CONNING POSITIONS, AND NOT SENSORS, IN CASE OF OFFSETS WITH THE GPS ANTENNA (SEE SECTION IV.6.5, PAGE 112).

To define inconsistent positions:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **I/O and mobiles**, and then **Alarms…** *The* Mobiles Alarms *dialog box is displayed.*
2.	Click the **Own Ship Specific Alarms** tab
3.	In **Inconsistent Position** area, check **Enable** and then enter a value in **Maximum distance between ships (ELP)**.
4.	Check **Periodic Report (30s)** to generate an alarm each 30 seconds in case of inconsistent positions.
5.	Click **OK**.
6.	End of procedure.

IV.4.1.3 Inconsistent Depths

Inconsistent depths allow to show when there is too much difference between an acquired depth and the depth that is computed with bathymetry and is relative to the position of the ship. To do so you must enter an ELS (Ecart Limite de Sonde, Maximum difference between depths), in meters or with a percentage. If the value is specified in meters, an alarm is generated when the difference between both depths is superior to this value; if the value is specified in percentage, an alarm is generated when the difference between both depths is superior or equal to (in percentage) the acquired depth. The first time this occurs the following alarm is displayed:

Inconsistent depths, difference = x, where x is the difference, in meters or in percentage depending on the selected option, between ship's and chart's depths. If you have chosen to display this alarm each 30 seconds (**Periodic Report (30s)** check box), the Inconsistent depths alarm is displayed the other times.

For example, if the acquired value is 50 meters and the computed value is 55 meters, the alarm is generated when there is an allowance of 10%, the alarm is generated because the difference between both values (5 meters) is exactly equal to 10% of the acquired value (50 meters).

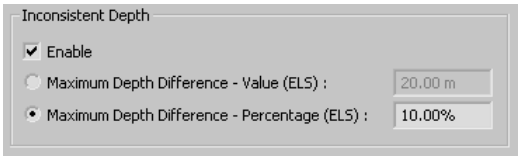


Figure 70 - Inconsistent depth alarm parameters

To use inconsistent depth:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **I/O and mobiles**, and then **Alarms…** *The* Mobiles Alarms *dialog box is displayed.*
2.	Click the **Own Ship Specific Alarms** tab.
3.	In **Inconsistent Depth** area, check the **Enable** box and then do one of the following: • To enter a difference in meters, click **Maximum Depth Difference - Value (ELS)** and then enter a value in the corresponding field. • To enter a difference in percentage, click **Maximum Depth Difference - Percentage (ELS)** and then enter a value in the corresponding field.
4.	Check the **Periodic Report (30s)** box to generate an alarm each 30 seconds when there is an inconsistence in depths.
5.	Click **OK**.
6.	End of procedure.

IV.4.2 TARGET/AIS ALARMS

A page allows configuring specific alarms to mobile AIS and ARPA targets.

Important

NOT TO BE HAMPERED BY AN EXCESS OF ALARMS, BUT ONLY THE MOST RELEVANT, THESE ALARMS DO NOT APPLY TO SLEEPING MOBILE.

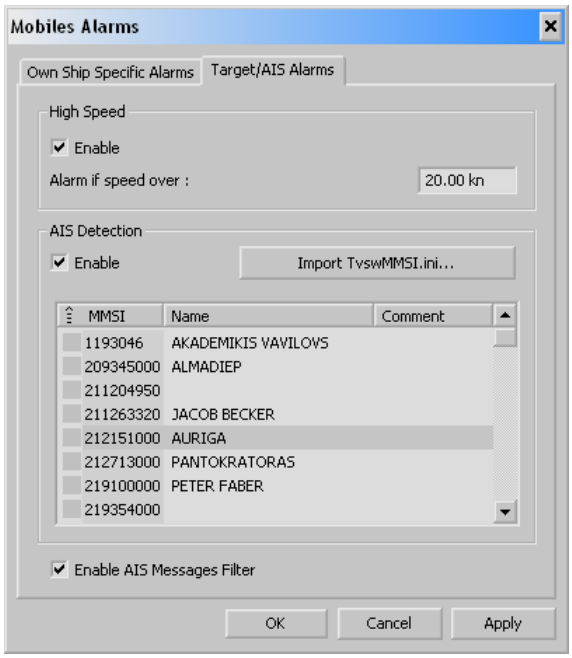


Figure 71 - Target/AIS alarms page

IV.4.2.1 High speed

This alarm is intended to alert the user to a mobile above a set value speed.

A hysteresis of 1% is applied to stabilize the state to a value close to a threshold.

To enable high speed alarm:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **I/O and mobiles**, and then **Alarms…** *The* Mobiles Alarms *dialog box is displayed.*
2.	Click the **Target/AIS Alarms** tab.
3.	Check the **Enable** box in the **High Speed** area.
4.	Set value in the corresponding field.
5.	End of procedure.

IV.4.2.2 AIS Detection

This alarm is intended to alert the user that AIS mobile identified by MMSI was detected during the acquisition.

Operation

The principle is simple, just check the numbers in the list to detect moving up the base and ensure that the **Enable** box of AIS Detection area is checked. The selection of mobile monitoring is stored in database and is persistent.

The management of the AIS alarm detection needs a Gecdis internal database. In fact, this database is used to provide AIS static information in the first reception of the dynamic information of the mobile, and in this way, a mobile is now filled in with many

details (name, size, etc ...). Conversely, when static information is received, Gecdis updates the database entry corresponding to the mobile being acquired.

Although brief, the list of mobiles shown in the configuration of the AIS detection is updated in real time, and is indeed the contents of the database. Checked, the numbers still appear in the list.

The comment field is used to build the alarm text.

To enable AIS detection alarm:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **I/O and mobiles**, and then **Alarms…** *The* Mobiles Alarms *dialog box is displayed.*
2.	Click the **Target/AIS Alarms** tab.
3.	Check the **Enable** box in the **AIS Detection** area (the list becomes active).
4.	Check the mobiles in the list you want to detect.
5.	End of procedure.

Import TvswMMSI

The **Import TvswMMSI.ini** button aims to import all mobile in database from those reported in the `ini` file and activate their alarms. Historically, this file is used to manage AIS detection by TurboWin before implementation of the database.

Besides being able to operate the old file in Gecdis, its import into Gecdis has three advantages:

- To define the comment field
- To add mobiles never acquired
- To massively activate detection on a set of mobiles

During import, mobile not involved are not so far off, and mobile already involved in the database have their fields activated alarm and commentary updated.

The list of mobiles to be detected must be defined by a section named WarningList. Then, each handset is registered by the couple, MMSI-Comment using the key for the MMSI and value for comment.

```
[WarningList]
MMSI Number=Warning Comment
232316000=FPV NORNA
232435000=FPV SULISKER
232514000=FPV VIGILANT
```

Figure 72 - TvswMMSI.ini example

IV.4.2.3 AIS Message Filtering

Receiving a message not related to security (AIS protocol messages 6-addressed and 8-broadcasted) is treated as other messages relating to safety, namely through an alarm and an event in the black box. It is not possible to disable the alarms, against an optional filter on the alarm text messages has been introduced to limit their number.

Upon receiving a text message, an event will always be added to the black box, by cons, if filtering is active, the alarm will not be generated if at least one of following conditions is satisfied:

- The recipient of the addressed message does not match the MMSI of the ship,
- The content of the last message received is identical to the previous message received,
- The received message does not contain space (usually coded message).

To enable filtering of AIS messages:

Check the **Enable AIS Messages Filter** box.

IV.5 Representation

You can create different types of mobiles or fleets. You can also configure them. We remind you that a fleet is a group of mobile elements (buoys, targets, etc.) and a mobile can either represent your ship or a mobile in a fleet.

IV.5.1 Defining a Mobile Appearance

First you have to configure the general appearance of mobiles. The appearance you will define for mobiles will be later considered as the default one for any mobile you will insert (except if this mobile is included in a fleet).

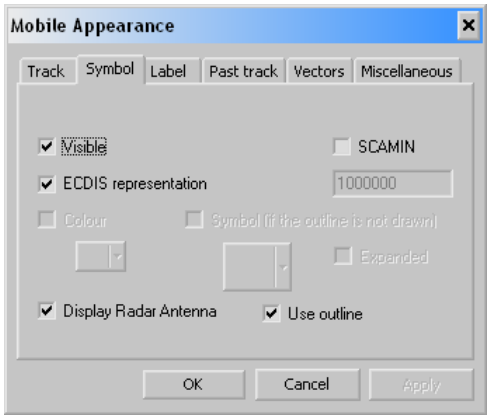
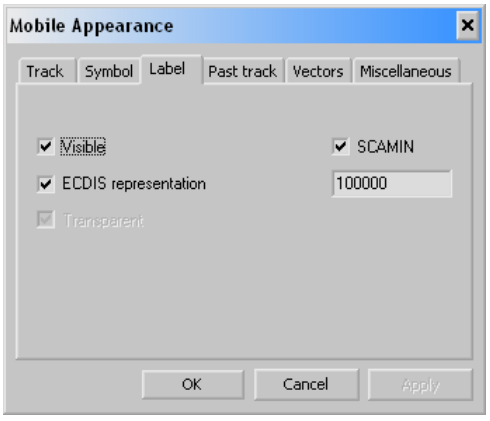
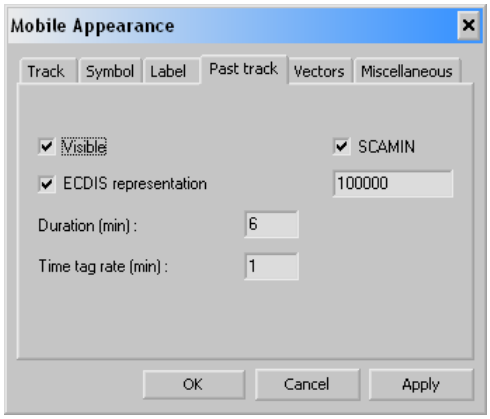


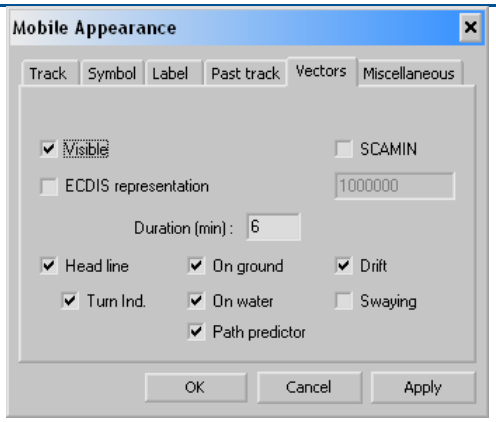
Figure 73 - Configuring the Appearance of Mobile and Fleet Symbols

To define the mobile and fleet general appearance:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **I/O and mobiles**, and then **Appearance…** *The* Mobile Appearance *dialog box is displayed. You have to use it in a progressive way. Indeed, you will have to check or not boxes and each choice you will make will have consequences on your future choices. The following is an example of the complete thought you may have.*
2.	In the **Symbol** tab, click **Visible** if you want your mobile to be visible in the main view. • If you have not checked **Visible**: you will not be able to see the mobile. • If you have checked **Visible**:
3.	Select **ECDIS** representation if you want the mobile to be represented as indicated in the ECDIS standard. • If you have checked **ECDIS representation**: the mobiles will be represented as indicated in the ECDIS standard. • If you have not checked **ECDIS representation**:
4.	Select a color and a symbol clicking on the arrow of these zones, and check the Expanded box if you want your mobile to be expanded (see section IV.5.2 page 87). **Note: SCAMIN** is the abbreviation for "scale minimum". When you check this box, you indicate that the mobile or fleet will not be displayed after the scale that is defined in the zone below this check box. For example, if 100000 is indicated, you will not be able to see your mobile or fleet if the scale is inferior to 1/100000.
5.	Click the **Label** tab. This tab operates in the same hierarchical way as the **Symbol** tab. 
6.	Check the **Visible** box if you want the label of your default mobile to be visible in the main view. • If you have not checked **Visible**: you will not be able to see the label of your ship in the main view. • If you have checked **Visible**:

Step	Action
7.	Choose whether you want your label to be transparent or not (if you don't check **Transparent**, the label will be highlighted).
8.	Click the **Past track** tab. This tab operates in the same hierarchical way as the other tabs. 
9.	Check **Visible** if you want the past track of the default mobile to be visible. • If you have not checked **Visible**: you will not be able to see the mobile past track. • If you have checked **Visible**:
10.	Select ECDIS representation or not depending on whether you want the display of your mobiles to follow or not the ECDIS standard representation. • If you have checked **ECDIS representation**: the past track will be represented in black. • If you have not checked **ECDIS representation**: the past track will be represented in grey.
11.	Configure **the Duration (min)** field to indicate the time represented in the past track and **Time tag rate (min)** field to indicate the interval between two time tags. If you check the **Long time tags** box, hour minutes are displayed for each tag whereas if you uncheck this box, only minutes are displayed. In the above dialog box, the past track will have a new tag each minute, during 15 minutes. The time will be indicated with minutes and hours.
12.	Click the **Vectors** tab and check the **Visible** box depending on whether you want to display or not the vectors and the headline.

Step	Action



13. The **Duration (min)** field allows you to define the period, in minutes, during which the vectors will be represented.
    - If you have not checked **Visible**: you will not be able to see the vectors of your mobile.
    - If you have checked **Visible**:

14. Select ECDIS representation if you want the vectors of your mobiles to follow the ECDIS standard representation.
    - If you have selected **ECDIS representation**: you will only be able to define the headline, the **SOG** and **SOW** vectors, as indicated in the ECDIS standard.
    - If you have not selected **ECDIS representation**: You can also display the drift and swaying vectors.

    Note: A vector can't be displayed if the piece (s) of information defining it have not been added to a mobile. These pieces of information are as follows:
    - Headline: True Heading
    - On Ground: SOG –COG
    - On Water: SOW – COW
    - Drift: Drift (speed) – Drift (course)
    - Swaying: Lateral speed – Lateral course

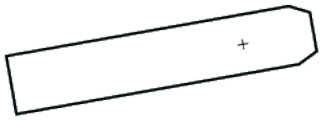
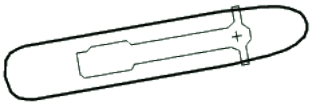
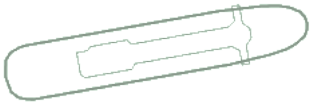
15. When finished configuring the default mobile appearance, click OK

16. End of procedure.

IV.5.2 STANDARD REPRESENTATION

Here is the standard representation of symbols without vectors and past track.

IV.5.2.1 Own Ship

Symbol	Description
	True scaled outline.
	True scaled precise outline (sample).
	Secondary positioning true scaled precise outline (sample).
	ECDIS simplified symbol (when the outline is too small).
	ECDIS simplified symbol with heading and beam lines.
	ECDIS Secondary positioning simplified symbol with heading and beam lines.
	ECS simplified symbol (when the outline is too small).

IV.5.2.2 AIS and ARPA Mobiles

Some mobiles are different from the others, by their appearance and/or function. This is the case for the AIS and ARPA mobiles. The AIS is an automated message exchange system between ships. With it, neighbour ships can have information on their journey.

A mobile is considered as an AIS whenever it is associated with the MMSI piece of information.

The difference in the representation between ECDIS and ECS mode only play on color. Whatever the method, a dangerous mobile will always drawn in red.

IV.5.2.3 ARPA symbols

ECS mode	ECDIS mode	Dangerous	Mobile type	Status
			ARPA target	To be followed (query)

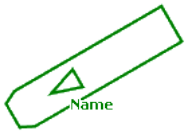
ECS mode	ECDIS mode	Dangerous	Mobile type	Status
			ARPA target	Followed (tracking)
			ARPA target	Lost

IV.5.2.4 AIS symbols

ECS mode	ECDIS mode	Dangerous	Mobile type	Status
			AIS target	Sleeping
			AIS target	Lost sleeping
			AIS target	Sleeping with neither reported heading nor COG
			AIS target	Activated
			AIS target	Lost activated
			AIS target	Activated with neither reported heading nor COG
			Real AIS AtoN	"Off position"
			Real AIS AtoN	"On position"
			Virtual AIS AtoN	"Off position"
			Virtual AIS AtoN	"On position"
			AIS AtoN	Lost "off position"
			AIS AtoN	Lost "on position"

ECS mode	ECDIS mode	Dangerous	Mobile type	Status
			AIS SART	Activated
			AIS SART	Loste activated
			AIS Station	Activated

IV.5.2.5 Advanced

Symbol	Description
	Activated AIS with true scaled outlines, ECDIS mode.
	Activated AIS with true scaled outlines, ECS mode.
	Lost activated AIS with true scaled outlines, ECDIS mode.
	Dangerous activated AIS with true scaled outlines.

IV.5.3 DEFINING A SPECIFIC APPEARANCE FOR A MOBILE OR A FLEET

The appearance of a fleet is configured the same way as the appearance of a mobile.
To define the appearance of a fleet, you must first access to the 'x Appearance' dialog box (x defining the name of your fleet).

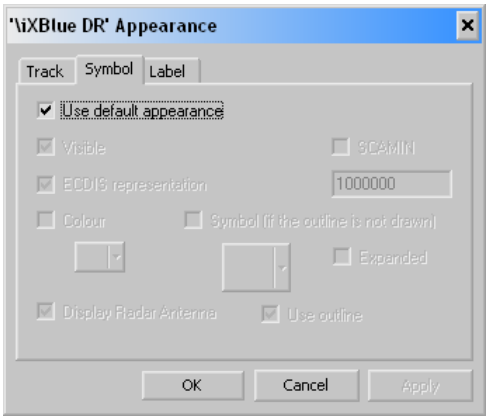
This option is only possible in ECS mode.

To do so, you have two possibilities:

Step	Action
1.	Either click **Mobile**, **Open Mobile List…**, select the fleet whose appearance you want to define and then click **Appearance…** and select **Symbol** tab.
2.	Or in the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **I/O and mobiles**, **I/O and mobile Configuration** select a fleet in the list, click the **Appearance…** button then select

Step	Action

Symbol tab.



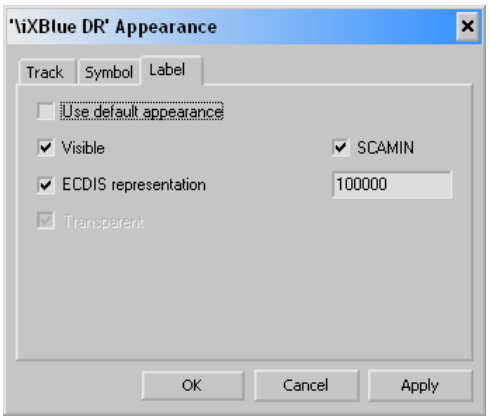
3. Check or uncheck the **Uses default appearance** box depending on whether you want to use or not the default appearance that you have defined for the mobiles (see section IV.5.1 page 84).
   - If you have selected the **Uses default appearance** box: The appearance that have been defined in the sub-menu Appearance… (**Mobiles → Appearance…→ Symbol** tab) will be defined.
   - If you have not selected the **Uses default appearance** box:
4. Click **Visible** if you want the default mobile appearance to be visible.
   - If you have not checked **Visible**: you will not be able to see the mobiles contained in your fleet.
   - If you have checked **Visible**:
5. Select **ECDIS Representation** or not depending on whether you want the appearance of your fleet to follow the ECDIS standard representation.
   - If you have selected **ECDIS representation**: the mobiles of the fleet will be represented as defined in the ECDIS standard.
   - If you have not selected **ECDIS representation**:
6. Select a color and a symbol clicking on the arrow of these fields, and check the **Expanded** box if you want the fleet to be expanded (its size will be twice larger).

7. End of procedure.

The list of symbols is as follows:

Symbol	Name	Symbol	Name
	Target Number		Drift Buoy
	Manuel Buoy		Unknown Argos
	Known ARGOS		Link ARGOS
	PIRATE Vessel		Shoal
	Airplane		Submarine
	Sailboat		Windsurfing
	Fishing Boat		Life-buoy
	Reference Point		Datum
	AIR – Hostile		AIR –Neutral
	AIR – Friendly		AIR – Unknown
	SURFACE – Hostile		SURFACE – Neutral
	SURFACE – Friendly		SURFACE – Unknown
	SUB-SURFACE – Hostile		SUB-SURFACE – Neutral
	SUB-SURFACE – Friendly		SUB-SURFACE – Unknown

- If you choose as the symbol for a mobile and that mobile has identification information, the identification number will be indicated instead.
- The symbol will not be drawn if the mobile or fleet length is superior to 12 mm.

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Label** tab. This tab operates in the same hierarchical way as the tab **Symbol:** 
2.	Check or uncheck the **Use default appearance** box depending on whether you want to use or not the default appearance that you have defined for the mobiles. • If you have checked the **Use default appearance box**: The default appearance that you have defined in the **Appearance…** sub-menu will be defined. • If you have not checked the **Use default appearance** box:
3.	Check the **Visible** box if you want the label of the mobile of your fleet to be visible. • If you have not checked **Visible**: you will not be able to see the label of your ship. • If you have checked **Visible**:
4.	Check the **Transparent** box if you want labels to be transparent (if you do not select **Transparent**, the label will be highlighted).
5.	When finished configuring the fleet, click **OK**.
6.	End of procedure.

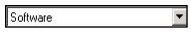
You can follow the same steps to create a specific appearance for a mobile clicking **Mobile**, **Open Mobile List…**, selecting the mobile and clicking **Appearance**.

IV.6 Configuration

IV.6.1 INFORMATION

IV.6.1.1 System Information

System information is data concerning elements that are related to your machine. The cursor information, the stream information and the UTC are defined as system information.

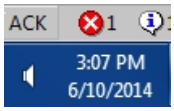
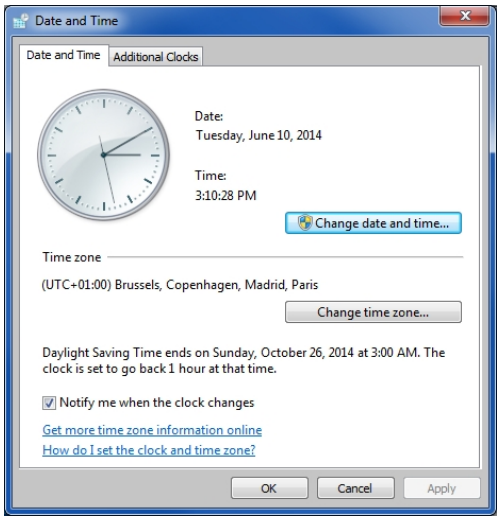
- System gives you data about your machine.
- UTC identifies the date-time piece of information that is used by Gecdis. This piece of information can be obtained:
  - by Windows® selecting a software source. In this case, ensure that Windows® time zone has been correctly set.
  - With a NMEA sentence of your GPS selecting one of your desired NMEA sentences in the 

scrolling list.

To access system information:

Click **Mobile** and then **Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*

To configure your time zone:

Step	Action
1.	For example, under Windows® Seven, click the clock, in the far right-lower part of your screen. 
2.	In the windows that appears, click **Change date and time…** The *Date and Time* dialog box opens: 

Step	Action
3.	Click **Change time zone…**, select your desired time zone in the scrolling list and then click **OK**.
4.	Click **OK**.
5.	End of procedure.

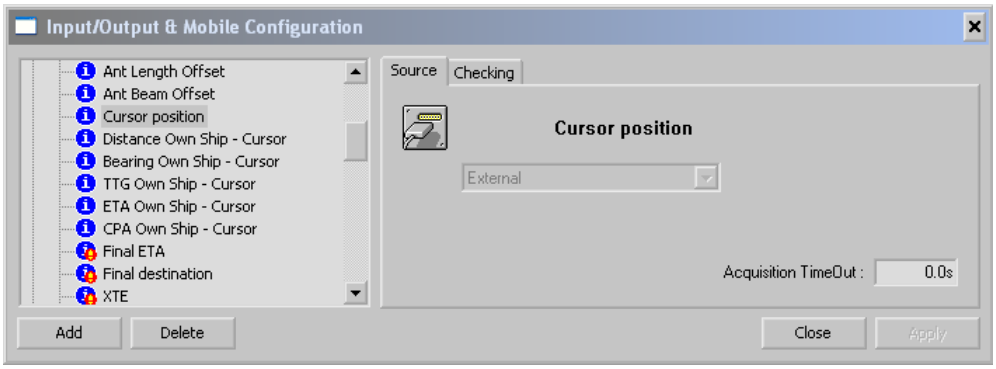


Figure 74 - Available Information about the Cursor

The default information is as follows:

- **The cursor position**
- **The bearing from the Own Ship to the cursor**
- **The distance from the Own Ship to the cursor**
- **The TTG from the Own Ship to the cursor**
- **The ETA from the Own Ship to the cursor**
- **The CPA from the Own Ship to the cursor**

You can also add information about depth and height of tide in the location of the cursor. To do so, select one of the system's pieces of information, click **Add**, select **Information** and click the piece of information you want to add.

- You cannot delete one of the default cursor's piece of information.
- When the cursor is outside the main view (in a dialog box or one of the bars), cursor's pieces of information are displayed in red and are considered as undefined, except the position, which is considered as invalid and indicates the position of the centre of the screen.

System's pieces of information are as follows:

UTC (software, acquired)	Universal Time Coordinated. This corresponds to Greenwich time, in England. This piece of information is dependent to time lag.
Time lag (Dead reckoned, software, acquired)	The lag between the UTC and the local time (time of reference), that it is possible to configure. If time lag is generated from a software source, the time of reference will be the time lag of your system. If time lag is acquired, it will be defined by the time lag entered on the GPS sensor.
Local time (Software)	This piece of information is displayed whenever time lag has been added. Local time is the sum of the UTC and time lag. A letter is specified next local time. This letter allows to reference the time lag. For example, if the selected time zone is (GMT+01 :00) Brussels, Copenhagen, Madrid, Paris, the letter will be B in summer and A in winter (A=+1h, B=+2h… N=-1h, O=-2h, etc.).
Cursor position (Software)	The position of the cursor when dragged over the main view or the chart overview. If over a dialog box or outside the main view, the position of the centre of the screen is specified.
Bearing Own Ship – Cursor (Software)	The bearing between the Own Ship and the cursor in relation to the geographical north. This piece of information is invalid if the pieces of information of the Own Ship and the cursor are invalid as well.
Distance Own Ship – Cursor (Software)	The distance between the Own Ship and the location of the cursor. This piece of information is invalid if Own Ship's and cursor's positional information are invalid as well.
TTG Own Ship – Cursor (Software)	The Time to go. Describes the time the Own Ship would take, on the same speed as the current one, to reach the position of the cursor. This piece of information is invalid if Own Ship's and cursor's positional pieces of information, and Own Ship's leeway track and course make good are invalid as well.
Height of tide – Cursor (Dead reckoned, Software)	The height of the water level on cursor's position.
Depth – Cursor (Software)	The depth on cursor's position. To display this piece of information, isolines, bathymetry or 3D must be displayed.
Charted depth – cursor (Software)	The charted depth on cursor's position. This piece of information is automatically added whenever the Depth Cursor piece of information is added. If no height of tide is specified, both of them have the same value.

IV.6.1.2 Mobiles' Information

The following pieces of information are used to configure mobiles:

Position (dead reckoned, acquired)	The geographical position of the mobile that corresponds to the sensor position (e.g. : GPS antenna) or a periodic maintenance. Example (12°52'294 N – 115°21'150' W)
Reference position (software)	The last observed position (starting, setting estimated position, etc.). This position cannot be maintained; it is added to the mobile's list of pieces of information whenever Position is available. Example (32°06'01500 S.060°46'30500 E <WGS84>)
UTC of position (reference) – software	The UTC that corresponds to the last reference position of the mobile. Example (14/12/2001 11:14:54)
Position bow (software)	The position of Own Ship's stem, that relates to the conning position as defined in the **Sizes** tab of Own Ship's characteristics. To open this tab and change the value, you should click the name of the desired mobile, and then edit the L (length) field in the Sizes tab. Example : (12°52'294 N – 115°21'150 W)
Position stern (software)	Position ship's transom. This position is also related to the conning, which can be modified in the **Sizes** tab of ship's characteristics.
Position conning (software)	The position of ship's conning. This piece of information is added if position has been adjusted in the Corrections tab of the ship's Position piece of information (see IV.6.5 page 112). To compute the value, the Own Ship's true heading must be valid.
SOG (software, acquired)	The speed over ground. The speed over ground of a ship. Example (10.00 kn)
COG (software, acquired)	The course over ground. The "real" course of the ship. Example (100.0°)
SOW (dead reckoned acquired)	The speed over water. The speed over the water. Example (2.00 kn)
COW (software)	This piece of information takes into account true heading and leeway angle (COW = True heading + leeway angle). Example : 185.000000°
True heading (dead reckoned, software, acquired)	The heading that is related to geographical north. The angle is the crossing of the axis of geographical north and ship's centre line. When adding this piece of information, COW is also added. If no leeway angle is specified, true heading has the same value as COW. Example : 345.000000°
Leeway angle (dead reckoned, acquired)	The drift that originates from the wind. Example: 1.697576°
Drift speed (dead reckoned, software,	The speed of drift. Example: 2.00 kn

acquired)	
Drift course (dead reckoned, software, acquired)	This piece of information, as well as Drift speed, must be valid to modify the COG and leeway track's vector. Example : 020.0°
Depth (dead reckoned, software, acquired)	The distance between the seabed and the water surface. Depth is dependent to Charted depth and Height of tide. Depth = Charted depth + Height of tide Example : 10.00 m
Charted depth (software)	The depth that corresponds to the chart datum level. Example : 7.0000000 m
	Auxiliary information
Height of tide (dead reckoned, software)	The difference between depth and charted depth, originated by tide Example : 3.000 m
Submersion (dead reckoned, automatic)	The depth of a submarine. This piece of information is associated to the Depth below keel piece of information. Example : 55.0000 m
Altitude (dead reckoned, automatic)	The vertical elevation of a point above the water level (chart datum level). Example : 10000.0 m
Swaying speed (dead reckoned, software)	The SOG projected on the perpendicular line of the mobile. In other words, this is the speed of a mobile on a virtual line perpendicular to it. This piece of information is useful when berthing, for example. Example : 01.334132 kn
Swaying course (dead reckoned, software)	The COG projected on the perpendicular line of the mobile. Swaying course is computed from gyro. Example : 15.000000°
Rate of turn (acquired)	The rate of turn is expressed in degrees per second. Example : 5.000000 °/s.
Rolling (dead reckoned, automatic)	The rotational motion of a ship about the longitudinal axis. Example : 002.000000°
Pitching (dead reckoned, automatic)	The rotational motion of a ship about the transverse axis. Example : 001.000000°
Depth below keel	The depth between the seabed and the keel of the ship. This piece of information is displayed if the Depth and Draught pieces of information have already been added. So: Depth below keel = Depth – Draught If Submersion has been added, then: Depth below keel = Depth – Draught – Submersion
Draught (dead reckoned, automatic)	The distance that is measured between water level and the keel. Example : 5.000000 m
Air draught (software)	The distance between the water level and the upper point of the ship. For this

	piece of information to be computed, draught must be added. Example : 8.0000000 m
Bridge height (software)	The difference between the Hp parameter in relation to the keel (it can be configured clicking the mobile, and then the Heights tab) and draught. So this piece of information must have been added to compute the height of the conning. Example : 7.0000000 m
Log – distance on water (software/time, acquired)	The distance that is run on water. This piece of information depends on the SOW. If SOW is invalid, this piece of information is also invalid. If you select None as a source but you specify a calculation rate, distance on water is computed again at any interval of this period. Example : 406.861178 nm
Log – daily (software/time, dead reckoned, acquired)	The distance that is run on water. The value of this distance can be reset, in the same way as an odometer (to do so, click the Mobile menu, and then Reset Daily Counters). This piece of information depends on SOW. Example : 15.265778 nm
Run distance (software/time)	The distance that is run on ground. This piece of information depends on SOG. If SOG is invalid, this piece of information is also invalid. You must specify a calculation period to specify the interval between each recalculation of the piece of information. Example : 403.252878 nm
Run distance – daily (Software/time, dead reckoned)	The distance that is run on ground and can be reset in the same way as an odometer (to do so, click the **Mobile** menu and then **Reset Daily Counters**). This piece of information depends on SOG. Example : 14.238458 nm
	Meteo
True wind – speed (dead reckoned, software, acquired)	The true wind speed, that is computed from: Apparent wind that comes from wind vane/anemometer, Speed over ground, drift.
True wind – bearing (dead reckoned, software, acquired)	The wind bearing in relation to true north. The value of this piece of information is the one given by a fixed sensor.
Apparent wind – speed (dead reckoned, software, acquired)	The wind speed relative to a mobile that is moving.
Apparent wind – bearing (dead reckoned, software, acquired)	The wind bearing in relation to the ship.

IV.6.2 STREAMS

A stream is a continuous series of bits being transmitted down a transmission line. In other words, a stream allows your computer or your program to communicate with other programs or devices passing data into and out. Gecdis includes three types of streams: communication ports, files and networks. Each of them corresponds to a particular communicational need: via external devices (communication ports), your own machine (files), or other machines (network).

IV.6.2.1 Adding and Configuring a Communication Port

Usually, communication ports in your machine are linked to external devices. You can configure Gecdis to receive data coming from these devices. The sentences are transmitted to the software for them to be analysed.

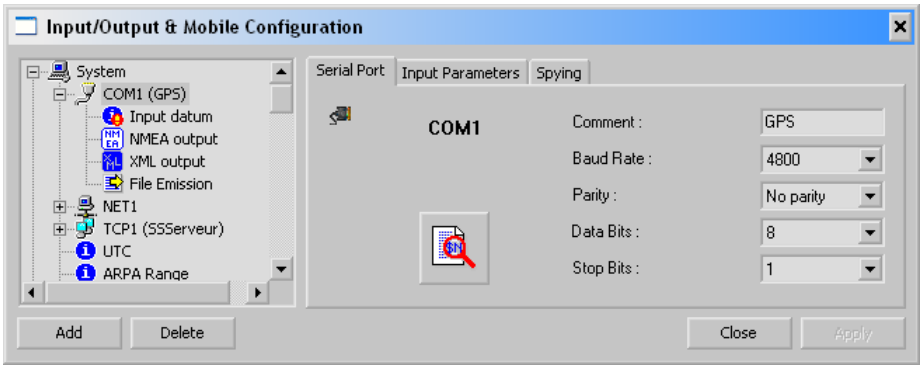
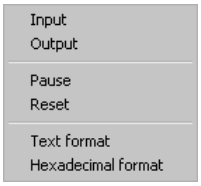


Figure 75 - Information on Communication Ports

To add and configure a communication port:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	On the left panel, click **System** object in the tree then click **Add** button and select **Stream**. *A list of all available streams is displayed.*
3.	In this list, click the communication port you want to add. *The name of the communication port is displayed in the left-hand list. On the right part of the Input/Output & Mobile Configuration dialog box the Windows® default configuration for this communication port is displayed. We advise you to change the values if they are different from the ones in the above dialog box (Baud rate: 4800, Data Bits: 8, Parity: No Parity, Stop Bits: 1).*
4.	On the **Comment** field, optionally enter a comment about the communication port. For example, if your communication port is a GPS, you can enter GPS in this field. What you have entered will be inserted into brackets in the left-hand list, just opposite to the name

Step	Action
	of the communication port.
5.	If you click , data incoming from or outgoing to the communication port which has been added are displayed. Right-click this window. The same menu as above the window is displayed:



- **Input**: Displays the incoming sentences.
- **Output**: Displays the outgoing sentences.
- **Pause**: Stops displaying the sentences until you click again on it.
- **Reset**: Removes all displayed sentences from the window and displays the newly received or transmitted sentences.
- **Test format**: Displays the sentences in text format. An example of a sentence in text format is: $GPZDA,160044,12,12,2001,,*5B
- **Hexadecimal format**: Displays the sentences in hexadecimal format. An example of a sentence in hexadecimal format is: 24 47 50 5A 44 41 2C 31 36 30 30 35 38 2C 31 32 2C 31 32 2C 32 30 30 31 2C 2C 2A 35 36 0D 0A.

6.	End of procedure.

IV.6.2.2 Adding and Configuring a NET stream

Gecdis allows you to send or receive data via two types of network streams:

- UDP (or NET),
- TCP.

IV.6.2.2.1 The UDP Stream

UDP offers a connection faster than TCP, with less reliability. However this protocol allows you to broadcast information on several machines. So the UDP protocol will be preferred with big-sized sentences that are sent so often that it would not be important to lose some of them.

For any stream, you must enter the port number (input or output) assigned to the machine that receives or sends sentences. If you enter 0 as a port number, transmission or reception will not be enabled. If you enter another number, you will be able to transmit or receive sentences, provided the same number is configured on the machine that receives or transmits them. So if 1001 is entered for an input port, you will be able to read the sentences from the systems whose output port will be set to 1001.

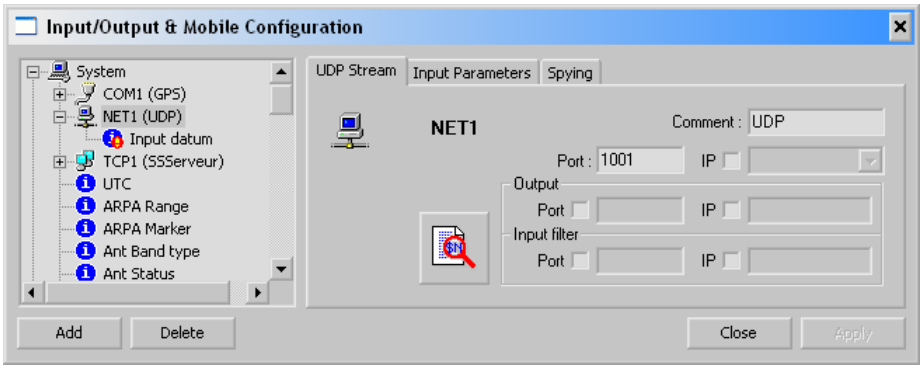


Figure 76 - Configuring an UDP Stream for Reception

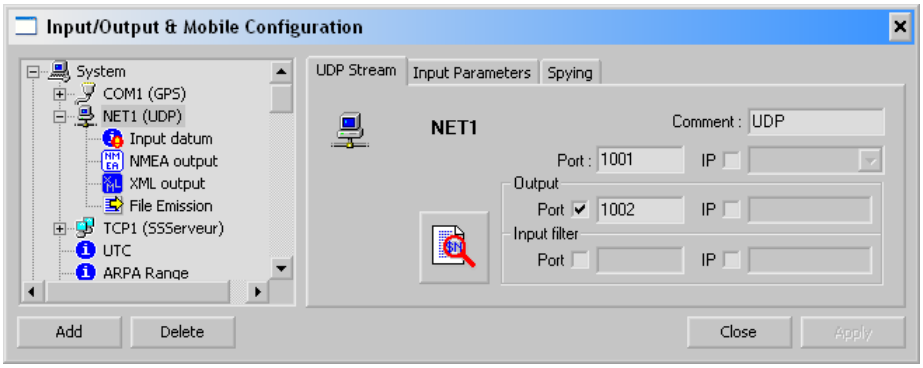


Figure 77 - Configuring an UDP Stream for Transmission

To add and configure a net stream:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, click **Add** button, **Stream** and **NET**. *NET1 is added to the left panel list of streams, on the left of the dialog box. If this is the first UDP stream you have added, the value of the first **Port** field is default set to **1001**.*
3.	If your machine has several network boards and you wish to receive sentences that come from one of them, check the **IP** box, below **Comment** field and then select the desired IP address.
4.	To receive sentences, enter in the first **Port** field the Port field number of the Transmission group of the machine that sends you sentences.
5.	To transmit sentences, check **Port in Transmission**, and then enter the number of the Port field of the machine that receives sentences. Whenever you specify a number for the output port, the NMEA output branch is added to NET1, and allows you to configure the sentences to be transmitted (see section IV.6.2.5 page 107).
6.	Optionally check the **IP** box. If you enter the IP address of the machine that receives sentences, data is directly sent to a single machine. If not, transmission is in broadcast

Step	Action
	mode.
7.	In the case that several machines transmit data on the same port, but you do not want to receive sentences that come from each of them, filter the sentences doing one of the following step, or both, in the Input filter group zone: • To receive the sentences that are transmitted on a single port, check the **Port** box, and then enter the appropriate port number. • To receive the sentences that come from a single IP address, check the **IP** box and then enter the machine's IP address (to learn more about finding the IP address of a machine, see Finding the IP Address of a Machine).
8.	Optionally fill in the **Comment** field. *The comment is displayed into brackets, in the left-hand list, after the name of the network stream.*
9.	If you click , input and output data of the remote machine is displayed. For more details about this window, please see section IV.6.2.1, page 100.
10.	Click **Apply**.
11.	End of procedure.

IV.6.2.2.2 The TCP Stream

TCP is a protocol that allows you to connect a transmitter and a receiver. This is a direct connection between two machines. So, the sentences that will be sent to several machines will have to be sent once for each machine. The advantage of this protocol is that data is completely transmitted; if data is missing or erroneous, messages are transmitted once again. TCP is then used if it is important to receive data.

To implement TCP, you should enter a stream number (Port field) on which the server and the clients will be connected and exchange data, and optionally the IP or the server's name (Server Address field) for client machines (for the server, this field must be empty).

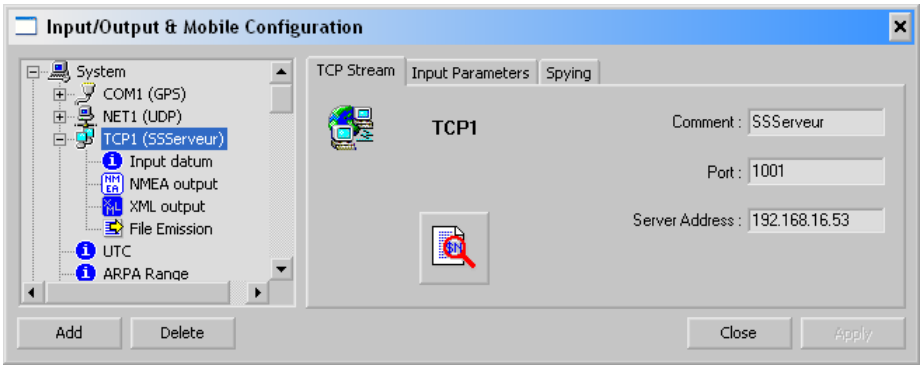


Figure 78 - TCP stream client configured with an IP address

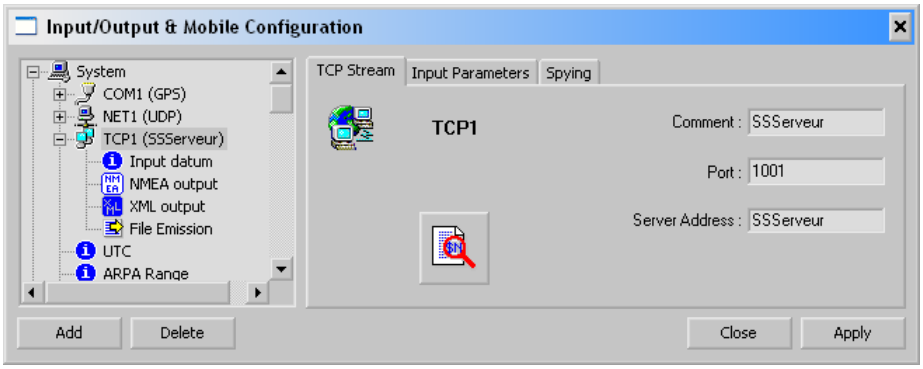


Figure 79 - TCP stream client configured with a server name

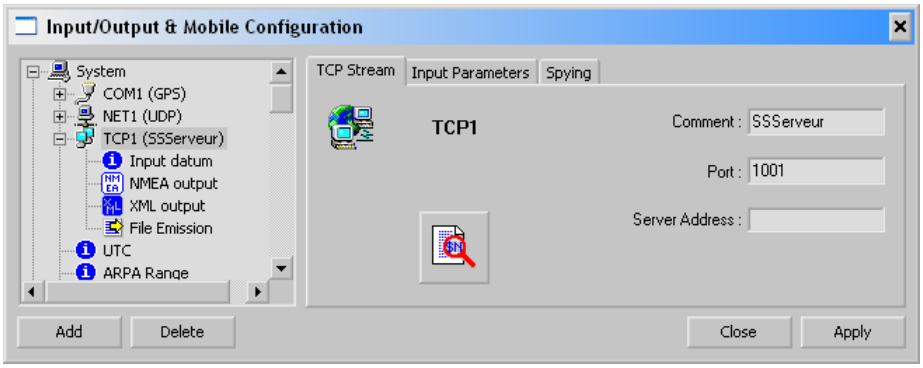


Figure 80 - Configuring a TCP stream server

To use a TCP Stream:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	Select the desired TCP stream in the left-hand list of the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box.
3.	In the **Port** field of the **TCP Stream** tab, enter the number of the port to be used.
4.	If you have a client machine, in **Server Address**, enter either the name of the server machine or its IP address. To learn more about finding the IP address of a machine, see Finding the IP Address of a Machine.
5.	Optionally fill in the **Comment** field. The comment is displayed into brackets, in the left-hand list, after the name of the network stream.
6.	Clicking allows you to check incoming and outgoing data.
7.	End of procedure.

Finding the IP Address of a Machine

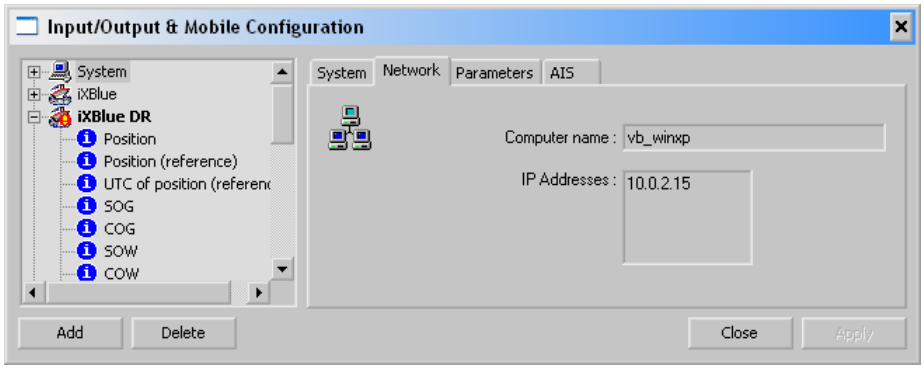


Figure 81 - Finding the IP Address of a Machine

To find the IP address of a machine:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, click the **System** object in the tree to the left.
3.	Click the **Network** tab.
4.	The addresses of your machine are shown in the field **IP Addresses**.
5.	End of procedure.

IV.6.2.3 Adding and Configuring a FILE Stream

Gecdis allows you to receive data with a file. When you add a file as a stream, you ask Gecdis to analyse the sentences contained in this file. The system reads them and use them directly.

Important

AFTER PROCESSING, THE FILE INSERTED IN THE RECEPTION FOLDER IS DESTROYED.

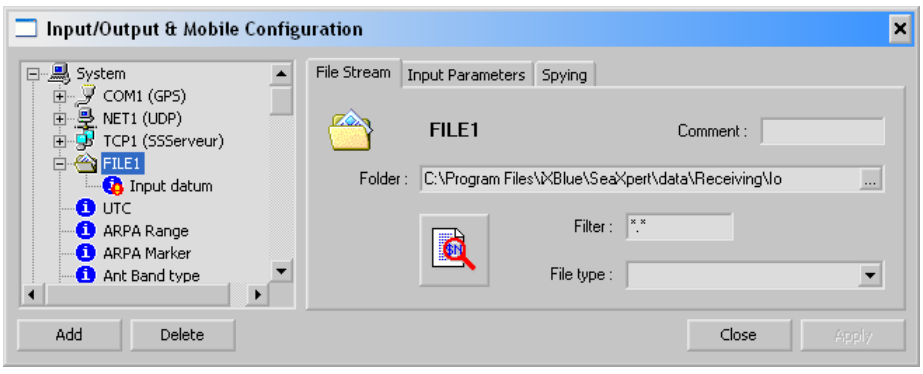


Figure 82- Configuring File Stream

To add and configure a FILE stream:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	On the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, click **Add**, **Stream** and then **FILE**. *FILE1 is then added to the list of streams in the left hand list of this dialog box.*
3.	On the **Folder** field of the **File Stream** tab, the access path that will receive and read the positioning files is indicated. The folder defaults to …`/Gecdis/Data/Receiving`. Optionally change it clicking the **Browse…** button, browsing to your desired folder and clicking **OK**. The folder you will specify must exist (if not, first create it in your explorer) and be empty.
4.	Optionally specify a comment in the **Comment** zone. *The comment you may have entered is displayed into brackets opposite to the name of the file in the left-hand list.*
5.	Optionally scroll the **File type** list and select a file type.
6.	Click **Apply**.
7.	End of procedure.

IV.6.2.4 Spying Input and Output Data

Spying consists in saving in a file input and/or output data in order to check its contents. The files will be saved in the `...\Gecdis\Settings\Io\Mobiles` folder and they will have a `.spy` extension (*.spy).

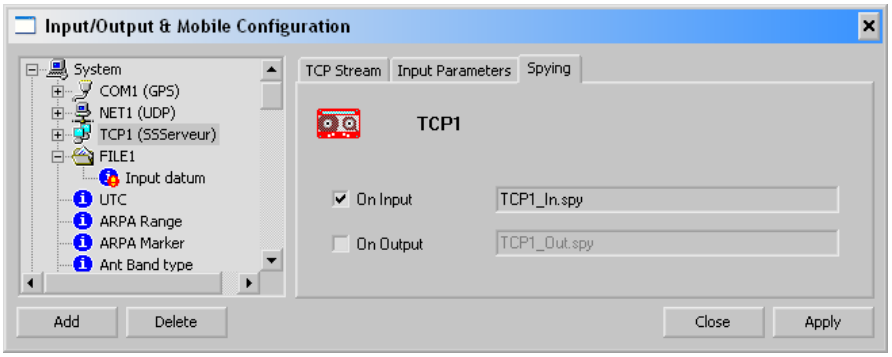


Figure 83 - Spying a stream

To spy input and/or output data:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In the left-hand list of the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, select the communication port whose data you want to spy.
3.	Click the **Spying** tab.
4.	Do one of the following, or both: • If you want to spy incoming data, check the **On Input** box and click **Apply**. • If you want to spy outgoing data, check the **On Output** box and click **Apply**. *A file is generated in the following access path: `..\Gecdis\Settings\Mobiles\Io`. You can open it to check data. This file is generated as the sentences come or go. To be refreshed, it needs to be closed and re-opened.*
5.	End of procedure.

IV.6.2.5 Transmitting Sentences via a Stream

Gecdis allows you to transform your PC into a sentence simulator, transmitting NMEA sentences.

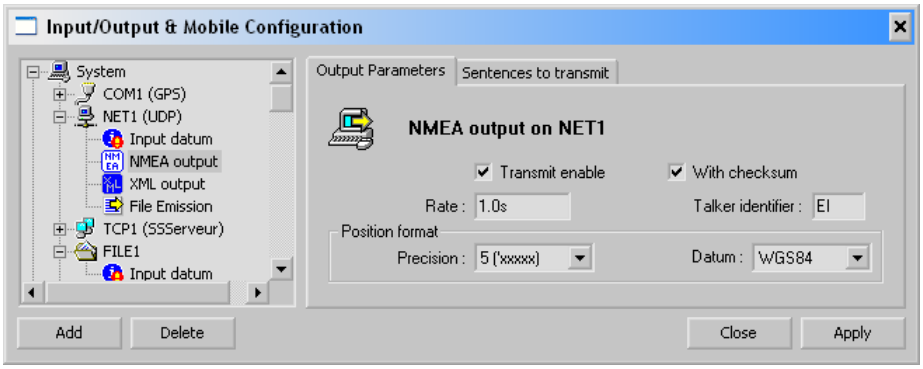


Figure 84 - Parameters of Sentence Transmission

Here is the description of the NMEA sentences transmission parameters:

- **Transmit enable**, This check box allows you to permit the transmission process.
- **With checksum**, This check box allows you to check that the transmitted sentences are correct. The checksum calculates the value of the sentence and indicates it at the end of the sentence with the following syntax: **x* (where *x* defines a number). The device that will receive this sentence will also calculate the value of the sentence. If both values correspond the one to the other, the sentence will be accepted. Otherwise, it will be rejected.
- **Rate**, Defines the transmission rate. The default value of this field is 1.0 s, which means that sentences are transmitted each second.

- **Talker identifier**, Allows you to indicate a specific talker to begin the transmitted sentences.
- **Precision**, Defines the precision of the minutes in the position format. You can choose to give a minute precision up to five digits. In reality this precision equals to 1.8 cm.
- **Datum**, Defines the datum for the position of the sentences.

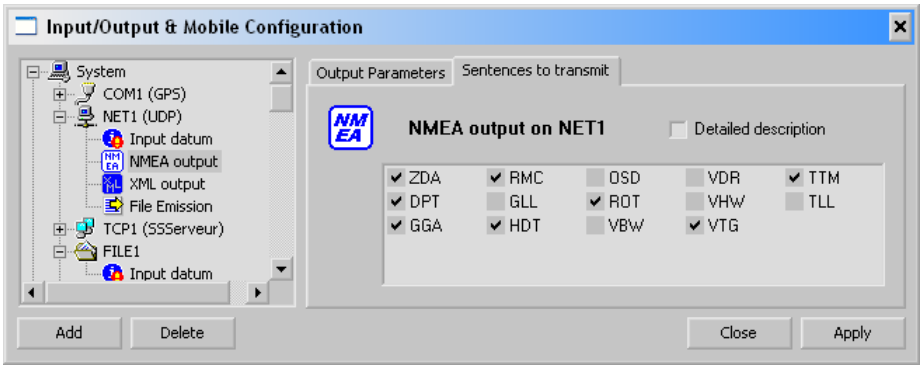


Figure 85 - Selecting the Sentences to Transmit

To transmit sentences:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. The *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box opens.
2.	On the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, double-click the stream that will transmit sentences and click NMEA output.
3.	On the **Output Parameters** tab, define the parameters that are best suited to your needs.
4.	Click the **Sentences** to transmit tab.
5.	Check all the boxes that represent the sentences you want to transmit.
6.	Optionally check the **Detailed description** box to display in the window an explanation for all sentences.
7.	Click **Apply**.
8.	End of procedure.

IV.6.2.6 Checking Transmitted Sentences

You can check the sentences transmitted by a stream at the same time they are transmitted.

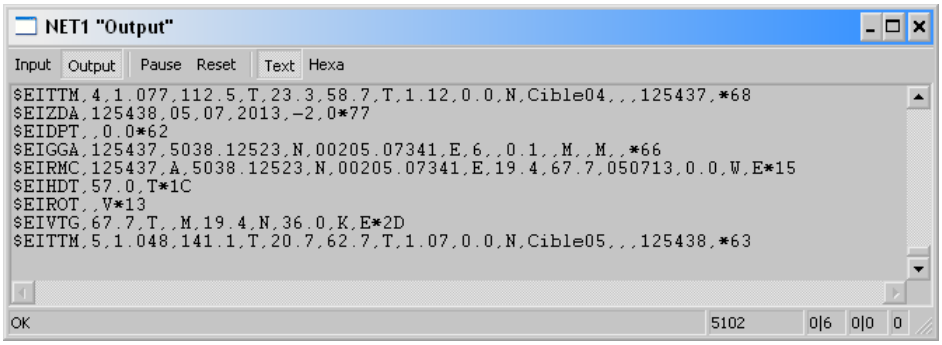


Figure 86 - Check transmitted sentences on a stream

To check transmitted sentences:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In the left-hand list of the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, click the stream whose sentences you want to check.
3.	Click in the first tab of the stream (the left one). *A window opens.*
4.	Click **Output** button to check the transmitted sentences. *The list of all sentences is displayed.*
5.	End of procedure.

IV.6.3 CREATING MOBILES AND FLEETS

A mobile is the representation of a mobile object. With Gecdis, you can insert as many mobiles as desired. It is possible to create different types of mobiles:

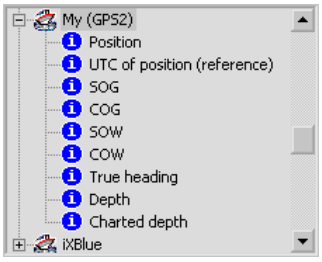
- **Mobiles representing your ship**. Imagine you acquire your position with a GPS but you also use dead reckoning to estimate it. You will then create two mobiles: one mobile will represent the GPS, and the other one dead reckoning. This way, if your GPS experiences operating problems, you will be able to check it comparing GPS and dead-reckoning data.
- **Mobiles in a fleet**. Contrary to the mobiles that represent your ship, these mobiles do not necessarily represent ships. They define any object liable to move (buoys, targets, etc.) and consequently needing to be followed. Before creating them, you should create a fleet.

- **Specific mobiles** i.e., independent mobiles (that do not belong to a fleet), that not necessarily represent your ship.

You can create a mobile in different ways, depending on specific navigation circumstances that is why different pieces of information are assigned to each of them, when creating them. You can create up to three different types of mobiles:

- **Dead reckoned mobiles**.
- **Acquired mobiles**, that are intended to receive pieces of information by a sensor.
- **The AIS pilot** that allows you to acquire information about the NMEA – AIS VHF Own vessel (VDO) sentence.

To create a mobile:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In the left-hand list of the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, select the fleet you want to add to the mobile (if a fleet has already been created) or click **System** if you want to add a mobile representing your ship.
3.	Click **Add**, select **Mobile**, and then select the type of mobile you want to create.
4.	Optionally modify the name of the mobile (**Mobile Name** field) and/or enter a comment (**Comment** field).
5.	Expand information about the mobile clicking the cross ⊞ in front of its name. 
6.	End of procedure.

Important

A RED AND YELLOW SYMBOL ( ) MAY BE DISPLAYED IN FRONT OF A PIECE OF INFORMATION. THIS SYMBOL IS DISPLAYED WHEN THE PIECE OF INFORMATION IS INVALID.

A fleet is a group of mobiles that represent other mobile objects than your ship. For example, you will use a fleet for ARPA tracks. There are two types of fleets:

- **Dynamic fleet** is a fleet that is configured with a source of acquisition to dynamically acquire mobile that compose it. When a fleet is dynamic, there is an indicator in brackets on the main page.

- **Static fleet** is a fleet that is configured with no source of acquisition of mobile. In this case, the operator can manually add mobiles that compose it. These mobiles are acquired or dead reckoned.

To create a fleet:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	Click **Add** and then **Fleet**.
3.	In the case of a dynamic fleet, set the source of acquisition.
4.	End of procedure.

Note that you cannot insert anything but mobiles into a static fleet. To insert a mobile into a fleet, click the name of this fleet and insert the mobile.

IV.6.4 ASSIGNING INFORMATION TO A MOBILE

When opening Gecdis for the first time, a mobile is created with the same pieces of information as default acquired mobiles (see section IV.6.3).

The pieces of information are as follows:

- Position
- UTC of position (reference)
- SOG
- COG
- SOW
- COW
- True heading
- Charted depth
- Depth

On the other hand, when you manually create a mobile, several default pieces of information are displayed, that depend on the type of mobile you have added.

You can add information to a mobile, depending on which type of information you can acquire with your sensors.

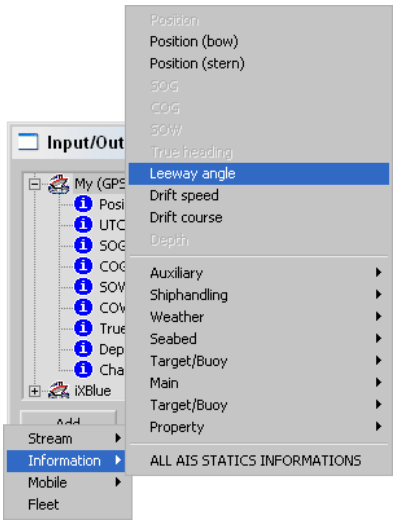


Figure 87 - List of pieces of information that can be added to a ship

To add a piece of information:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	Do one of the following: • Click **Add** and then **Information**. • Right-click the name of the mobile to which you want to add this piece of information and then click **Add** and **Information** in the pop-up menu. *The list of all the pieces of information that have already been added to the mobile are displayed. Note that the pieces of information already added to the mobile are greyed.*
3.	End of procedure.

IV.6.5 CONFIGURING INFORMATION

After adding pieces of information, you must configure them. Depending on those that are selected, you can configure or not some fields.

IV.6.5.1 Source Tab

The **Source** tab allows you to configure the selected piece of information.

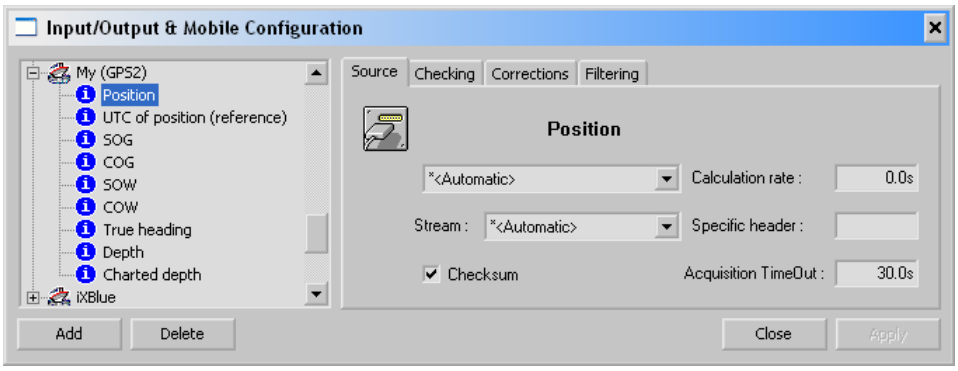


Figure 88 - Configuring the Source of a Piece of Information

Allows you to choose the source of your information. You can estimate or acquire the major part of the information. When you select **<Automatic>**, Gecdis chooses, in acquisition mode, incoming sentences that are the most appropriate and take them into account in priority. The list of sentences is shown in Appendix D.

Stream Allows to choose the stream that will be assigned to the selected piece of information only if the source is not <None>, Estimate, Software or Simulate. If you select **<Automatic>**, the most appropriate stream is selected and taken into account in priority by Gecdis.

Calculation rate Mainly concerns the position of mobiles. When you enter 0.0 s in this field, the position is not updated in dead reckoning mode. This field must be used if you want to maintain your data faster than you receive it. Imagine that you receive data every 10 seconds. If you enter 2 in the Calculation rate field, your information will be regenerated every 2 seconds.

Important

If you have specified a calculation rate lower than the refreshing of your data, the following blinking message will be liable to appear: Calculation warning!

Specific header Allows you to choose a specific header for the acquired sentences of the selected piece of information, so that only sentences beginning with this header are taken into account. For example, imagine you acquire **$SOGGA** and **$GPGGA** sentences. If you enter **$GPGGA** in this field, you will only receive sentences beginning with this header.

Acquisition TimeOut Allows you to define a delay since last acquisition after which the piece of information will be considered as invalid. If the timeout is 0, it will not be taken into account.

IV.6.5.2 Checking Tab

The **Checking** tab allows you to check the informational update. When data is written in red, this means that the piece of information is invalid, undefined or does not exist.

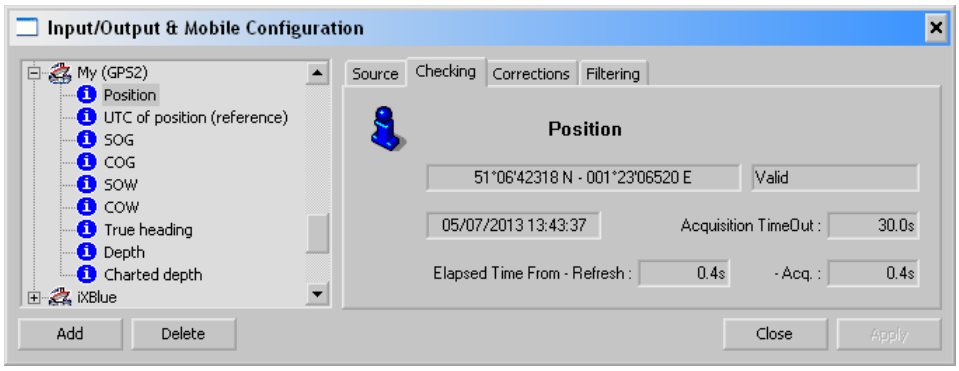


Figure 89 - Controlling a Piece of Information

65°13'30944 N - 024°11'23219 W <WGS84>	Is liable to change. It gives the value of the selected piece of information and indicates the state of this data: Undefined, Invalid, Valid, High quality.
Valid	
28/05/2002 15:02:56	Gives the UTC of data, provided with information or its timestamp when the value of the information has been obtained.
Acquisition TimeOut	Gives the same value as defined in the Source tab (in the above dialog box, no acquisition timeout has been entered).
Elapsed Time from:	
- Refresh	Defines the refreshing time (i.e., the interval between two updates) of the selected piece of information.
- Acq.	Gives the elapsed time since last acquisition of the value for this piece of information.

IV.6.5.3 Corrections Tab

The **Corrections** tab allows you to locate exactly the position of your ship. Indeed, your sensors will certainly not be located exactly at the same location as the conning position, and the conning position is taken into account to locate the position of the ship. For a mobile, the corrections will be used especially for the depth and position parameters. For a fleet, the corrections may concern radars. This tab is only available when the **Basic mode** button is not pressed.

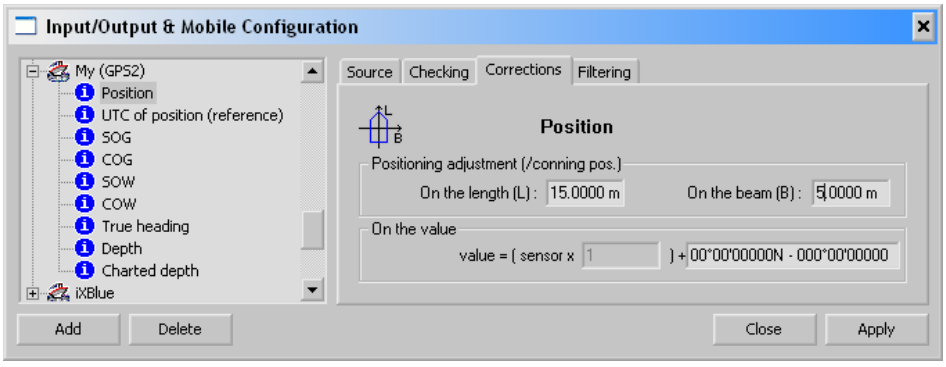


Figure 90 - Applying Corrections to a Piece of Information

To apply corrections to the depth parameter:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, click **Depth** then the **Corrections** tab.
3.	On the **On the length (L)** and **On the beam (B)** fields of the **Positioning adjustment (/conning pos.)** area, enter the length and beam differences between your sounder and the conning position.
4.	In the first field of the **On the value** area, enter the slope ratio to correct the value if a continuous drift of the sensor occurs. In the second field, enter a value for the offset of the sensor (e.g. the difference between the water and the sensor for a sounder).
5.	Click **Apply**.
6.	End of procedure.

If you apply a correction to the position of your ship, as indicated in the above dialog box, a blinking point is inserted in ECS mode (not in ECDIS). This point represents the position of the antenna (see below).

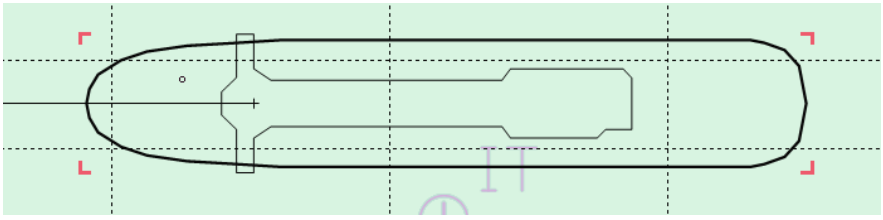


Figure 91 - Ship with a corrected position

IV.6.5.4 Filtering Tab

The **Filtering** tab is used to reject some acquired values if they go beyond defined thresholds.

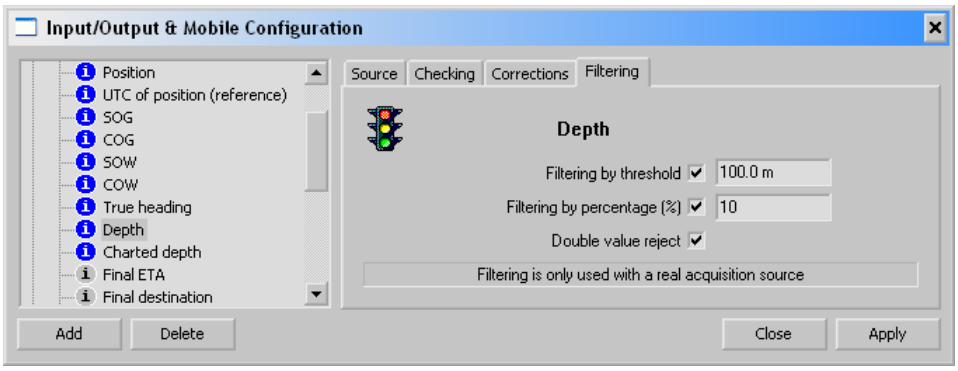


Figure 92 - Filtering a Piece of Information

To apply filtering to the depth parameter:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In *the Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, click **Depth** and then the **Filtering** tab.
3.	You can apply two types of filtering: • **By threshold**. If the difference (absolute value) between two acquired values goes beyond the threshold indicated, the last value will not be taken into account. • **By percentage**. If the difference between two acquired values goes beyond the percentage indicated, the last value will not be taken into account.
4.	Check the **Double value reject** box when you do not want to take into account an acquired value if twice bigger than the last acquired value. This may occur if the echo of a sounder is also acquired. This is only available for the depth piece of information.
5.	End of procedure.

For threshold and percentage filtering, if two consecutive values go beyond one of the defined filters, they will be rejected, but the third will automatically be accepted, even if it also goes beyond one of the filters that have been defined.

IV.6.6 INHERITING INFORMATION

Inheriting information is a process that consists in duplicating from a mobile to another one, all pieces of information that are not already added to the latter. This process implies a strong relationship between both mobiles. For example, as soon as a piece of information is removed from the mobile that inherits information, the piece of information will be inherited from the parent mobile. Also if a piece of information is not assigned to a mobile that inherits information from another mobile, which includes this piece of information, it will be inherited in the first mobile as well.

To inherit information from a mobile:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles**, **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. *The* Input/Output & Mobile Configuration *dialog box opens.*
2.	In the left-hand panel of the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, select the mobile you want to inherit information.

Step	Action
3.	In the **Parent** mobile scrolling list, select the mobile from which you want to inherit information.
4.	End of procedure.

Some route or AIS system informations are automatically inherited the Own Ship.

IV.6.7 SENSOR SYNTHESIS

The *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box allows you to configure system information, streams that allow to receive information from sensors, and mobiles and fleets. The configuration may be complex and numerous. It is not possible to display all of them at the same time in the Input*/Output & Mobile Configuration dialog box* that is why it can be useful to sum up all of them in the same location, i.e., an HTML-based synthesis.

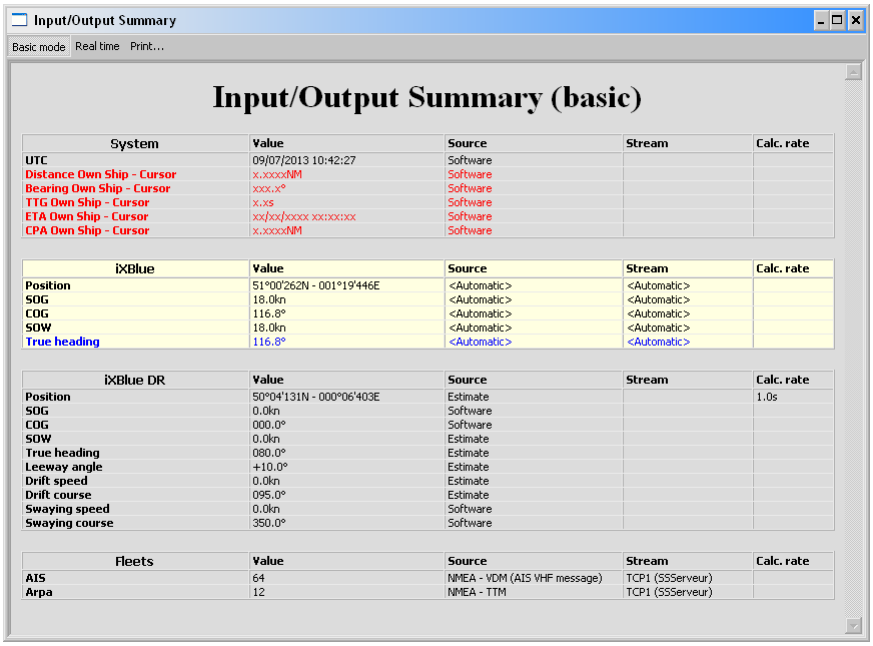


Figure 93 - Input/Output Summary in Basic mode

To open the summary window: In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles** then **Summary…**

IV.6.7.1 Synthesis in Basic and Advanced Modes

Information report is made in a table that is displayed in the *Input/Output Summary* window. This window reacts in the same way as a secondary window. You can dock it in a specific location of the screen, move it or resize it.

Likewise the *Input/Output & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, the display of the summary is made of:

- In basic mode: the main parameters of system information, ships and fleets

- In advanced mode: all configured parameters

The colour of a piece of information expresses its status:

- Red, if invalid or undefined.
- Black (or white depending on the background), if valid or of normal quality.
- Blue, if of high quality.

The first column lists all information that relates to each object. The other ones give information about them:

- **Value** indicates the value of the piece of information
- **Source** gives the origin of the piece of information. In case of dead reckoning or computation, either **Estimate** or **Software** are displayed. If the piece of information is acquired, the source of acquisition is displayed;
- **Stream** allows you to know on what stream the piece of information is connected. The name of the sensor is given into brackets. This name may have been filled in when configuring the stream (**Comment** field);
- **Calc. rate** specifies the rate a piece of information is calculated.

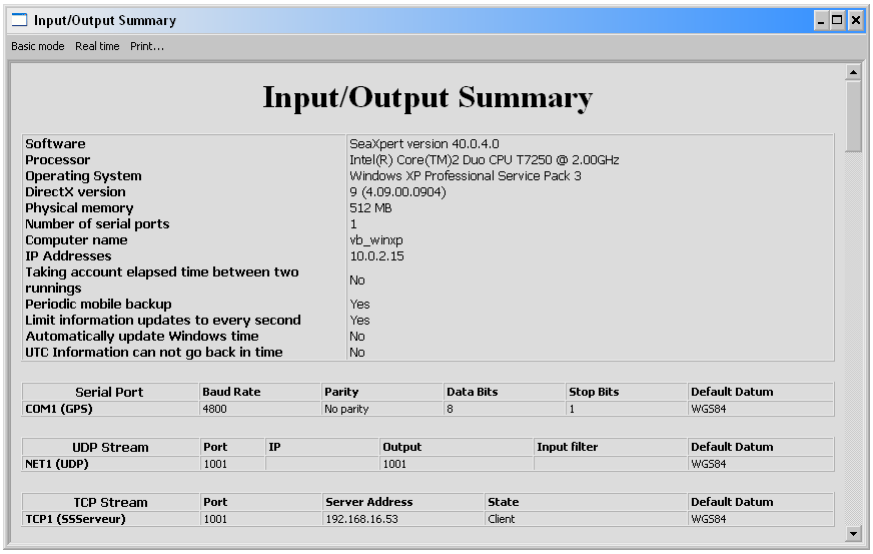


Figure 94 - Input/Output summary in Advanced mode

Basic and advanced mode windows are similar. They consist of three parts:

- The **system** (general characteristics, configuration of streams, system information),
- All mobiles, and their specific pieces of information (**Own Ship** pieces of information are displayed first, and they are highlighted in yellow),
- **Fleets**.

IV.6.7.2 Displaying Real-Time Information

Real-time information allows you to reproduce in the summary window the changes you have made into the *Input/Output & Mobiles Configuration* dialog box, as soon as they are performed, and the changes of values provoked by acquisition and computation. The command is enabled when the corresponding button is pressed.

AS MANY CONTROLS ARE MADE TO UPDATE INFORMATION AND REPRODUCE WHAT HAS CHANGED, THE REAL-TIME BUTTON REDUCES THE PERFORMANCE OF YOUR MACHINE. WE ADVISE YOU TO DISABLE IT IF YOU WANT TO SPEED UP THE PROCESSES.

To display real-time pieces of information:

Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, click **Settings**, I**/O and Mobiles** then **Summary…**
2.	In the *Input/Output Summary* window, click **Real time**.
3.	End of procedure.

IV.6.7.3 Printing the Summary Window

When printing a summary window, you reproduce on a paper the tables that are currently displayed in the I/O Summary window. So if you are in basic mode, only the configuration that relates to basic modes will be printed out. This operation can be performed either in Landscape or in Portrait mode, depending on the configuration of your printer.
Printing the synthesis opens a window allowing previewing the summary. A toolbar allows to act on this preview.

To print the summary window:

Step	Action
1.	Select the summary display mode with the **Basic Mode** button.
2.	Click **Print…**
3.	In the *Print before Preview* window, click **Print**.
4.	End of procedure.

IV.7 Dead Reckoning

The *Dead Reckoning* dialog box allows you to change manually all dead reckoned pieces of information for any ship.

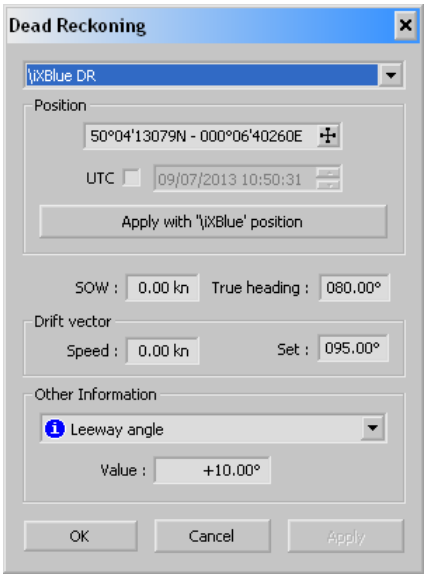


Figure 95- Dead Reckoning a Mobile

To dead reckon a mobile:

Step	Action
1.	Access the *Dead Reckoning* dialog box, clicking **Mobile** and then **Own Ship Dead Reckoning…**
2.	In the list of mobiles, in the upper scrolling list, select the mobile you want to dead reckon.
3.	To assign a new position to a mobile, click and then the main view, where you want to locate your mobile, or enter a new position in the position editable field.
4.	In the **UTC** field, enter the date and time when the mobile has been dead reckoned (you may have dead reckoned the position before entering it).
5.	Enter the **SOW** and **true heading**. To enter those values, the pieces of information must have been added to the mobile and their source must be **Estimate**.
6.	Enter the drift **Speed** and **set**. To enter those values, the pieces of information must have been added to the mobile and the source of this information must be **Estimate**.
7.	Optionally dead reckon the other pieces of information, selecting it in **Other Information** and entering the value for this piece of information in **Value**.
8.	Click **Apply** to see your modifications or click **OK** to close the dialog box.
9.	End of procedure.

IV.8 Fix Position

IV.8.1 Fixing Position

The black box generates a message that gives the current position of your Own Ship every minute. However you can display the position of any ship at a specific time. This position will be displayed as a target with the DR label, and the UTC that corresponds to the fixed positionwill be displayed too. This object is only displayed for the current session. So if you close Gecdis, all positions fixed will be removed from display for the next time you will launch it.

To fix a position of the Own Ship:

Do one of the following:

- Click the **Navigation** menu and then **Fix Own Ship Position**.
- Select your **Own Ship** and click **Fix Position** in the pop-up menu.

To fix a position of a ship:

Select the ship and click **Fix Position** in the pop-up menu.

IV.8.2 Display of Fix Positions

Fix positions can be displayed from the **Display** menu.

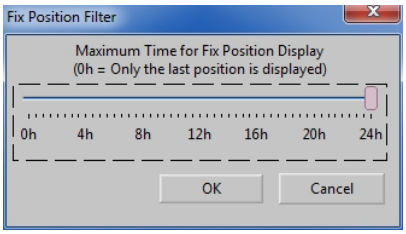
To display the fix positions:

Click the **Display** menu and then **Display Fix Position**

IV.8.3 Fix Position Settings

You can define the duration of the fix position display.

To define the duration of the fix position display:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Display** menu and then **Fix Position Filter**.
2.	Set up the display duration with the cursor from 0 to 24 hours.  If you choose 0, only the last fix position will be displayed, whatever its creation date is. When you open a new session, the last settings are automatically applied.
3.	End of procedure.

V CHARTS

Gecdis can read several kinds of charts:

- Raster charts,
- Vectorial charts.

A raster chart is a scanned image of a paper chart whereas a vector chart is produced by capturing the details and information on the paper chart digitally. The main advantage of the first one is the fact they all have already been produced as paper chart, so it is easier to get them. The second ones are more complex to produce, but they offer more extensive possibilities, such as clicking on an object to have information on it.

Before installing any kind of charts, you must have licences or permits. To do so, you must follow procedures that will make you contact iXBlue's sales department.

Only the chart module that has been selected by the user can be operated at a time. This guarantees projections and datums homogeneity, especially concerning ARCS.

HOWEVER FOR A SAFE NAVIGATION, IT IS HIGHLY RECOMMENDED TO USE ENC CHARTS THAT ARE CERTIFIED BY THE AUTHORITIES. THESE CHARTS OFFER A SET OF AUTOMATIC INTERACTIVE FUNCTIONS FOR SAFETY ALERTS SUCH AS SAFETY SOUNDING LINE, DETECTION OF DANGER ON SHIP'S ROUTE, ETC.).

ENC CHARTS ARE UPDATED REGULARLY.

V.1 Chart Catalogue

V.1.1 DISPLAYING THE CHART COVERAGE

Displaying the coverage area allows the user to view the outline of all cells available in chart databases (ENC, ARCS, DNC, BSB), as well as the user objects and mobiles.

Each cell is symbolized with a frame. As it is noted in the legend, on the lower right part of the main view, those frames are blue for ENC cells, yellow for DNC and magenta for ARCS.

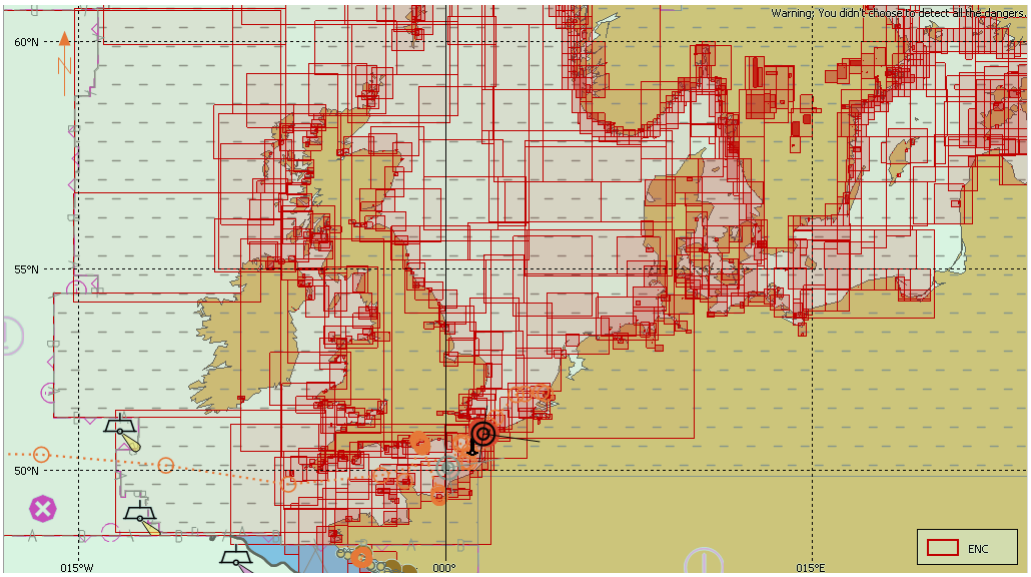


Figure 96 - Chart coverage

To display the chart coverage:

In the **Display** menu, select **Charts** menu, **Chart Information** and check **Chart Coverage**.

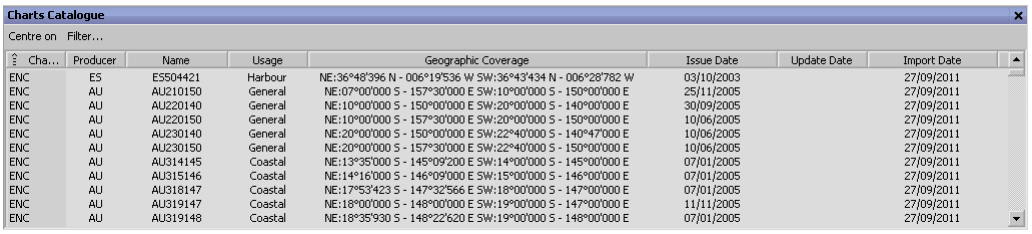
V.1.2 LIST OF CHARTS

A table lists all available charts in all chart databases (ENC, ARCS, DNC). Each chart is given information as follows:

- The kind of chart (ARCS, ENC, DNC)
- The producer code
- The chart name
- The chart code
- The usage (Harbour, Coastal , Approach, Berthing and General)
- The geographic coverage
- The issue date
- The update date
- The import date

The list may be organized from any of those pieces of information, except the chart code and the geographic coverage. This operation is made by clicking the appropriate column header. You can notice which column is sorted out with the arrow that is indicated in this header.

IF YOU HAVE FILTERED CHARTS, ONLY THOSE THAT ARE KEPT AFTER APPLYING THE FILTER WILL BE LISTED IN THE LIST OF CHARTS.



Cha...	Producer	Name	Usage	Geographic Coverage	Issue Date	Update Date	Import Date
ENC	ES	ES504421	Harbour	NE:36°48'396 N - 006°19'536 W SW:36°43'434 N - 006°28'782 W	03/10/2003		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU210150	General	NE:07°00'000 S - 157°30'000 E SW:10°00'000 S - 150°00'000 E	25/11/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU220140	General	NE:10°00'000 S - 150°00'000 E SW:20°00'000 S - 140°00'000 E	30/09/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU220150	General	NE:10°00'000 S - 157°30'000 E SW:20°00'000 S - 150°00'000 E	10/06/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU230140	General	NE:20°00'000 S - 150°00'000 E SW:22°40'000 S - 140°47'000 E	10/06/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU230150	General	NE:20°00'000 S - 157°30'000 E SW:22°40'000 S - 150°00'000 E	10/06/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU314145	Coastal	NE:13°35'000 S - 145°09'200 E SW:14°00'000 S - 145°00'000 E	07/01/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU315146	Coastal	NE:14°16'000 S - 146°09'000 E SW:15°00'000 S - 146°00'000 E	07/01/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU318147	Coastal	NE:17°53'423 S - 147°32'566 E SW:18°00'000 S - 147°00'000 E	07/01/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU319147	Coastal	NE:18°00'000 S - 148°00'000 E SW:19°00'000 S - 147°00'000 E	11/11/2005		27/09/2011
ENC	AU	AU319148	Coastal	NE:18°35'930 S - 148°22'620 E SW:19°00'000 S - 148°00'000 E	07/01/2005		27/09/2011

Figure 97 - The charts catalogue

As for BSB charts, they are listed in a module independent of the other chart catalogue module. In this module, each chart is presented with the following identification parameters: name/scale/datum name/edition date/picture.

To display the list of charts:

In the **System** menu, select **Settings** menu, **Charts** and check **Charts Catalogue....**

To centre the main view on a chart:

Step	Action
1.	In the list of charts, click the cell you wish to centre on.
2.	Click **Centre on**.
3.	End of procedure.

V.1.3 FILTERING CHARTS

Sorting out the list of available charts allows you to organize charts with a particular criterion. But filtering the list allows you to display in the planisphere and the cell table some cells that correspond to one or several specific parameter(s).

They are as follows:

- The type of charts (ARCS, ENC): you can select all kinds of charts, or one in particular.
- The type of usage (Harbour, Coastal, Approach, Berthing, General): you can select all kinds of usage, or one in particular.
- The geographic area: you can enter the points located in North – East and South – West or drag with the cursor the desired area with . If one of the selected points is inside a cell, this cell will not be part of the selection.
- The route: If you choose a route in the **Route** scrolling list, the filtered list will consist of the cells or charts crossed out by this route.

The **Navigational Type** and **Usage** criteria can be set at the same time, contrary to **Geographical Area** and **Route**.

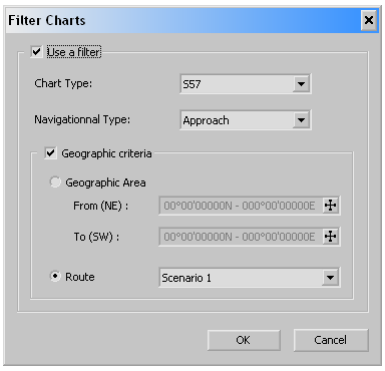


Figure 98 - Filtering Charts

To configure the filter of the charts:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Charts Catalogue** window, click **Filter…** button.
2.	In the *Filter Charts* dialog box, check **Use a filter**.
3.	To configure the **Chart** and **Navigational Types**, select the appropriate values in the corresponding scrolling lists.
4.	If you wish to select a **Geographical Area** or a **Route**, check **Geographic criteria**.
5.	Do one of the following: • To choose a geographic area, either click **Geographic Area** and then enter the coordinates in **From (NE)** and **To (SW)** or select an area clicking and dragging the mouse on the planisphere. • To choose a route, click **Route** and then select the desired route in the scrolling list.
6.	Optionally uncheck the **Use a filter** box to remove the configuration of filters.
7.	End of procedure.

V.1.4 DISPLAYING THE PLANISPHERE IN BACKGROUND

You can choose to display the planisphere in background or not. By displaying the planisphere, you get a default global coverage on which can be superimposed specific chart data (ENC, etc.).

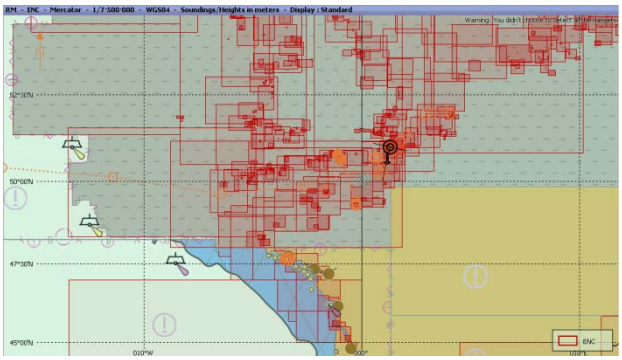


Figure 99 - Without the planisphere

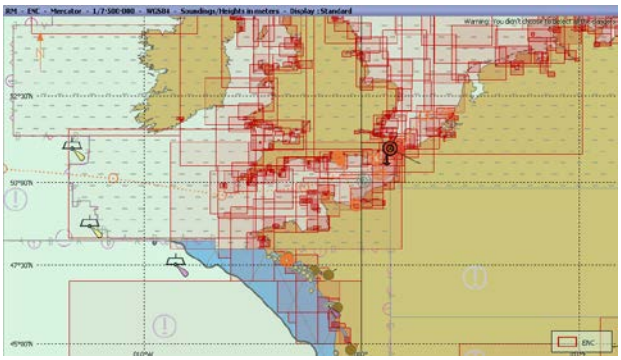


Figure 100 - With the planisphere

To display the planisphere in background: Click the **Display** menu, select **Charts**, **Chart Display Mode**, and then check **Planisphere In Background** or **Planisphere** (depends on the cartographic module).

V.2 ENC Charts (iXBlue format)

V.2.1 INTRODUCTION

Gecdis is an ECDIS (Electronic Chart Display Information System): an informational system for maritime navigation that is considered as the equivalent of an updated maritime chart.

Gecdis aims at:

- Improving sea security
- Facilitating chart updates
- Reducing the bridgework

This nautical Geographic Information System (GIS) is an expert system which contains two elements:

- A database, called ENC (Electronic Navigational Chart), containing any geographical information that is useful to navigate safely
- Integrated equipment

Before any ENC can be used in an ECDIS, it is loaded into the hard disk and converted into the system's own internal formal (SENC). The ENC module aims at integrating and displaying completely ENC charts such that sailors do not have to be preoccupied with the format of the data to be used. Indeed, the SENC cartographic module does not display ENCs but a system of electronic navigational charts. Moreover, the ENC standard is considered as an exchange format, especially by the institutions that have defined it, and it is strongly recommended to use another format to get the required performance. This standard is an exchange format and also an independent format for the platform being used.

Moreover, the user can profit by a presentation of his cells because the data import is accompanied with a data sorting structure.

V.2.1.1 Launching the ENC Module

The first time you launch the ENC module, no chart is loaded and you have to import a set of charts.

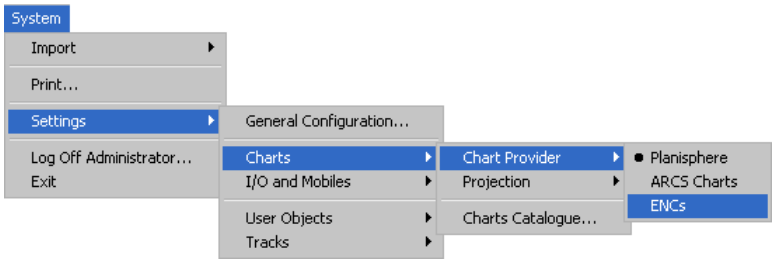


Figure 101 - Launching the ENC Module

To launch the ENC module:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **System** menu, select **Settings**, **Charts** and then **Chart Provider**.
2.	Click **ENCs**.
3.	End of procedure.

V.2.1.2 Default Configuration

Some commands of the ENC module allows you to choose between several options, and other commands can be edited. Some default values or options are configured. If you change them, your modification will be taken into account until you change them again.

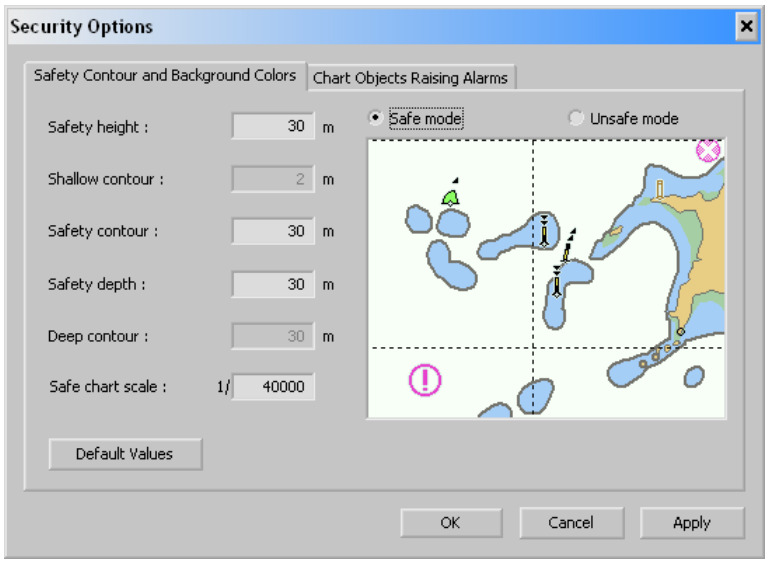


Figure 102 - Default configuration

To display the options: In the **System** menu, select **Settings**, **Charts**, and then **Objects Detection…**.

V.2.2 CHART DATABASE PRESENTATION

The *Charts Database* dialog box is lockable/unlockable and allows you to manage the cells of the chart database.

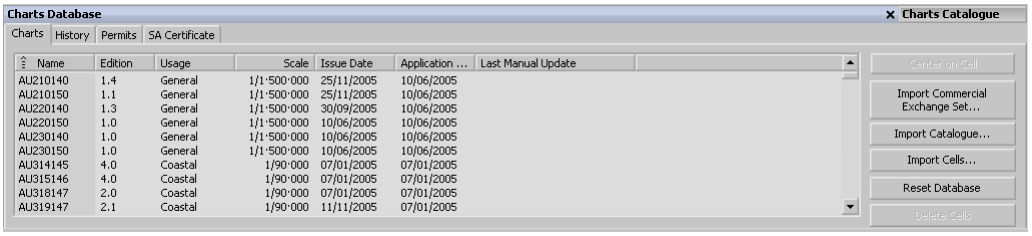


Figure 103 - ENC Chart Database

Tab	Description	
Charts	Lists all available cells with a set of information : **Name**: name of the cell. An example of a cell syntax is: GB4X01NE where : • GB is the producer code. • 4 is the navigational purpose (overview, general, coastal, approach, harbour or berthing). In the present example, 4 defines the coastal navigational purpose. • X01NE is the area described by the cell. **Edition**: the cell's edition and update ENC's creation, 1 is assigned as a value for this field. Each time a cell is edited, the edition number increases by 1. **Usage**: navigational purpose for which ENC data has been compiled by the IHO. **Scale**: scale in which the chart objects have been compiled. When the information is displayed at a larger scale than that contained in the ENC, the indication "Overscale" displays. **Issue Date**: date of publication and availability of a cell. **Application date**: date to which the update becomes available.	
	Center on Cell…	To centre the chart area on the cell you have selected in the list. See section V.2.7.
	Import Commercial Exchange Set…	To import encrypted ENC cells. See section V.2.3.1.
	Import Catalogue…	To import non encrypted ENC cells.Importing a Catalog of non Encrypted ENC Cells
	Import Cells…	To select 1 file (1 cell) or one directory of several cells. See section V.2.3.3.
	Reset Database…	Delete all the cells. The database is thus moved to recycle bin. See section V.2.6.
History	Reports the actions done on the cells. 2 points of view: • Cell by cell (**Charts** tab) • Operation by operation (**Operations** tab)	
Permits	Enables to download a permit file, that is a `.txt` file required by the software to install all purchased charts. It contains as many lines as the number of purchased charts :	

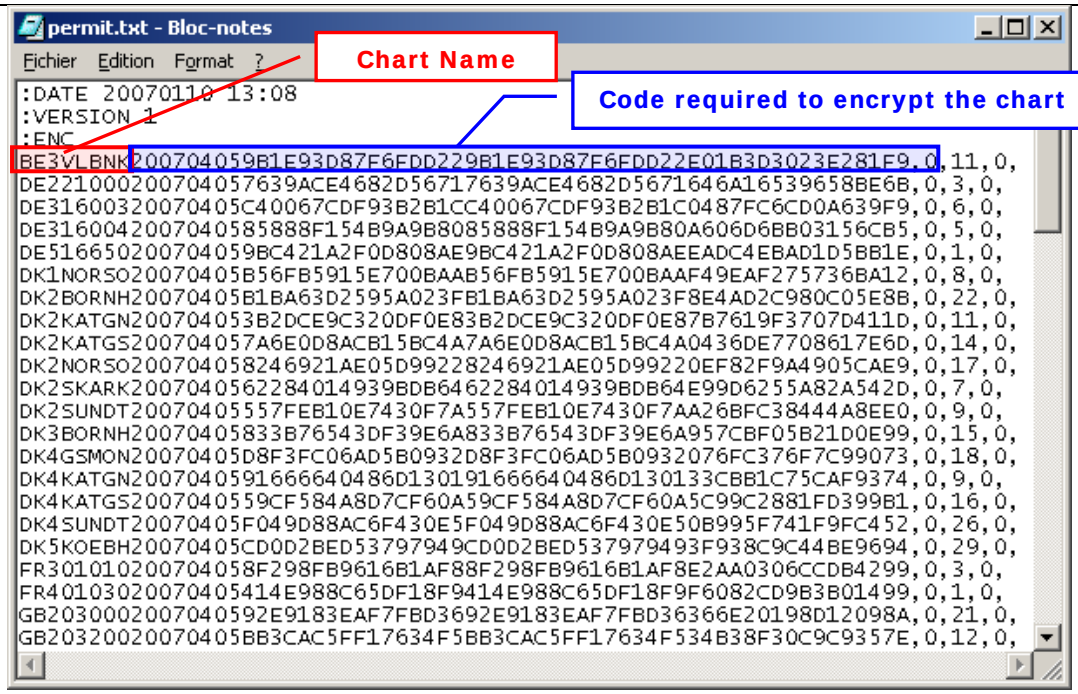


Figure 104 - Permit.txt

	Import Permits…	To manage the acquisition of permits. See section V.2.8
	Delete Permits…	
	Delete All Permits…	
SA Certificate	Presents the SA (Scheme Authority) Certificate that authenticates the origin of ENC charts.	
	Load Certificate…	To load a certificate. See section V.2.9

V.2.3 MANAGING THE CHART DATABASE

V.2.3.1 Importing a Set of Encrypted ENC Cells

Encrypted cells are provided with a set of files in an exchange set containing:

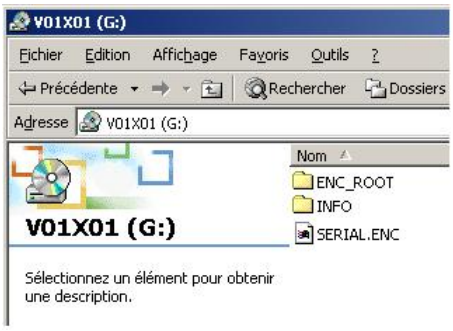
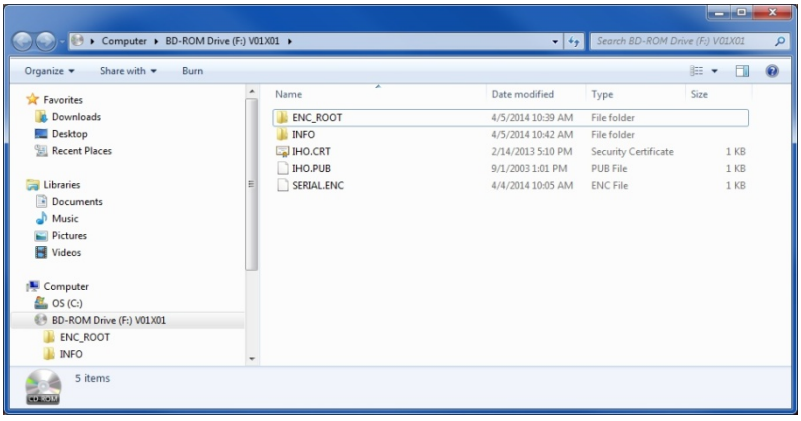


Figure 105 - Encrypted ENC Cells set of files

The cells of commercial distributors can be encrypted or not if they are directly provided by your hydrographic office:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Import Commercial Exchange Set…**
2.	In the dialog box, select the CD-ROM that contains the desired charts and select: • The folder containing a file `SERIAL.ENC` and a folder `ENC_ROOT`, or • The folder containing a file `MEDIA.TXT` and several folders containing a subfolder `ENC_ROOT`. In our example below, the folder that must be selected is one on those entitled `BaseCD_`... since it contains the file `SERIAL.ENC` as well as the `ENC_ROOT` folder. If you had selected the `ENC_ROOT`, the import process would not start: 
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

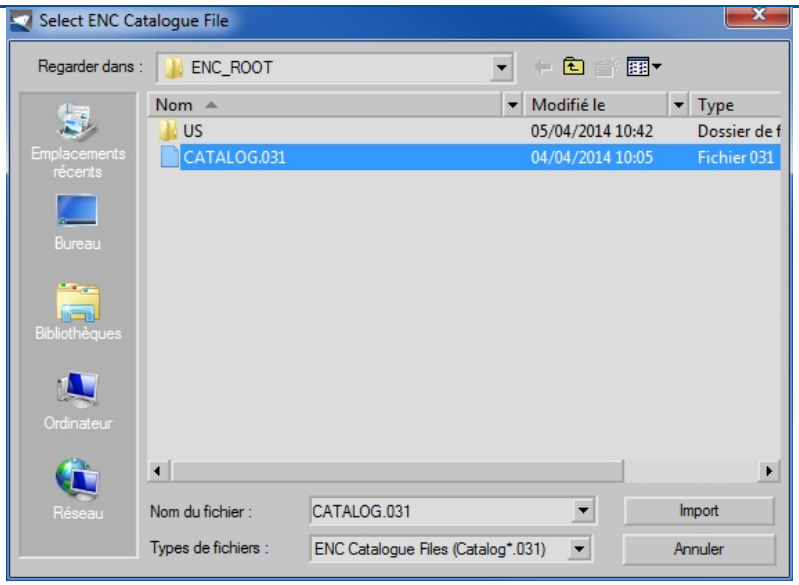
IF YOU IMPORT NON OFFICIAL DATA, A MESSAGE IS DISPLAYED IN THE HIGHER RIGHT SIDE OF THE SCREEN. ALSO IF YOU LOAD THE CORRUPTED DATA, CELLS ARE REJECTED.

V.2.3.2 Importing a Catalog of non Encrypted ENC Cells

To import a catalogue:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Import Catalogue…**
2.	Locate the `ENC_ROOT` folder, select the **CATALOG.031** file, and then click **OK**.

Step	Action



3. End of procedure.

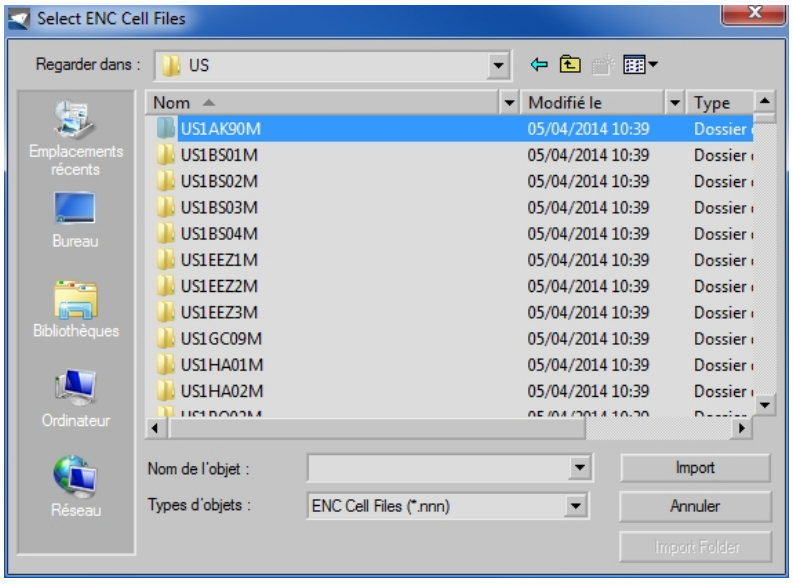
V.2.3.3 Importing One or Several ENC Cells

You can import S57 file:

Step	Action

1. Click **Import Cells…**

2. Select:
   - one file and click **Import**,
   - or a folder and click **Import Folder**.



3. End of procedure.

V.2.4 GETTING AN IMPORT REPORT

Each time you are proceeding to an import of cells, a **Last Import** tab displays in the **Charts Database** dialog box.

The **Last Import** pane describes the result of the process import and the result of an update cell by cell.

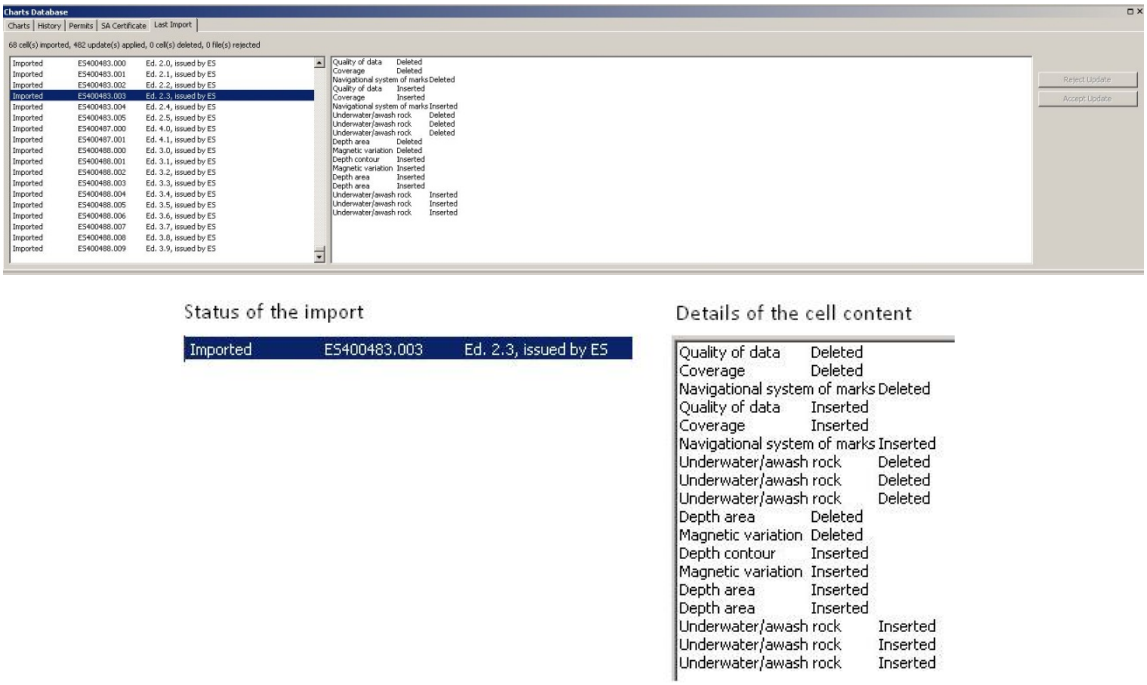


Figure 106 - Import report

To display the detail of a cell, select a cell. The list of the cell's user objects display with the action that has been performed on each object. The action can be:

- **Inserted** : the object has been inserted
- **Modified**: the object has been modified. The modification can change either the geometry of the object or its attributes.
- **Deleted**: the object has been deleted.

Select one of the object and the main view is centred on it. If you have selected an object tagged **Inserted**, the *Imported Feature* dialog box displays giving details on the object.

At this step you can:

Button	Action
Accept Update or **Reject Update**	Rejected updates are applied, but they are annotated as rejected. If you have rejected an update, you can reconsider your action until the *Chart database* dialog box has not been closed and no other import operation has been launched. To do so, select the update and click **Accept update**.
Annotate object…	The annotation is displayed in the *Imported Feature* window as well as the user who added the annotation and the date and time. The annotation can be removed by clicking **Remove Annotation**.

Mark as deleted	If you delete this feature, it is mentioned in the *Imported Feature* window as well as the user who added the annotation and the date and time.

V.2.5 GETTING INFORMATION ON THE CELLS

In the **History** tab, click the **Charts** button to display all the cells imported and available in the application.

Figure 107 - Information on a cell

Click a cell to get several types of information on it:

- IMPORT NO1A3000 (Edition: 1, Update: 0) on 08/26/10 at 15:05:11. This means the NO1A3.000 file has been imported on the 26th of August 2010 at 15 h 05 mn 11 s. This is a new edition (update = 0) which has been replaced by the former one.
- IMPORT GB5X01SW (Edition: 1, Update: 1) on 12/14/05 at 15:00:07. The GB5X01SW.001 file has been imported on the 14th of December. 2005 at 15 h 00 mn 7 s. This is an update (update = 1) that changes the 1.0 cell (Edition =1 / Update=0) that used to be in the chart database. When an update is applied, the line below is followed by the list of modified objects with the type of modification. There are several kinds of possible changes:
  - Insertion (INSERT)
  - Modification (MODIFY): the modification can change either the geometry of the object or its attributes.
  - Deletion (DELETE).

V.2.6 RESETTING THE DATABASE

To reset database: In the **Charts Database** dialog box, click **Reset Database** to restart with an empty database. The current database is thus sent to the recycle bin.

V.2.7 CENTRING THE CHART AREA ON A CELL

To centre the chart area on a cell:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Charts** tab of the *Charts Database* dialog box, click the cell you wish to centre on, and then click **Center on Cell**, or double click the cell.
2.	The chart area is then centred on the selected cell, with its compilation scale.
3.	End of procedure.

V.2.8 IMPORTING/DELETING USER PERMITS

The permit file (license) is a `.txt` file that is required by the application to install all purchased charts. This file (via USB key, CD, mail, etc.) is delivered when purchasing official charts.

It contains as many lines as the number of purchased chart:

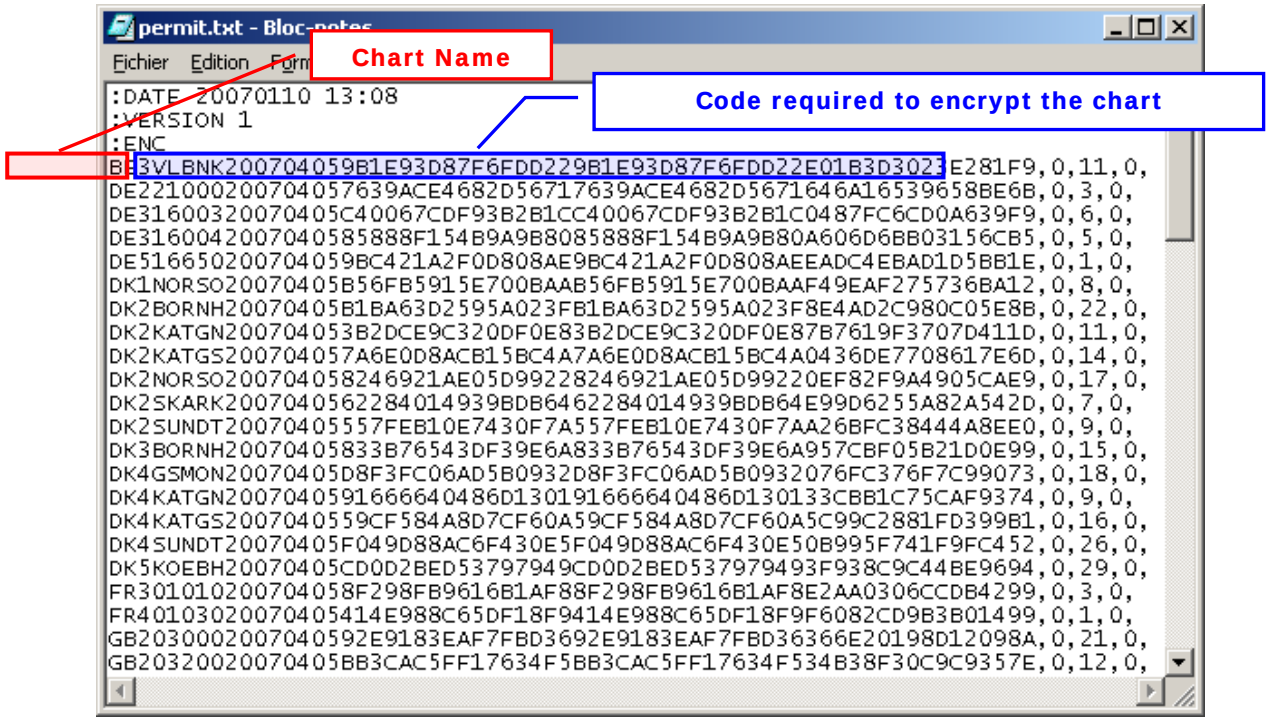


Figure 108 - Permit.txt

Any action (importing/deleting) on the permits is done in the **Permits** tab of the *Charts Database* dialog box:

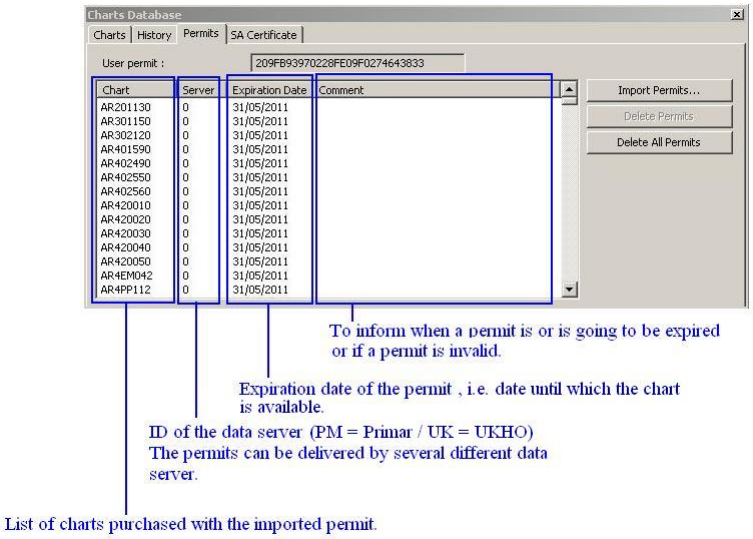

Charts Database
Charts
History
Permits
SA Certificate
User permit :
209FB93970228FE09F0274643833
Chart
Server
Expiration Date
Comment
Import Permits...
Delete Permits
Delete All Permits
To inform when a permit is or is going to be expired or if a permit is invalid.
Expiration date of the permit , i.e. date until which the chart is available.
ID of the data server (PM = Primar / UK = UKHO)
The permits can be delivered by several different data server.
List of charts purchased with the imported permit.

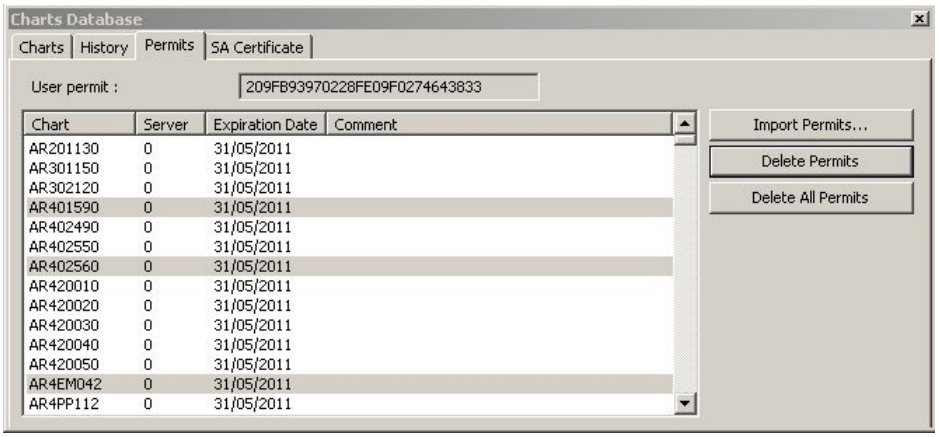
Figure 109 - Permit tab

To import a permit:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Import Permits…**
2.	In the media containing the permit, select the `permit.txt` file**.**
3.	Click **Import**. Once imported, the permits are stored in the `Settings` directory of the application, in the `SdnENC.pmt` file.
4.	End of procedure.

To delete one or several permits:

Step	Action
1.	Select one or several lines (pressing **[Ctrl]** key) and click **Delete Permits**.
2.	You can also delete all permits at once by clicking **Delete All Permits**.
3.	End of procedure.



V.2.9 LOADING CERTIFICATES

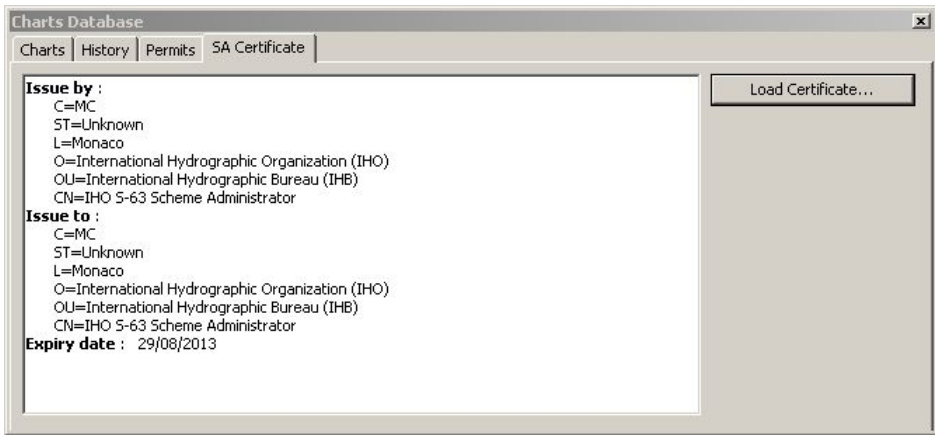
The certificates, `.crt` files, are required to authenticate the origin of each encrypted ENC cell. The IHO certificate is automatically loaded when installing Gecdis.

The Load certificate option can be used to:

- Replace the IHO certificate when the one installed with Gecdis is expired (in 2013).
- Load a certificate from another provider of encrypted ENC (PRIMAR for example). If you load a certificate delivered by an organism other than IHO, the loaded certificate is used temporarily, i.e., only for a session. If you quit and launch again Gecdis, the application uses the official IHO certificate again.

To load a certificate:

Step	Action
1.	In the *Charts Database* dialog box, select the **SA Certificate** tab.
2.	Click **Load Certificate….**
3.	Select the certificate available in the `Gecdis\SdnEnc` directory and click **Load**.
4.	End of procedure.



V.2.10 CHART LOADING MODES

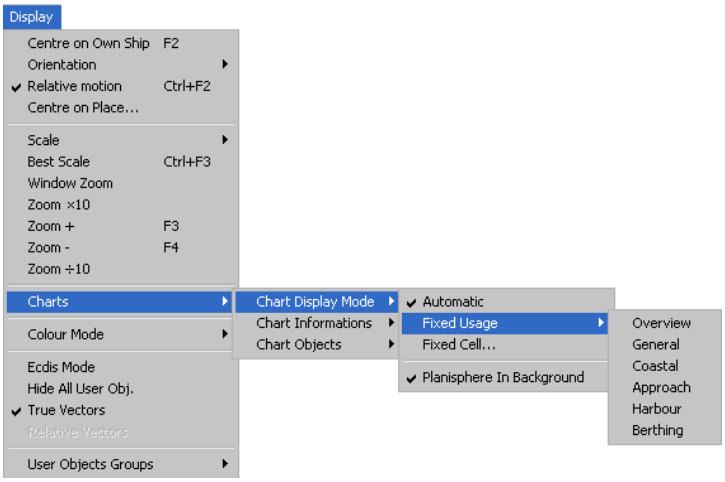
The ENC module allows you to use two different chart loading modes: automatic loading and manual loading.

Automatic loading allows to:

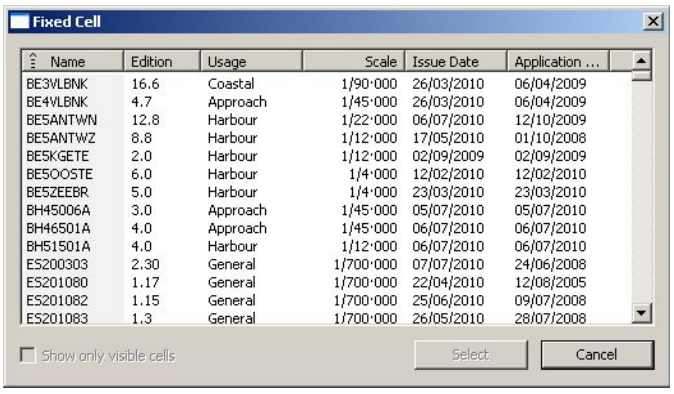
- Load automatically all chart cells covering the area displayed on screen.
- Load only charts that correspond to a specific navigational purpose. You can either select one out of the six navigation purposes: Overview, General, Coastal, Approach, Harbour and Berthing. Only charts whose navigational purpose corresponds to the option you have selected will be loaded.

Manual loading allows you to select only a specific chart.

To use the chart automatic loading mode:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Charts** menu and then point to **Chart Loading Mode**.
2.	Do one of the following: • To load all charts automatically, click **Automatic Coverage**. • To load charts with the same chart usage as ECDIS usage, point to **Fixed Usage** and select one of the options. 
3.	End of procedure.

To use the manual loading of a chart:

Step	Action
1.	In **Charts** menu, select **Chart Loading Mode**, and then **Fixed Cell…**
2.	In the **Fixed Cell** dialog box, select the cell to be displayed. 
3.	**Show only visible charts** is an option allowing you to list only the charts that are displayed in the main view. By default the window lists all the charts available.
4.	Click **Select** to load and display the cell.
5.	End of procedure.

V.2.11 UPDATING

V.2.11.1 Semi-Automatic Updating

This type of updating consists in importing, copying or updating a cell from removable media like CDs. IHO or their distributors provide these updates. After updating one or more cell (s), a report tab named **Last Import** is displayed in the *Charts Database* dialog box. The dialog box lists all updates and offers you to accept or reject them.

Note that the report area is available only when importing data and remains displayed during all the session.

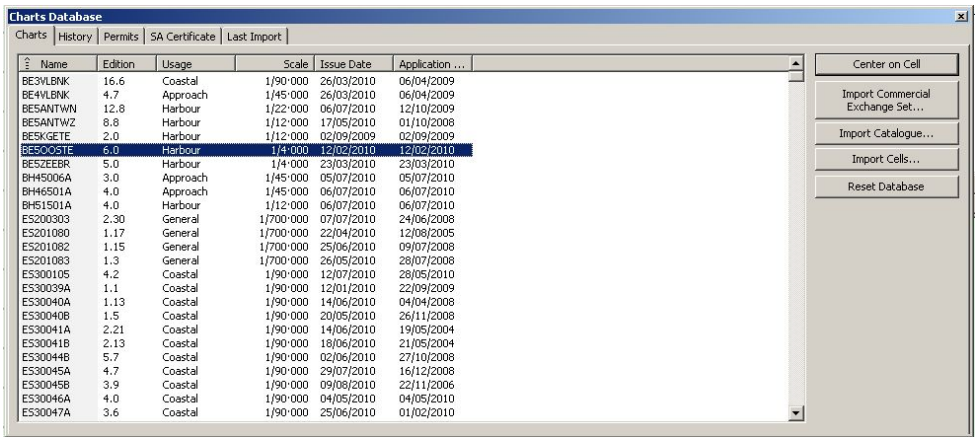


Figure 110 - Accepting or denying updates

To display the detail of an update, click the **Last Import** tab. For further details on the import report, refer to the section V.2.4, page 132.

To update a cell:

Step	Action
1.	Access the *Charts Database* dialog box.
2.	The semi automatic updating module can be used to update: • **Import Commercial Exchange Set…** see section V.2.3.1. • **Import Catalogue…** see section V.2.3.2. • **Import Cells…** see section V.2.3.3.
3.	So, click one of the button and browse to the update files.
4.	When import is over, imported ENCs charts are listed in the **Last Import** tab with the status (Inserted/Modified/Deleted).
5.	Select the updates you want to reject and click **Reject Update**.
6.	Close the *Charts Database* dialog box by clicking the little cross in the upper right corner.
7.	End of procedure.

WHEN YOU REJECT AN UPDATE, IT IS ANNOTATED WITH AN ORANGE MARK AND A TEXT THAT INDICATES THIS HAS BEEN REJECTED. UPDATE IS APPLIED.

V.2.11.2 Manual Updating

Manual updating is the second type of updates. It consists in modifying the ENC cell by creating a user object and modifying a chart object or a mariner's object that has already been created. Mariner's objects can be either a point or an area. All the objects are annoted with an orange mark.

You can:

- Create a point object.
- Create an area.
- Annotate an object.
- Mark a chart object as deleted. This is a specific kind of annotation.
- Move a point object of the official chart. This object is then marked as deleted and a new identical object is created on the new position.

To consult an existing chart object: You should select it on the chart by clicking right on it (or by clicking on it while holding the **[Ctrl]** key in Centre mode).

The *Chart Information* window shows in its lower part several buttons. The list of buttons varies if the object is from the official chart or has been manually created.

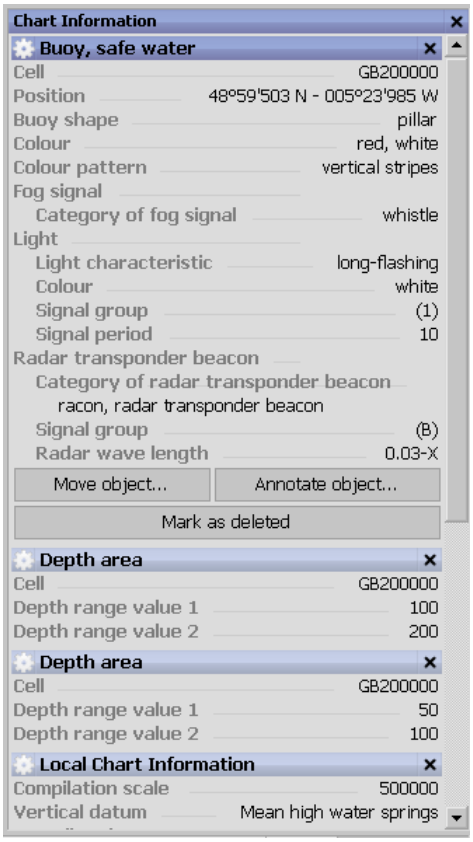


Figure 111 - The chart information window

To access the dialog box allowing the cells to be edited:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Charts** menu, and then point to **Manual Updates…**
2.	Select **New Ponctual Object** or **New Area** depending on the type of object you wish to create.
3.	End of procedure.

To annotate a chart object:

An object can have several annotations. All these annotations are listed in the *Object information* window.

Step	Action
1.	Select the object in the chart.
2.	In the *Object information* window, click **Annotate object….** button**.** Enter information and click **OK**. An object can have several annotations. Clicking **Annotate object…** adds an annotation.
3.	End of procedure.

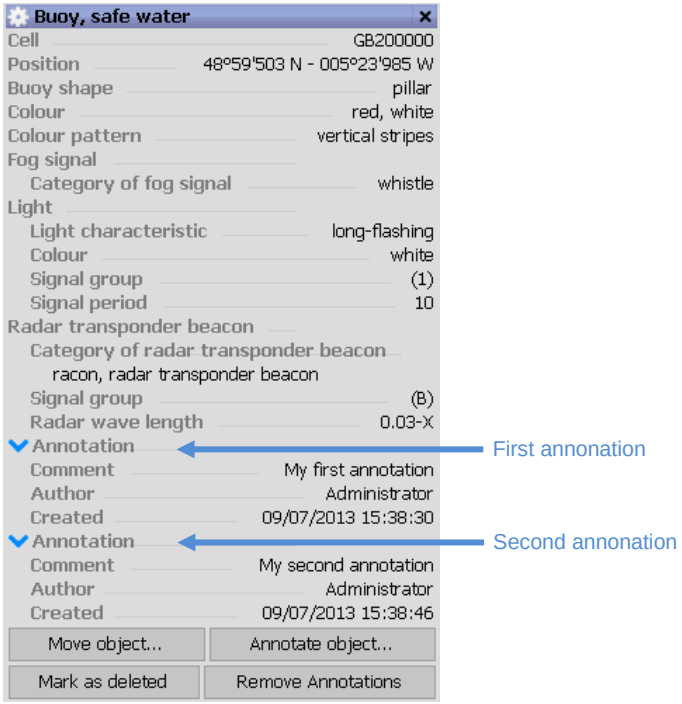


Figure 112 - Chart object with annotations

To delete all annotations:

Step	Action
1.	Select the object in the chart.
2.	In the *Object information* window, click **Remove Annotations** button. *A message displays notifying that all annotations are deleted. The orange mark used to annotate an object on the chart is removed but the annotations are still displayed in the* Object information *(see Figure 113) window.*
3.	End of procedure.

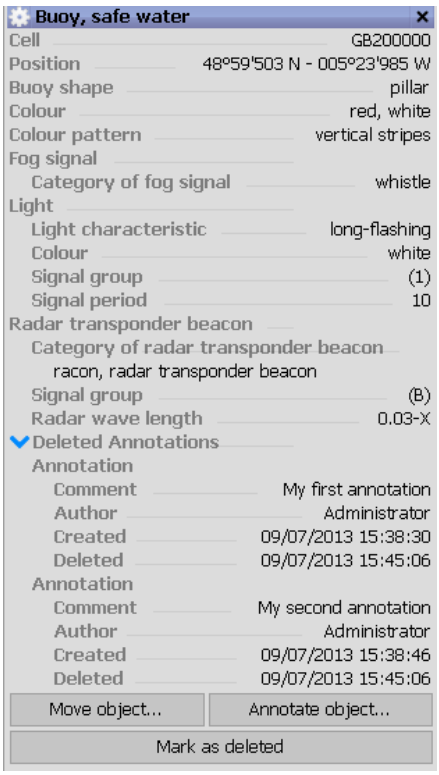


Figure 113 - Chart object with deleted annotations

To move a punctual object:

Step	Action
1.	Select the object in the chart.
2.	In the *Object information* window, click **Move object…** button.
3.	The window that opens allows you to enter the new position of the object or an offset in terms of heading and distance between the current location of the object and its new location.
4.	Once the operation done, click **OK**
5.	End of procedure.

When an object of the official chart is moved, the original chart object stays at the same location and is crossed out with an orange dash. A new object is created at the selected location. The new object is highlighted. When an object created manually is moved, the object position changes. Original and new positions are mentioned in the *Object information* window:

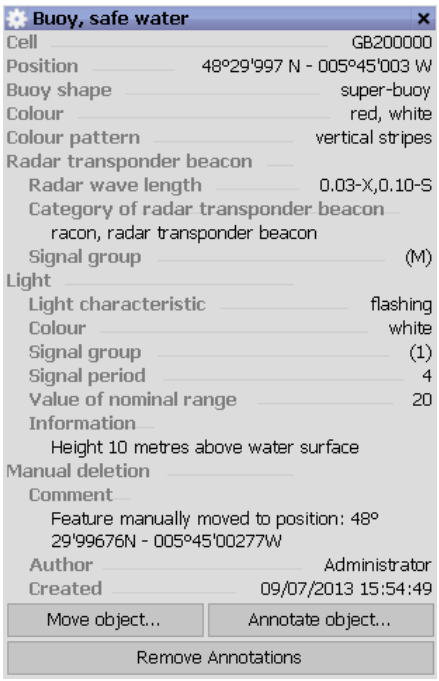


Figure 114 - Manually moved chart object

To delete a chart object that has been created manually:

Step	Action
1.	Select the object in the chart.
2.	In the *Object information* window, click **Delete object** button. This button appears in the *Object information* window only if the object has been created manually.
3.	End of procedure.

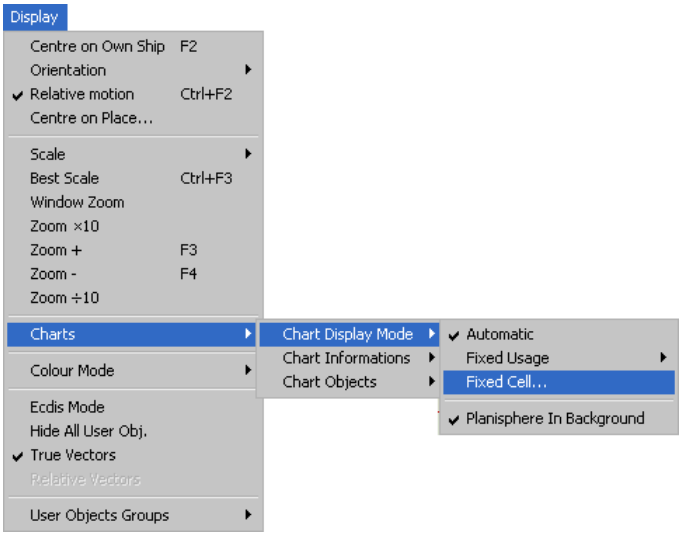
Select fixed cell loading mode

If you are using the automatic chart loading mode, before creating an object, you must first select a cell in the *Fixed Cell* dialog box.

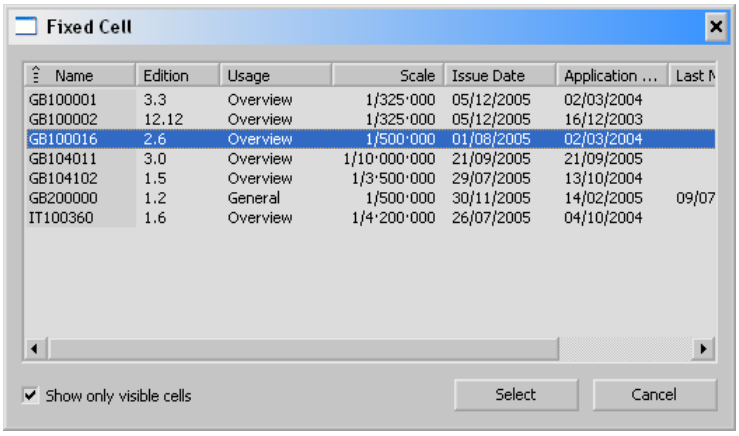
To select fixed cell loading mode:

Step	Action

1. Open the dialog with **Display** menu and select **Charts**, **Chart Display Mode** and then click **Fixed Cell...**:



2. Select a cell and click **Select**.

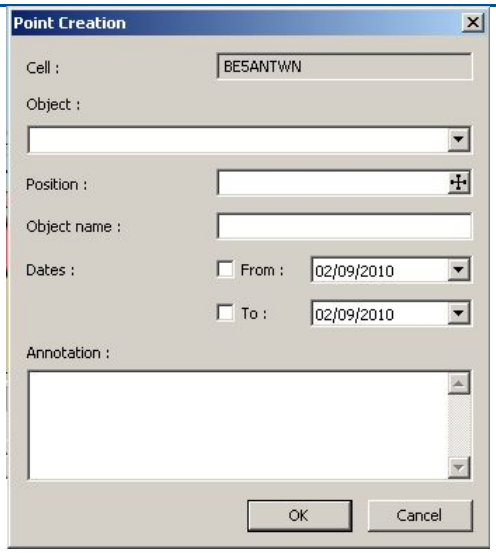


3. End of procedure.

To create a punctual object:

Step	Action

1. In the **Charts** menu, point to **Manual Updates,** and then select **New Ponctual object…** The *Point Creation* window is displayed:

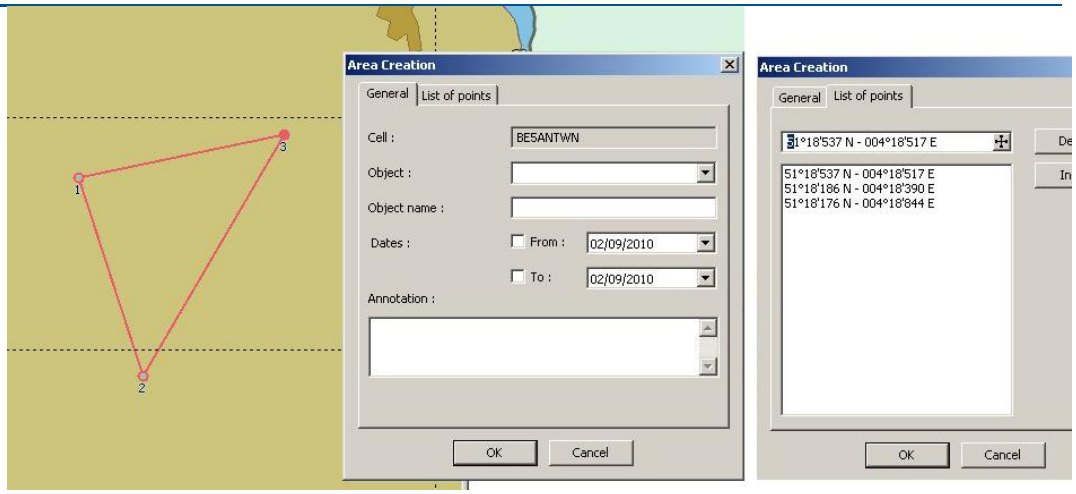
Step	Action
	
2.	Select the type of chart object you wish to create.
3.	Enter the position of the object. It is also possible to enter a name and an annotation for the new object as well as a period of validity. It is not compulsory to fill in those fields.
4.	Click **OK**. *The desired objet is displayed on the chart. It is highlighted with the orange mark that specifies the objects that have been created manually.*
5.	End of procedure.

V.2.11.2.1 Creating Areas

To create an area:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Charts** menu, point to **Manual Updates**, and then select **New Area…**
2.	Locate the points of the are on the chart by clicking. After inserting the last point, right click. To create an area, you should insert at least three points, which will open the *Area Creation* dialog box.

Step	Action



3. Select the type of chart object you wish to create.

4. You can enter a name and an annotation as well as a period of validity for the new object. It is not compulsory to fill in those fields.

5. If you wish to change the position of the points that have been inserted with the mouse, click **List of Points**. The locations of the mouse clicks are specified. You can remove a point selecting it, and then clicking the **Delete** button. You can insert other points of the area by entering a position in the field, in the upper part of the dialog box, and then clicking **Insert**.

6. Click **Refresh view** to display the area in real-time, with the deleted and inserted points.

7. Click **OK**. The new area is displayed. Its borders are highlighted by small orange circles that specify the area has been created manually.

8. End of procedure.

V.2.12 CHART PRESENTATION

V.2.12.1 Simplified and Traditional Display

You can also change the aspect of symbols to make the consultation of cells easier. Indeed, you can either choose to display the objects the way they are usually displayed on a paper chart (Traditional symbols) or in a simpler way (Simplified symbols).

To choose between the traditional and simplified displays: Click the **Charts** menu, point to **Presentation** and select your desired type of presentation.

For example, the following symbol in traditional display mode will look like the following in simplified display mode.

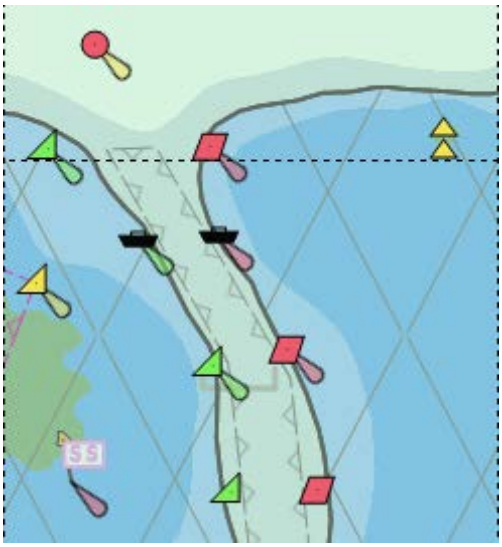


Figure 115 - Chart with simplified symbols

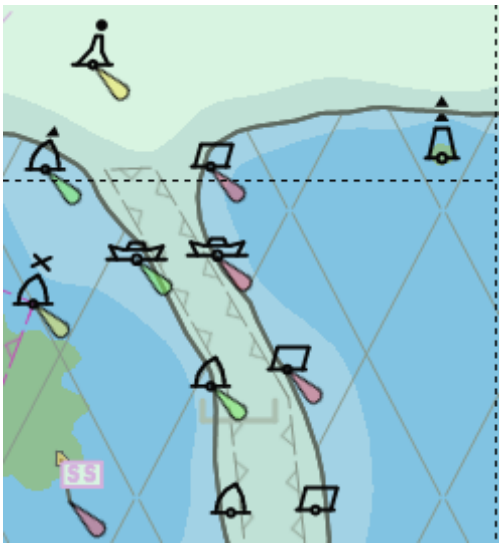


Figure 116 - Chart with traditional symbols

V.2.12.2 Detail Level of Chart Objects

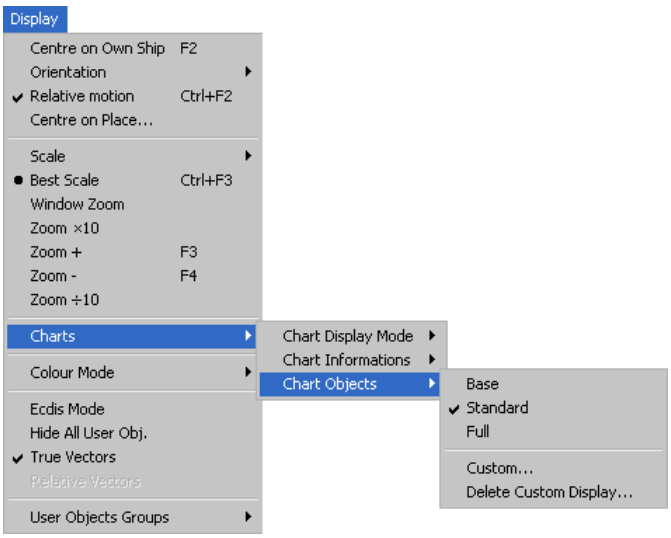


Figure 117 - Chart Objects menu

The ENC module allows you to display or not many data in the chart. There are three types of chart data display – Display Base, Standard Display and Full Display. Their difference lies in the chart objects they allow you to display.

If you are not satisfied with a specific level, you can customize the chart display by defining a filter, and then save the filter assigning it a name. You can save as many filters as desired. So you can fastly change the display depending on your sailing habits.

Information to be displayed is arranged in a tree, with branches that it is possible to expand and reduce. So some categories, such as Beacon, includes a list of object in lower levels (Beacon, cardinal, Beacon lateral, etc.). Checkboxes are represented as follows:

- ✔ : The object is always displayed because it belongs to the basic mode.
- ☑ : Displays in front of the objects that represents a category. Some objects of this category are displayed, but not all of them.

- ☑ : The object is displayed. If the cross appears in front of an object that represents a category, this means that all objects of this category are displayed.
- ☐ : The object is not displayed. If this appears in front of an object that represents a category, this means that no object of this category is displayed.

If you check the **All** box, all boxes will be checked, which is the same thing as selecting the **Full** display.

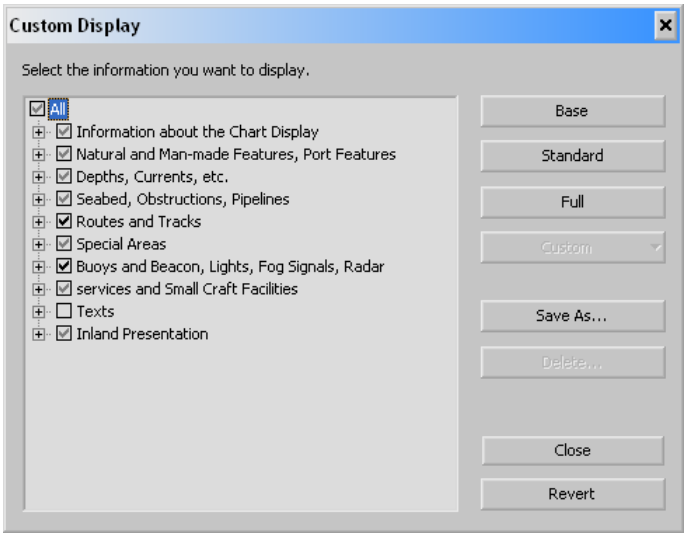


Figure 118 - Configuring ENC Chart Display

To select a default display: In the **Display** menu, select **Charts**, point to **Chart Objects**, and then click your desired level. When you select one of the default display, a checkmark appears in the menu, in front of the selected level.

To set a customized display:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Display** menu, select **Charts**, point to **Chart Objects**, and then click **Custom …**. *The* Custom Display *dialog box opens. In the tree, the currently checked objects are those that are currently displayed on the chart.*
2.	Add or remove types of objects displayed by checking or unchecking the boxes in front of their name. You can first take a default display by clicking **Base**, **Standard** or **Full**.
3.	If desired, you can save the current setting by clicking **Save As…** . When you save a filter, it is added to the custom ones, in the **Chart Objects** menu.
4.	Click **OK** to save this filter.
5.	End of procedure.

IF YOU SAVE A FILTER WITH A NAME THAT HAS ALREADY BEEN ASSIGNED TO ANOTHER FILTER, THE NEW FILTER WILL REPLACE THE FORMER ONE. YOU CANNOT ASSIGN BASE, STANDARD AND COMPLET TO CUSTOM FILTERS.

To select a custom display:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Display** menu, select **Charts** then point to **Chart Display**. Under the separator that follows the three default level displayed, there is the list of the other filters you have created.
2.	Click the desired filter. When you select a filter, a check mark is displayed in front of it.
3.	End of procedure.

V.2.12.3 The Presentation Library

Gecdis uses official S52 presentation to draw ENC charts. Used presentation library is replaceable, but this feature is only intended to be used by qualified service personal and type approval authorities.

As a user you can get with the used presentation by browsing IHO ECDIS Chart 1, which is included into Gecdis. Note that it behaves as any ENC chart and it follows your selections.

The presentation library is the list of symbols defined in the ECDIS standard that is considered as the reference for symbols. It contains 12 screens, which are shown in the appendix C of this manual.

To open the presentation library: in the **Display** menu, select **Charts,** point to **Chart Information** and then **Chart Legend (Chart 1)…**. After a few seconds a new program is launched.

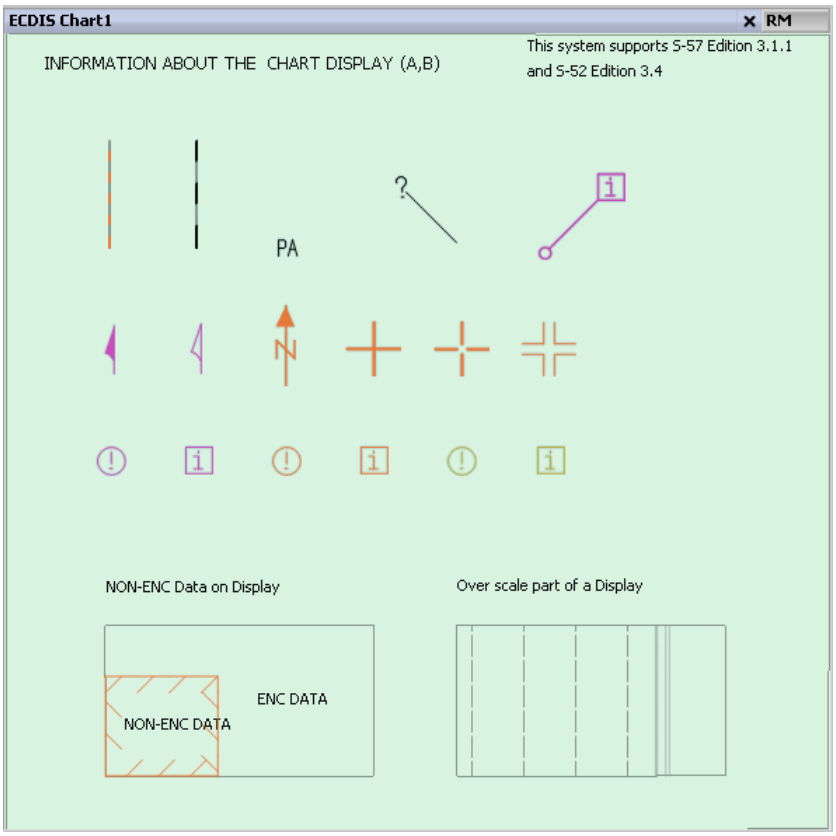


Figure 119 - The Presentation Library

To skip to the next page, click with the left button of your mouse. After the last page, you return to the first one. To scroll the pages in reverse order, right click.

To display the meaning of a symbol, place the mouse on the symbol:

Figure 120 - Tooltip information in Chart 1

V.2.12.4 Security Options

Security is an option allowing you to define different key depth levels.

There are four different depth levels: **shallow contour**, **safety contour**, **safety depth** and **deep contour**. These levels constitute four out of the six editable fields of the *Safety Options* dialog box (see Figure 121). The other fields, **safety height**, represents the secured height of the ship (e.g. if it gets under a bridge) and **Safe chart scale** represents the minimum chart scale to have a safe navigation. They aim at defining alarms to inform the mariner.

Furthermore there are two different modes:

- A bicoloured mode or **Safe mode** – representation of the bathymetry with 2 colors:
  - **White** (maritime zones above 0).
  - **Blue** (zones between 0 and safety contour). In that mode, the following values are equal: shallow contour = safety contour = deep contour.

- A four-colour mode or **Unsafe mode** – representation of the bathymetry with 4 colors:
  - **White** (the maritime zones above 0.foreshore).
  - **Medium blue** (the zone between 0 and shallow contour).
  - **Light blue** (the zone between shallow contour and safety contour).
  - **Pale blue** (the zone between safety contour and deep contour).

Safety contour: Contour above which the ship cannot navigate safely. This value is fixed by the navigator according to the characteristics of the ship. The line appears in black and its width is superior to the other ones. If the value the navigator has entered does not correspond to any available contour, the safety contour will be the first deeper contour. The value depends on the ship's features. On the other hand, the display of the line depends on the available safety contours.

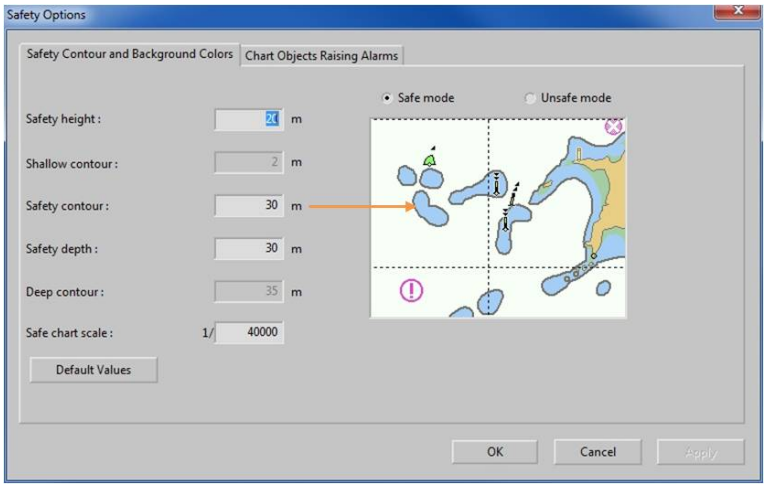


Figure 121 - Safety contour

Safety Depth: All depths strictly superior to the value of this field are displayed in grey. The depths that are inferior or equal to the value are displayed in black.

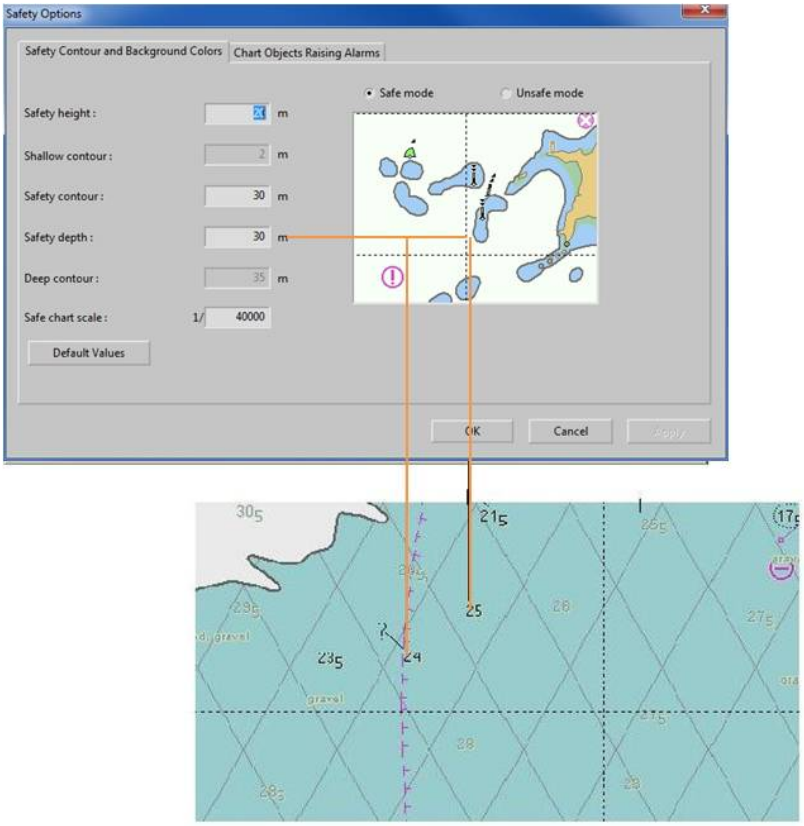


Figure 122- Safety depth

Shallow Contour: Represents the shallow waters value in medium blue.

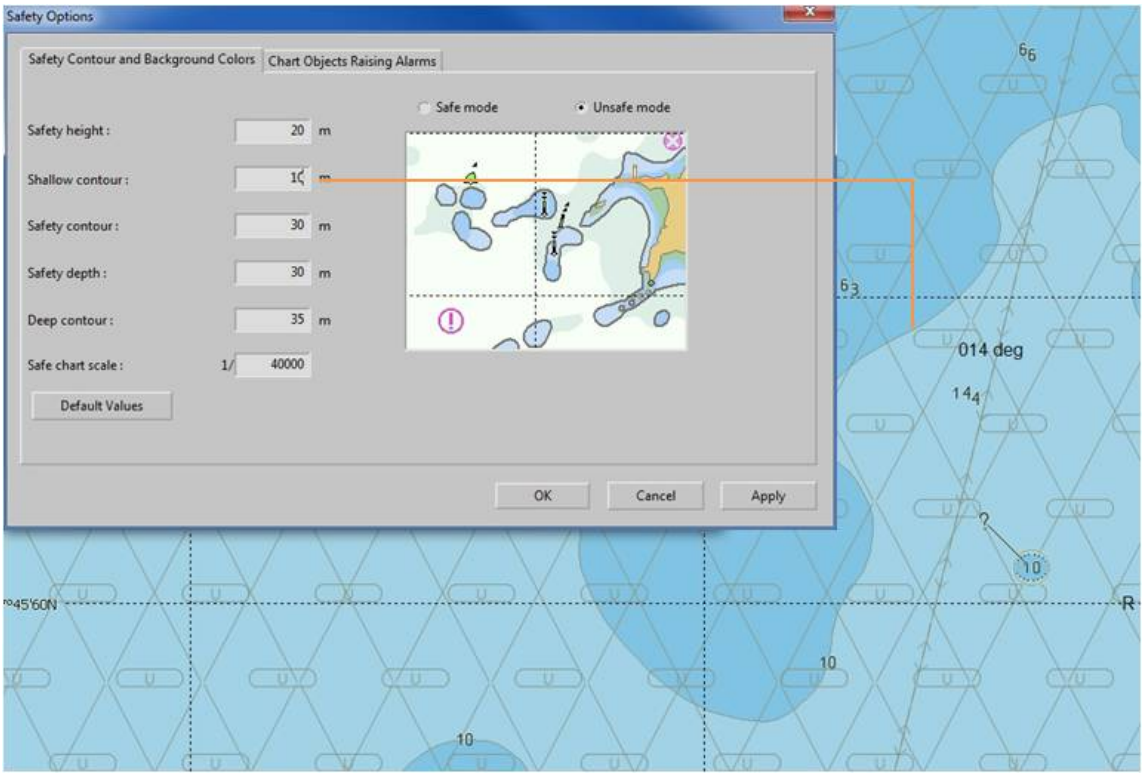


Figure 123- Shallow contour

Deep Contour: Represents the deep waters value in white and pale blue.

THE DEEP CONTOUR IS ALWAYS SUPERIOR TO SAFETY CONTOUR AND SAFETY DEPTH.

Safe chart scale: it represents the minimum chart scale to have a safe navigation. When a route is created or modified and if that route passes through a chart, the scale of it being inferior to the safe chart scale, this danger is listed in the associated danger list of the route.

To define the security contours:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **Charts** and then **Objects Detection…**
2.	Click the **Safe mode** or **Unsafe mode** radio button depending on your desired mode.
3.	Enter the different values in the fields, depending on your needs.
4.	Click **OK**. You can go back to the default values clicking **Default Values**.
5.	End of procedure.

V.2.13 DANGER DETECTION OR ANTI-GROUNDING

The danger detection option, also called anti-grounding, is used to detect dangers the ship may cross because they are located on its way. This option is only available with the ENC chart module.

When a danger is detected on ship's run, an alarm is generated. This alarm is reproduced each time the danger is present in the anti-grounding perimeter.

You can set anti-grounding selecting a limit range or period of time:

- If you select a range, danger detection is made in front of the ship according to the range.
- If you select a period, the system computes how far from the Own Ship to detect dangers. The maximum detection distance is 12 nautical miles and the maximum detection time is 30 minutes.

And define a perimeter starting from the ship and defined by its angular width value.

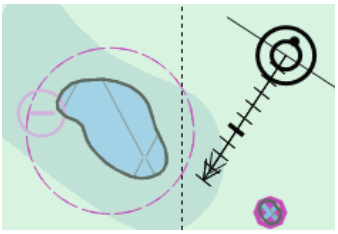


Figure 124 - No danger detected

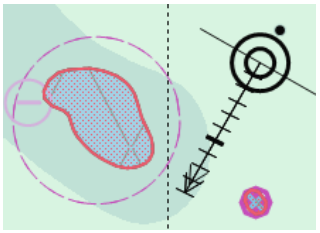
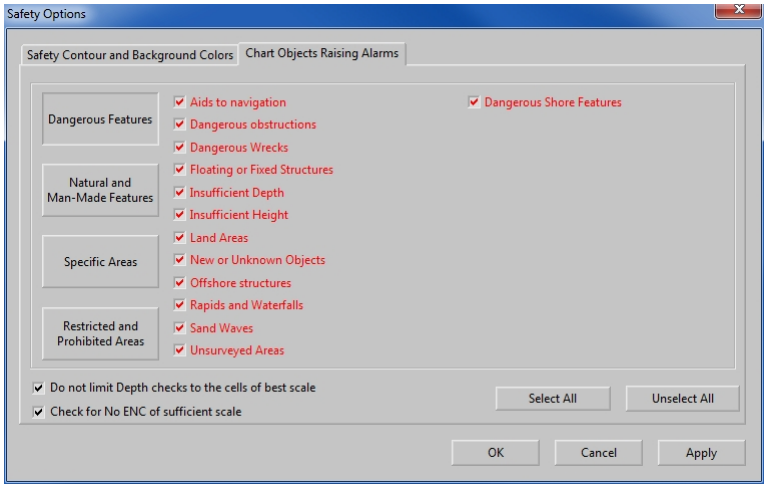


Figure 125 - Dangers detected (Depth areas)

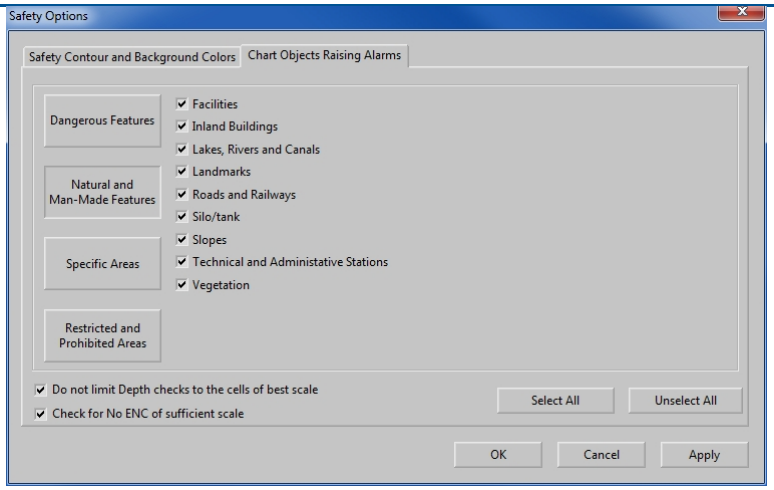
3 actions are required before using this option:

Step	Action
1.	Selecting the objects setting off alarms.
2.	Configuring the danger detection parameters.
3.	Activating the option.
4.	End of procedure.

To select the objects setting off an alarm:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **Charts** menu, and then **Objects Detection**…
2.	In the *Safety Options* dialogue box, select the **Chart Objects Raising Alarms** tab. • Select the type of the objects to detect (**Natural and Man-Made Features**, **Specific Areas**, **Restricted and Prohibited Areas**) in order to have access to the detailed list of the objects. The type **Dangerous Features** lists all objects that are necessarily detected, they are all default selected but you can unselect some or all (by clicking on **Unselect All** button).  • In the list displayed on the right, check the object(s) to which an alarm is assigned:

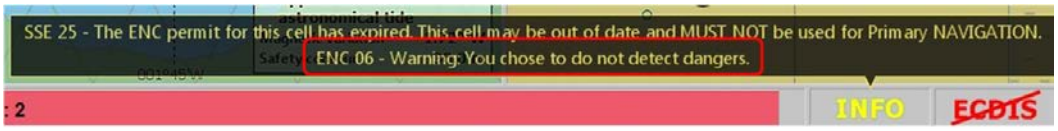
Step	Action



If one check box is unchecked, the following text is displayed in the bottom right corner of the chart view when clicking on the Information chart area:

ENC 05 – Warning: you choose to not detect all dangers

In case of the danger detection option is not selected (see section II.8), the following text is displayed in the bottom right corner of the chart view when clicking on the Information chart area:

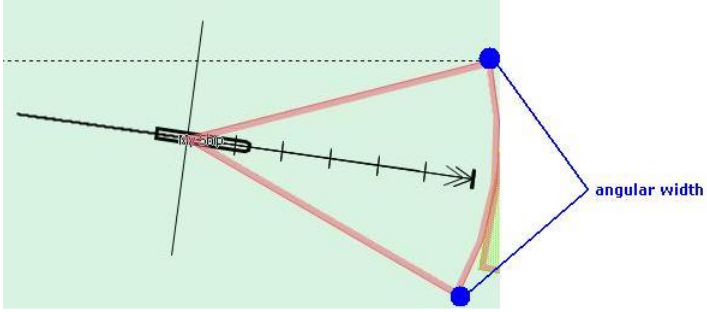

SSE 25 - The ENC permit for this cell has expired. This cell may be out of date and MUST NOT be used for Primary NAVIGATION.
ENC 06 - Warning: You chose to do not detect dangers.
INFO
ECDIS

3. For both last types,
   - If you do not select **Do not limit Depth Checks to the cell of best scale** option, the check will occur only in the cells with the best scale otherwise, if you select this option, the check will occurs in all cells whatever their scales are.
   - Select **Check for No ENC of sufficient scale** option if you want to be informed when the selected ENC scale is not precise enough with respect to the safe chart scale (see section V.2.12.4, page 149).

End of procedure.

To configure the danger detection option:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **System** menu, **Settings** and then select **General Configuration**…
2.	In the **Configuration** dialog box, select the **Security** tab.
3.	Do one of the following: • To set a distance limit, click the **Maximum distance to danger (nm)**, and then

Step	Action
	select a value • To set a time limit, click the **Maximum time to danger (minutes)**, and then select a value • To define a perimeter around the ship, enter a value for the **Angular width of sector to watch**. 
4.	Click **OK**.
5.	End of procedure.

See section II.8 page 41 for more information.

To activate the danger detection option:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Navigation** menu, and check **Danger detection** item.
2.	Select again **Danger Detection** to deactivate the option.
3.	End of procedure.

V.2.14 CONSULTING INFORMATION ON AN OBJECT

There are two types of ENC-related objects:

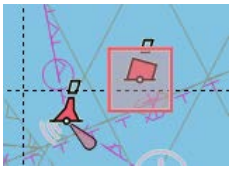
- **Updated objects**, which are objects created by the mariner and included on a ENC cell as an update, and
- **Chart objects** which are objects already included in the ENC cell.

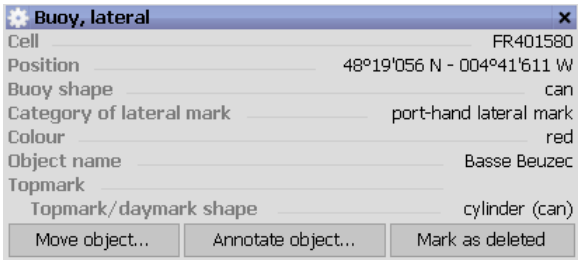
Clicking these two types of objects, you can display their associated information.

When you select an objet, the scrolling list of the *Object information* window allows to display all punctual objects that are located near the location where you have clicked. If no point object is located at this location, the list shows all lines in this area. If no line is located near this position, the list shows all the areas near the position. This allows to limit the number of objects in the list. So if you wish to consult a line or a depth area, click in the chart in a location that is at least 1 cm far from any point object (buoy, wreck, etc).

To display information on an object:

Step	Action
1.	Select the object (in Centre mode, **[Ctrl]** key + clicking the object).
2.	Information about this object is displayed on the right of the screen in the *Object Information* window. You can consult the other objects in the main view in the scrolling list of the *Object Information* window.
3.	End of procedure.





V.2.14.1 Consulting Information on a Cell

To display information on a cell:

Step	Action
1.	Select an object of the cell.
2.	In the *Object Information* window, click on the area corresponding to the cell.
3.	End of procedure.

Producer	Name of the hydrographic organism that provided the cell. If the first two letters of the cell's name does not correspond to any of the identified organisms, the window displays the following comment: Non official data.
Edition	The number of publication and update of the cell.
Issue Date	The date of publication.
Update application Date	
Usage	Usage of the cell (Overview, General, Coastal, Approach, Harbour or Berthing).
Compilation Scale	This is the default scale of ENC charts. Data is compiled with this scale. The compilation scale is different from the scale that is only relative to the display. So the value of the field does not change, whereas the value of the **Scale** field may change if you zoom in or out on the chart.
Vertical Datum	Chart datum level to which elevations and heights are referenced.
Sounding Datum	An arbitrary reference plan to which heights of tide and depths are referenced.

V.2.15 UNIVERSAL POLAR STEREOGRAPHIC PROJECTION

Optionally, universal polar stereographic projection can be used with ENC charts.

The Universal Polar Stereographic (UPS) projection is a conformal azimuthal projection, similar in both the northern and southern polar regions. The UPS coordinates system uses a metric-based cartesian grid laid out on a conformally projected surface.

- In the Northern polar region, the UPS projection is not enabled if the latitude is below 84°N.
- In the southern polar region, the UPS projection is not enabled if the latitude is below 80°S.

Labeling conventions

The coordinates are expressed in meters and are preceded by a letter idenfying the zone (see Figure 126):

- **Y** (West zone) and **Z** (East zone) at the North pole
- **A** (West zone) and **B** (East zone) at the South pole

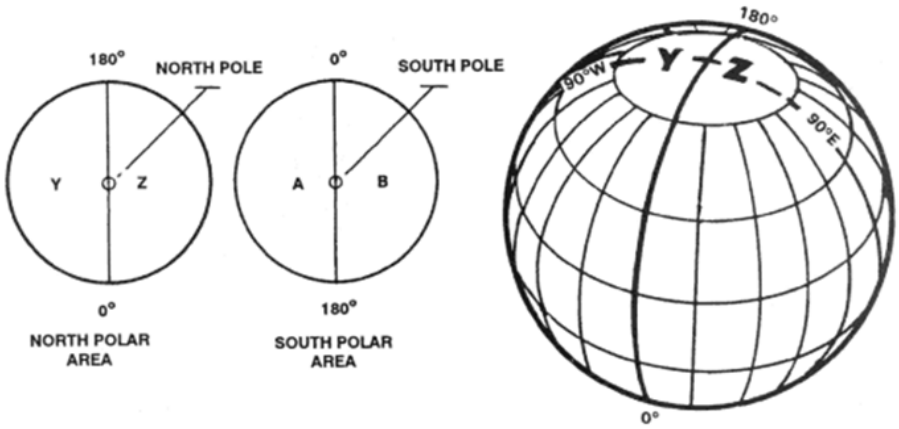


Figure 126 – UPS coordinate systems

The origin of the UPS coordinate system is the pole (north or south), where X=2 000 000 m and Y=2 000 000 m.

The X-axis lies along the meridians 90°E and 90°W.

The Y-axis lies along the meridians 0° and 180°.

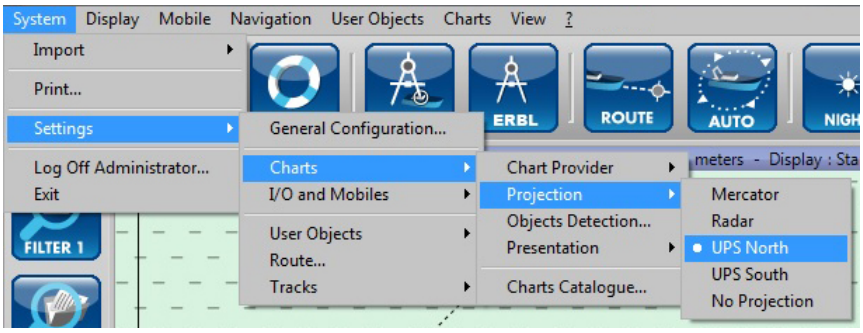
UPS conversion examples

- N85°00'00.0", W45°0'0.0" = Y 1 607 232 mE, 1 607 232 mN
- S85°00'00.0", E45°0'0.0" = B 2 392 767 mE, 2 392 767 mN

This projection is not available if **ECDIS** mode is selected.

To activate the UPS projection: In **System** menu, select **Settings, Charts, Projection** then

- For a navigation at the North Pole, select **UPS North.**
- For a navigation at the South Pole, select **UPS South**.



When **UPS North** or **UPS South** is selected, the following items are visible on the chart (see Figure 127 and Figure 128):

- UPS grids with a spacing of 500,000 meters
- Latitude circles at 88°, 84° for the North
- Latitude circles at 88°, 84° et 80° for the South
- Longitude lines at 0°, 45°W, 90°W, 135°W, 180°, 135°E, 90°E, 45°E

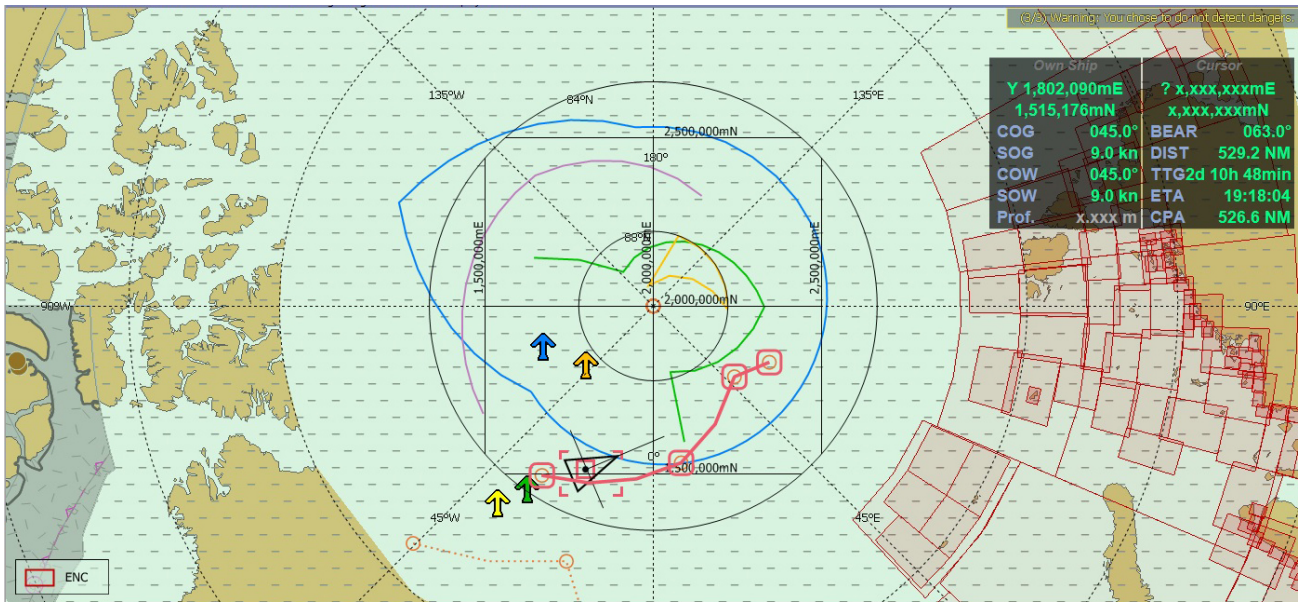


Figure 127 – Example at the North pole

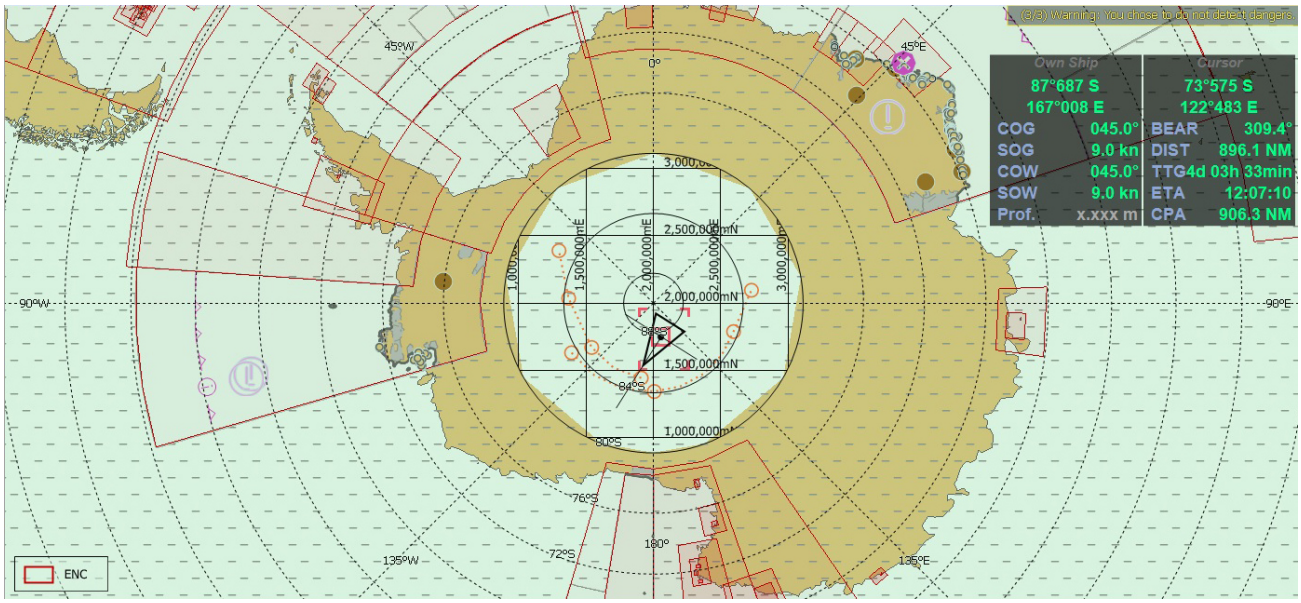
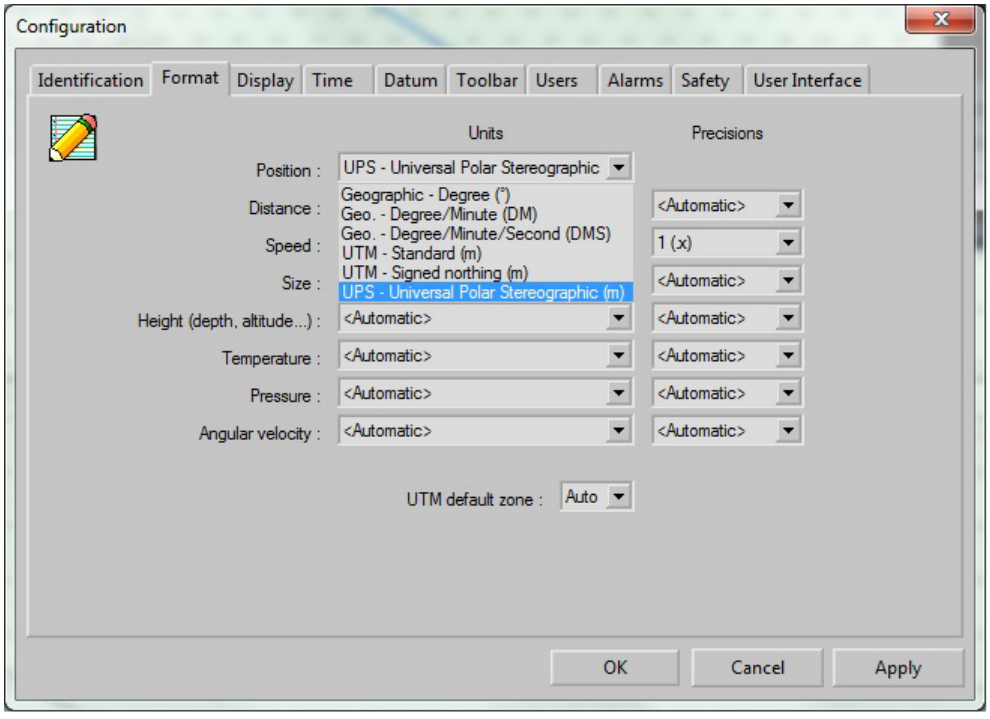


Figure 128 – Example at the South pole

To choose the UPS coordinates as working coodinates:

The mobile positions in the list of mobiles, for the routes, etc…will be expressed in UPS coordinates.

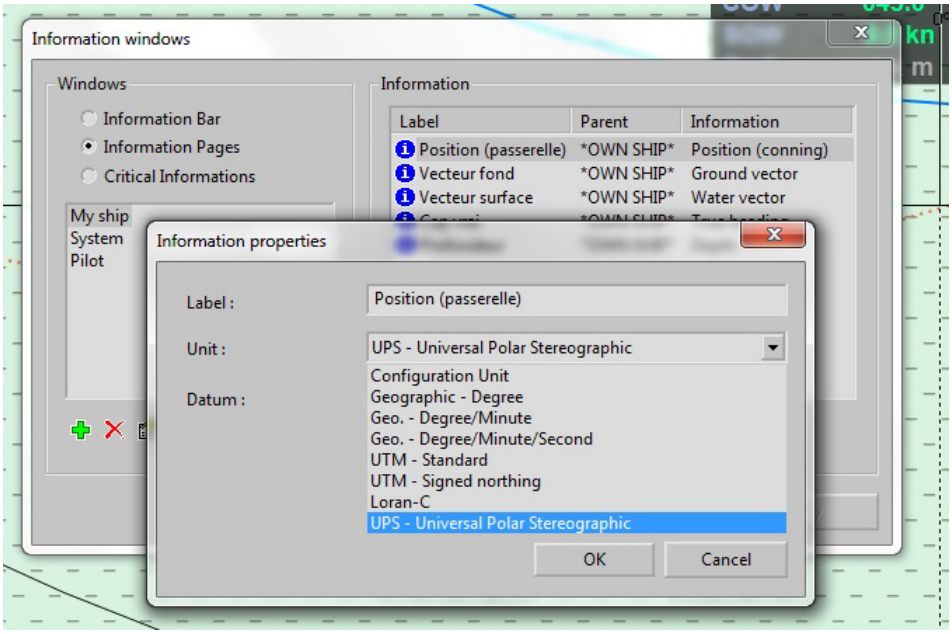
Step	Action
1.	In **System** menu, select **Settings** then **General configuration…**. *The* Configuration *dialog box displays.*
2.	Click on **Format** tab, then in the **Position** drop-down list select **UPS – Universal Polar Stereographic (m)**:

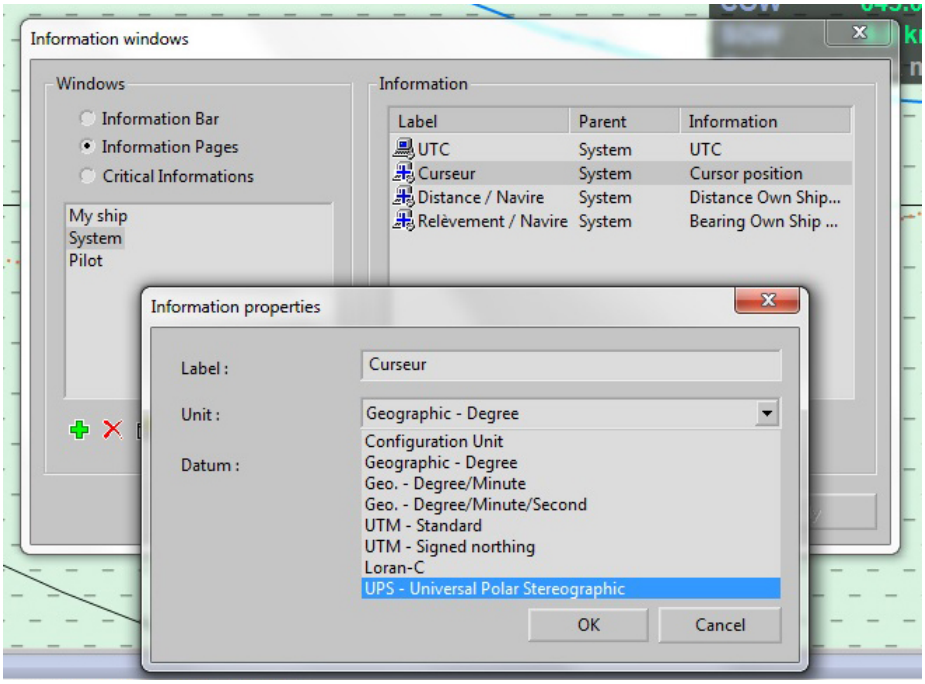
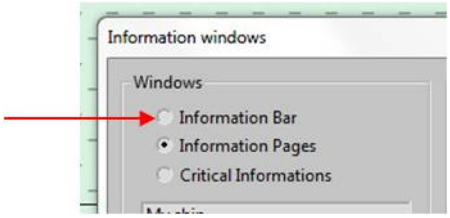


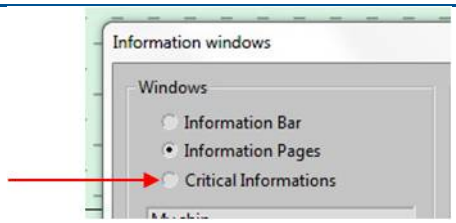
Step	Action
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

To choose the UPS coordinates as display coordinates for the Own Ship and the cursor:

- In the information pages
- In the information bar
- In the critical information window

Step	Action
1.	In the *Information pages*, right click then select **Customize…** option in the contextual menu. *The* Information windows *dialog box opens.*
2.	To display the UPS coordinate as display coordinates for the own ship: In the **Windows** area of the *Information windows* dialog box, select the name of the Own Ship (i.e., **My ship** in the example hereafter) and in the **Information** area, choose **Position** field. Then click on button. *The* Information properties *dialog box opens.*
3.	Choose **UPS - Universal Polar Stereographic** for the **Unit** field then click **OK.**  *The Own Ship coordinates in the* Information window *will now be expressed in UPS coordinates.*
4.	To display the UPS coordinate as display coordinates for the cursor: In the **Windows**

Step	Action
	area of the *Information windows* dialog box, select **System** and in the **Information** area, select **Curseur.** Then click on button. The *Information properties* dialog box opens.
5.	Choose **UPS - Universal Polar Stereographic** for the **Unit** field then click **OK.**  *The Cursor coordinates in the* Information pages *will now be expressed in UPS coordinates.*
6.	For displaying UPS coordinates for the Own Ship and the cursor, in *the information bar:* perform the same steps 2 to 5 but firstly by selecting **Information Bar** in the **Windows** area of the *Information windows* dialog box. 
7.	For displaying UPS coordinates for the Own Ship and the cursor, in the *Critical information:* perform the same 2 to 5 steps but firstly by selecting **Critical Information** in the **Windows** area of the *Information windows* dialog box.

Step	Action
	
8.	Click **OK** in the *Information windows* dialog box.
9.	End of procedure.

V.3 ARCS Charts

V.3.1 ARCS Overview

V.3.1.1 Introduction

ARCS (Admiralty Raster Chart Service) charts have been developed by the UKHO (United Kingdom Hydrographic Office) to provide digitized nautical charts with notice to mariners' updates.

iXBlue offers the ARCS Navigator licence type.

Two kinds of CD-ROMs allow you to manage ARCS charts:

- Chart CD-ROM. There are 11 CD-ROMs that gather the whole world charts. Over 2800 charts provide coverage of the world's commercial shipping routes, main ports and harbors at a wide range of scales
- An update CD-ROM that contains all updates managed by the UKHO. These updates are cumulative, i.e. every week, a new CD-ROM is produced, with new updates from the past week. At regular intervals, the chart CD-ROMs are brought up to date with updates, resulting in a new edition.

ARCS Navigator is fully compatible with a wide range of Electronic Chart Systems (ECS) and Electronic Chart Display & Information Systems (ECDIS).

V.3.1.2 Registering ARCS Charts

When buying Gecdis with ARCS option, iXBlue sends you a user permit, made up of 16 alphanumerical character, and a PIN code, made up of 4 numbers. To annually subscribe to ARCS charts, you must tell your vendor which charts you want to order, and give him your user permit. Then you will receive two files. The first one gives information about the user and the second one deals with the charts that have been licensed to the user. Those files will allow you to register your licenses. Note that you will also receive the chart CD-ROMs.

To register ARCS licenses:

Step	Action
1.	Send your ARCS vendor your user permit and the charts you wish to order.
2.	Your vendor will send you two files allowing you to install permits. Now you can launch the ARCS module (see section V.3.1.3 page 163).
3.	If you buy other ARCS chart permits, you will have to repeat the step 1.
4.	End of procedure.

For any further details on your ARCS vendor, please contact iXBlue's sales department.

V.3.1.3 Launching ARCS Module

Before launching the ARCS module for the first time, check that you have the ARCS licences and ARCS chart CD-ROMs.

The first launching of the ARCS module allows you to indicate the location in the hard drive in which charts must be loaded, and to install ARCS permits. This will be made either when launching Gecdis, if the ARCS module is configured as the default chart module, or when launching the ARCS module in the software.

Later, you will have to enter your PIN code when launching once again the ARCS module.

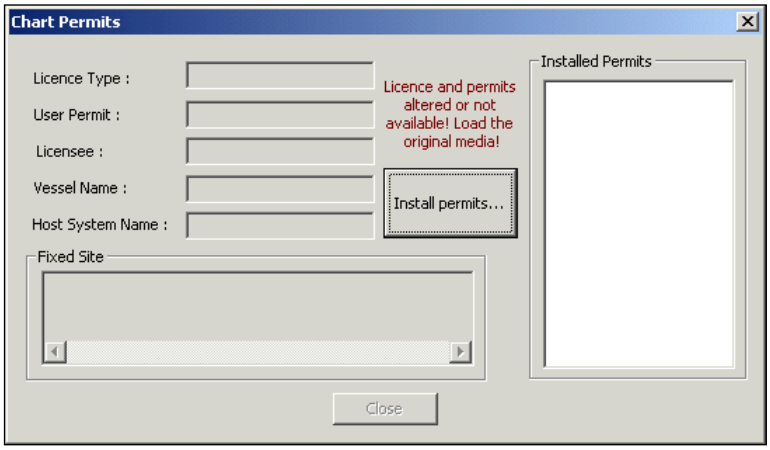
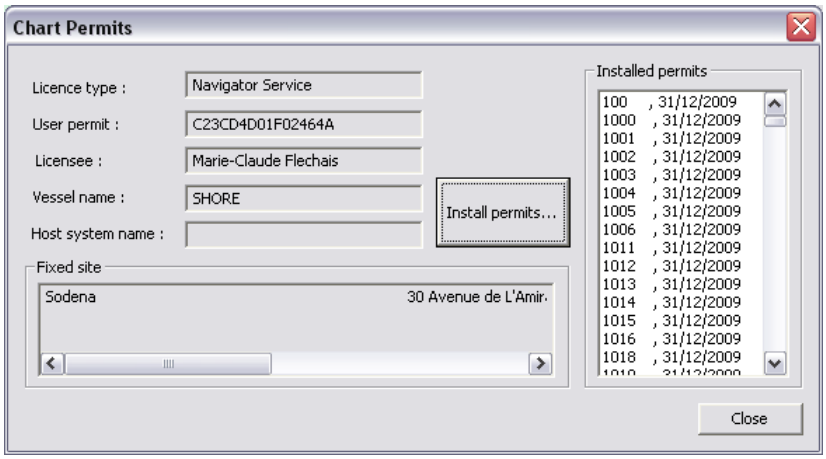


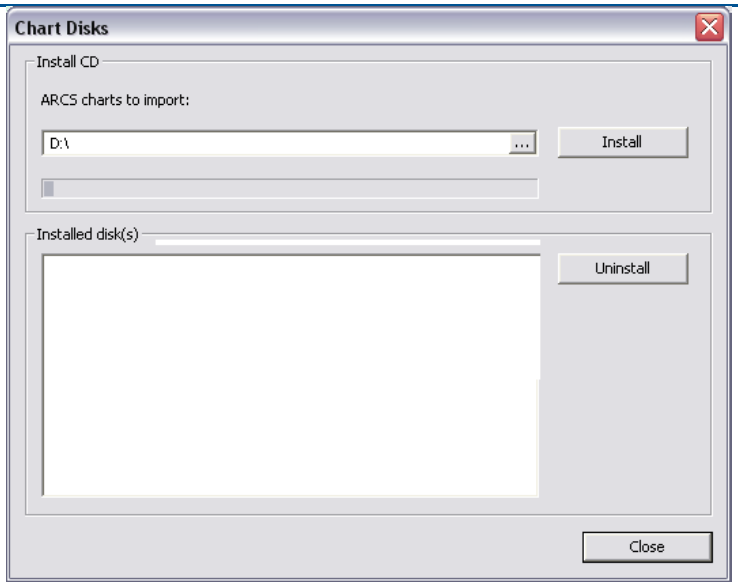
Figure 129 - Chart Permit Installation Dialog Box (Before Being Installed)

To launch the ARCS module for the first time:

Step	Action
1.	Launch Gecdis, and do one of the following: • If SoArcs is the default chart module, skip to the following step. • If SoArcs is not the default chart module, once you have launched Gecdis, click the **System** menu, point to **Settings, Charts, Chart Provider**, and click **ARCS Charts**.

Step	Action
2.	An explorer window is displayed. This explorer asks you where you want to load ARCS charts. Give a location in the tree (e.g. Gecdis root folder). Once selected the location, an ARCS folder is created to gather all your data. **Important** **If you wish to connect to an existing database through a network, please check that the shared folder is an ARCS's 'upper-level' folder. For example, if ARCS folder is a Gecdis subfolder, you will have to share Gecdis folder and select ARCS. A warning message will tell you whether the folder is correct or not.**
3.	Click **OK**. *The* Chart Permits *dialog box is displayed. The fields of this dialog box are empty and a message that tells you the permits need to be installed is blinking.*
4.	Click the **Install permits…** button.
5.	Select the location of the hard drive into which you have copied the permits, and then click **OK**. *The fields in the* Chart Permits *dialog box are not empty anymore. On the right, the licensed charts are listed. Now you can click the* ***Close*** *button.* 
6.	If you have not already installed any chart CD-ROM on your hard drive, the Chart Disks dialog box is displayed. To install a CD, click ..., and then, in the new window, select the folder in which there are the charts you want to install. Click **Install CD**.

Step	Action



7. When launching the ARCS module, the Pin entry dialog box is displayed. Enter your PIN number in the the blank field and then click **OK.**

8. End of procedure.

To launch the ARCS module for the second time: When launching the ARCS module, either when launching Gecdis, or from the **System** menu, the PIN entry dialog box is displayed. Enter your PIN number in the blank field, and then click **OK**.

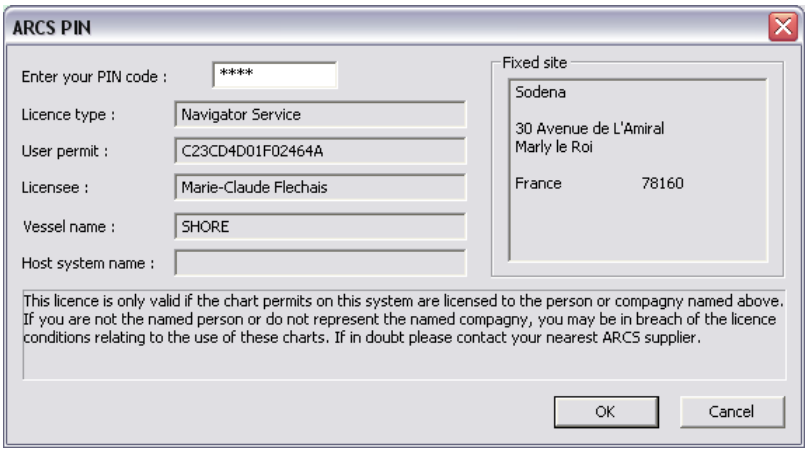

ARCS PIN
Enter your PIN code :
****
Licence type :
Navigator Service
User permit :
C23CD4D01F02464A
Licensee :
Marie-Claude Flechais
Vessel name :
SHORE
Host system name :
Fixed site
Sodena
30 Avenue de L'Amiral
Marly le Roi
France
78160
This licence is only valid if the chart permits on this system are licensed to the person or compagny named above. If you are not the named person or do not represent the named compagny, you may be in breach of the licence conditions relating to the use of these charts. If in doubt please contact your nearest ARCS supplier.
OK
Cancel

Figure 130 - Managing the PIN Code

IF YOU DELETE OR MOVE THE ARCS FOLDER WHEN GECDIS IS CLOSED, YOU WILL HAVE TO REPEAT THE FIRST LAUNCHING PROCEDURE OF THE ARCS MODULE.

V.3.2 CHARTS

V.3.2.1 The Chart Database

All licensed charts are gathered within a chart database. Information about those charts can be checked in the *Chart Database* dialog box. Each chart of the database is associated with four pieces of information, in four columns that it is possible to sort:

- The chart number
- The name of the chart
- The chart CD-ROM from which the chart has been loaded
- The edition date

Each chart contains one or more panel(s). A panel is a chart or a chart part. So when you select a chart, on the left of the dialog box, its associated panels are displayed on the upper right part. If you select one of the panels, associated information about this panel are displayed in the lower right part. Information depends on the selected panel.

There might be two alternatives:

- If the panel represents a whole chart, the value of the Panel Number field is 0.
- If the panel represents a part or an element of a chart, the value of the Panel Number field is any number except 0. In that case, several panels might be listed, ranging from 1 to the number of parts of the chart (e.g.: 3 if the chart is divided into three parts).

Sometimes, a chart might not have a panel whose Panel Number is 0. In such cases, the chart gathers independent charts. So, there is no main panel.

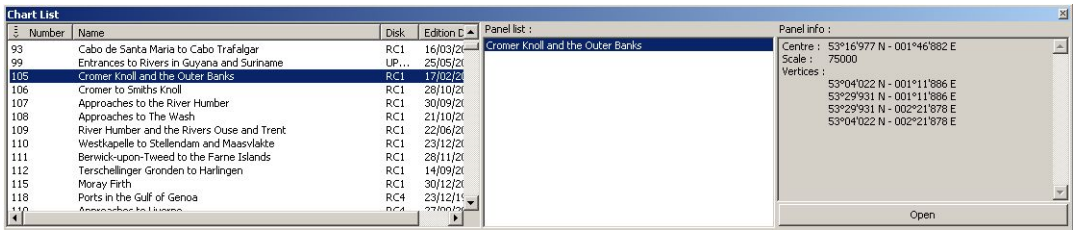


Chart List
Number
Name
Disk
Edition D
93 Cabo de Santa Maria to Cabo Trafalgar RC1 16/03/2
99 Entrances to Rivers in Guyana and Suriname UP... 25/05/2
105 Cromer Knoll and the Outer Banks RC1 17/02/2
106 Cromer to Smiths Knoll RC1 28/10/2
107 Approaches to the River Humber RC1 30/09/2
108 Approaches to The Wash RC1 21/10/2
109 River Humber and the Rivers Ouse and Trent RC1 22/06/2
110 Westkapelle to Stellendam and Maasvlakte RC1 23/12/2
111 Berwick-upon-Tweed to the Farne Islands RC1 28/11/2
112 Terschellinger Gronden to Harlingen RC1 14/09/2
115 Moray Firth RC1 30/12/2
118 Ports in the Gulf of Genoa RC4 23/12/1
Panel list :
Cromer Knoll and the Outer Banks
Panel info :
Centre : 53°16'977 N - 001°46'882 E
Scale : 75000
Vertices :
53°04'022 N - 001°11'886 E
53°29'931 N - 001°11'886 E
53°29'931 N - 002°21'878 E
53°04'022 N - 002°21'878 E
Open

Figure 131 - Charts and Chart Panels

To open the *Chart List* dialog box: Click the **System** menu, select **Settings**, **Charts** and then **Chart Catalogue…**

To sort a column in the list of charts: Click the name of the column you want to sort. In the column you have just sorted, an up arrow is displayed in case of an ascending sort, and a down arrow is displayed in case of a descending sort.

To centre the main view on a panel:

Step	Action
1.	In the *Chart List* dialog box, select one of the charts of the Chart List pane. The first panel of the chart is selected by default. In the Panel List pane, select the panel you wish to display.
2.	Click **OK**.
3.	End of procedure.

V.3.2.2 Installing/Uninstalling Charts

Charts are gathered into 11 CD-ROMs. After installing permits, you will have to install your desired chart CDs on your hard drive, in the same location as configured when launching the ARCS module for the first time.When you install a new edition of a CD that you have already copied, you do not need uninstall it before installing the new edition. The folder of the old version is kept during the whole importation process. If importation is correct, the previous edition is deleted and replaced by the new one. Otherwise, it is unchanged. So you will never lose data.

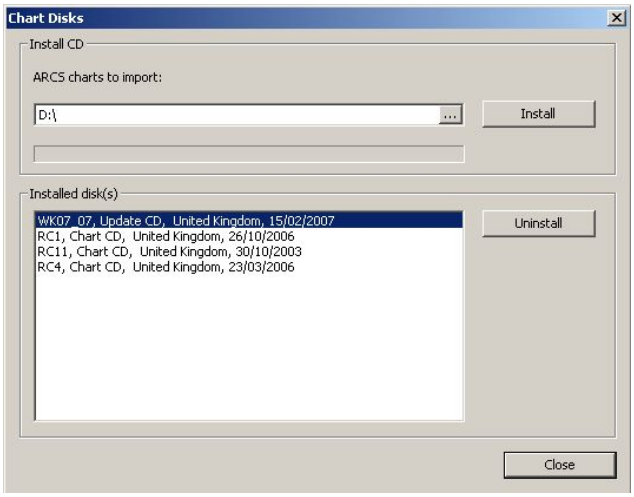


Figure 132 - Importing a Chart Disk

To install a CD:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **System** menu, select **Import**, **Charts** and then **Chart Disks…**. Click the browse button (...), and then select the folder into which you can find the charts you want to install. If you want to install a CD, insert it in the CD-ROM drive, and then select the unit that represents the CD-ROM drive (D in the above example). Click **OK**.
2.	Click **Install CD**. Validate the message that warns you the install process will take several minutes. *The CD is installed in the Data folder from which you have chosen to load ARCS charts.*

Step	Action
3.	Once installed, a message tells you the import process is over. Click **OK**, and then **Close** in the *chart installation* dialog box.
4.	End of procedure.

To uninstall a CD:

Step	Action
1.	In the Installed Disk(s) pane of the *Chart Disks* dialog box, select a CD. **It is impossible to delete a CD whose charts have been loaded.**
2.	Click **Uninstall CD**. The charts of the uninstalled CD are then removed from the ARCS folder, in your hard drive. **ARCS module cannot work without any chart. That's why it is not possible to delete a CD if there is only one CD in the chart database.**
3.	End of procedure.

V.3.2.3 Updating Charts

ARCS charts follow updating of notices to mariners. Each week, a new CD is produced, with all new updates made on the charts since ARCS chart CDs have been edited for the last time. The updates are cumulative, i.e. the updates made by ARCS the last week are added, in the same CD, to the updates that have already been added the weeks before. Installing an update CD is the same deal as installing a chart CD. The update CD code is WK.

When you install a new edition of an update CD that you have already copied, you do not need to uninstall it before installing the new edition. Each update CD is kept in the UPDATE folder of the ARCS structure. So if import is correct, the previous edition is deleted and replaced by the new one. Otherwise, it is unchanged. So you will never lose data.

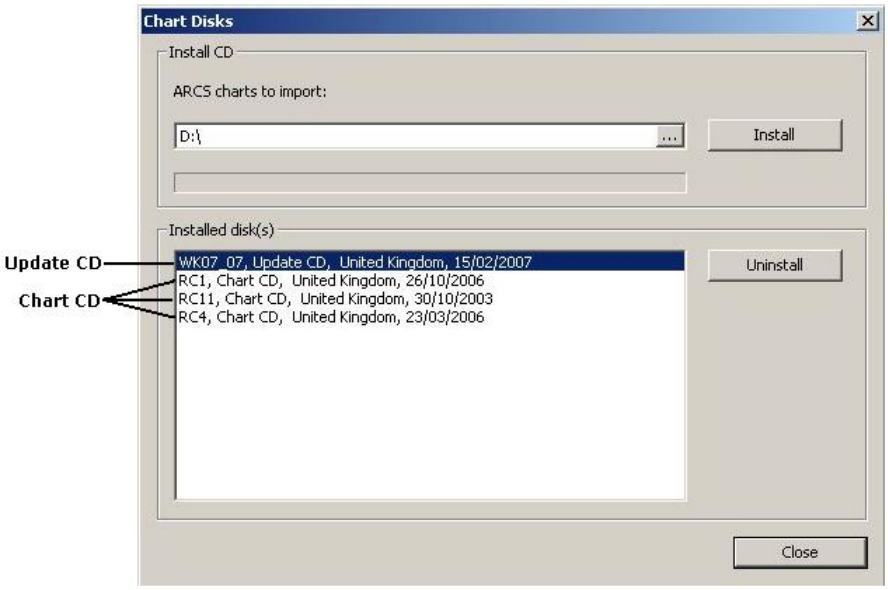


Figure 133 - Installing a Chart Disk Update

In the main view, updates are notified with an orange-hatched square, meaning that one or several update(s) have been made. You can decide whether you display updates or not. Squares will be hidden, as shown in the following comparative drawings.

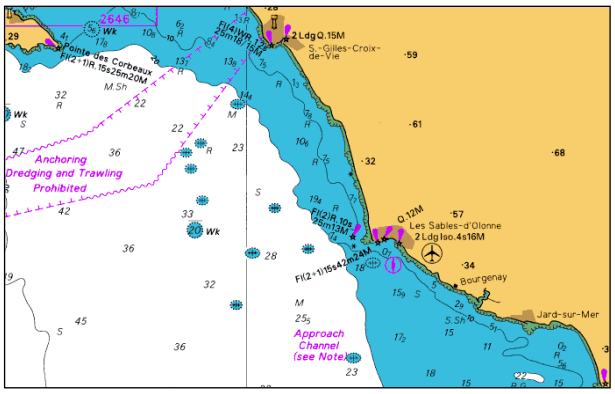


Figure 134 - Updates hidden

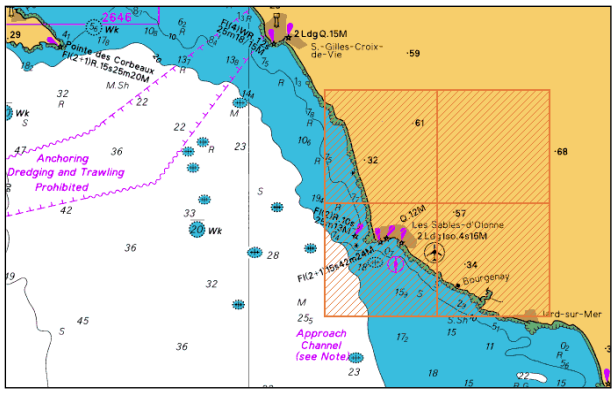


Figure 135 - Updates displayed

To display updates in the main view: Click the **Charts** menu, and then **Show Updates**. A mark is displayed in front of the submenu, showing you that the option is enabled..

To install an update CD:

Step	Action
1.	Follow the same procedure as the chart CD installation, by clicking **System** menu, selecting **Import**, **Charts** and then **Chart Disks,** clicking the browse button (...), and then selecting, in the explorer, the update CD.
2.	Click **Install CD.** *The CD is installed on your hard drive; in the DATA folder you have created to load ARCS charts. It is also added to the list of disks in the Installed Disk(s) pane.*
3.	End of procedure.

V.3.2.4 Using ARCS Charts

You can display several resolutions for the same main view. You can decide:

- To choose on your own your desired chart resolutions. The and icons of the toolbar allow you to skip between these charts.
- If the icon is enabled, you can display a chart with an even better resolution. Likewise, if is enabled, you can display a chart with an inferior resolution.
- To display automatically the chart with the best resolution. When charts with several resolutions are available for the centre of the screen, the chart with the higher resolution is automatically loaded. To select this option, click the **Display** menu, select **Charts**, **Chart Display Mode** and then click **Automatic Loading…**.

In addition, as ARCS chart are raster-typed charts, some options of the software, such as projection and scales (in the **Display** menu), are not available and then disabled.

YOU CANNOT DISPLAY SEVERAL CHARTS SIMULTANEOUSLY AND ZOOM IN OR OUT A CHART. ZOOM ALLOWS YOU TO CHANGE THE CURRENT CHART.

V.3.3 CONSULTING INFORMATION ABOUT CHARTS

V.3.3.1 Chart General Information

When consulting a chart, you can consult information about it (**Charts** menu, **Chart Informations…** option), which is split into two parts:

- General information (Chart Number, Country of Origin, Edition Date, etc.)
- Information about display (Projection, scale, Ellipsoid Name, etc.)

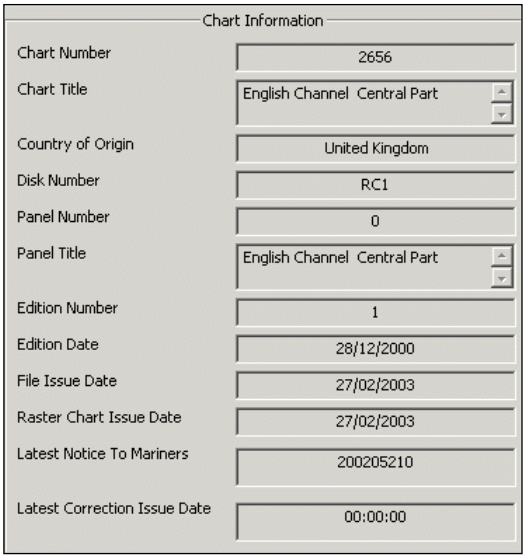


Figure 136 - General Information on ARCS Charts (1)

Chart Number The number of the chart. This piece of information is also displayed in the Chart List pane of the Chart Database dialog box.

Chart Title	The name of the chart. This piece of information is also displayed in the Chart List pane of the Chart Database dialog box.
Country of Origin	The value of this field is normally set to United Kingdom, because ARCS charts are produced by the UKHO.
Disk Number	There are eleven chart disks. This field shows to which disk the current chart belong, in the following format: RCx, where x is the number of the disk.
Panel Number	The number of the chart panel. 0 means that the panel is a whole chart. If the panel is only a part of a chart, the value is different from 0.
Panel Title	The name of the panel, which is displayed in the Panel List pane of the Chart Database dialog box.
Edition Number	The number of the edition. When the chart is edited for the first time, 1 is displayed.
Edition Date	The edition date of the panel.
File Issue Date	The date when the file has been saved.
Raster Chart Issue Date	The date when the chart has been edited. This date should correspond to the edition date of the file.
Latest Notice to Mariners	The code of the latest notice to mariners that has been inserted in the panel. If 0 is displayed in this field, this means that no notice to mariners has been found in the current panel.
Latest Correction Issue Date	The date when the latest notice to mariners has been edited. If 00:00:00 is displayed in this field, this means that the chart hasn't been updated since the last edition of the chart CDs.

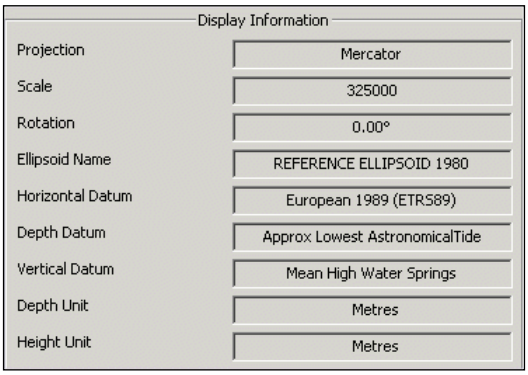


Figure 137 - General Information on ARCS Charts (2)

Projection

Any systematic arrangement of Meridians and Parallels portraying the curved surface of the sphere of spheroid upon a plane.

Each panel is assigned a projection. Projections are as follows:

- Mercator
- Polar Stereographic
- Transverse Mercator

Scale

The scale of the panel that is currently displayed on the screen. A specific scale is assigned to each panel, depending on information and details to be displayed.

Rotation	Rotation of the panel, if north in the chart is not oriented to the upper part of the screen. This value makes it possible to display the north arrow in the same direction as north in the chart.
Ellipsoid Name	Smooth mathematical representation of the geoid. Many reference ellipsoids have been developed to adequately represent the surface of the earth on different continents at different locations.
Horizontal Datum	Geodetic reference system of the panel. Each panel is assigned a system, in addition with Gecdis default geodetic system (WGS84). To make both of them correspond, you must configure Gecdis datum (see The Datum). Datum is unknown on several charts. In such cases, the following message is displayed in red, in the upper centre part of the main view: Warning! Chart has no reference. Navigate cautiously. An error message will also be displayed in the Alarms window.
Depth Datum	Arbitrary reference plane to which both heights of tides and water depths (soundings) are referenced on a chart.
Vertical Datum	Chart datum level to which elevations and heights are referenced.
Depth Unit	Some units are used depending on charts: meters, fathoms/feet, fathoms/fractions, Fathoms, Feet, no depth.
Height Unit	

V.3.3.2 Mariner's Notes

ARCS charts include many notes, that are located either landward or seaward. When they are landward, they take up more space than seaward – where you can only see their name and the (See note) mention. Each chart is assigned a list of mariner's note. So when you change the current chart, you also change the list.

Wherever you are in a chart, it is possible to consult this list. Please note that the name of the note on the chart might not be the same as the name of the note window. This window will display more generic names (Navaids, Depths, View, etc.). So the chart's dumping prohibited name will be noted as Regulations in the note window.

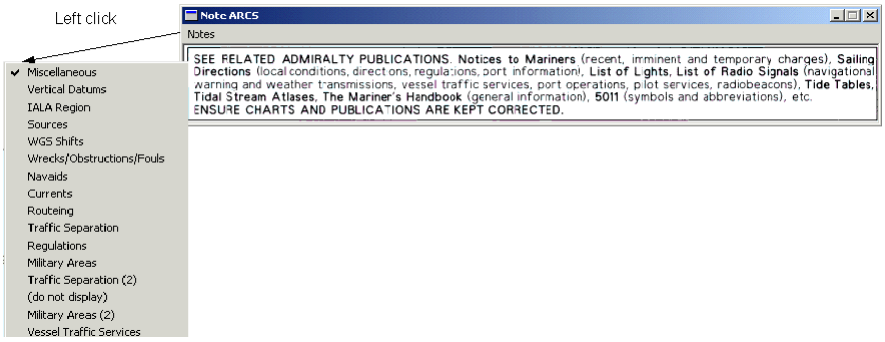
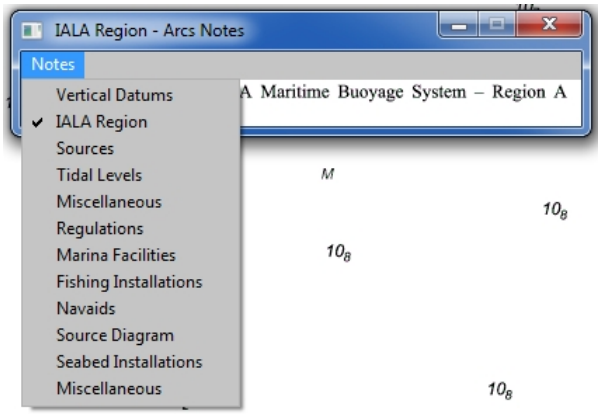

Left click
Note ARCS
Notes
SEE FELATED ADMIRALTY PUBLICATIONS. Notices to Mariners (recent, imminent and temporary charges), Sailing Directions (local conditions, directions, regulations, port information), List of Lights, List of Radio Signals (navigational warning and weather transmissions, vessel traffic services, port operations, pilot services, radiobeacons), Tide Tables, Tidal Stream Atlases, The Mariner's Handbook (general information), 5011 (symbols and abbreviations), etc.
ENSURE CHARTS AND PUBLICATIONS ARE KEPT CORRECTED.
Miscellaneous
Vertical Datums
IALA Region
Sources
WGS Shifts
Wrecks/Obstructions/Fouls
Navaids
Currents
Routeing
Traffic Separation
Regulations
Military Areas
Traffic Separation (2)
(do not display)
Military Areas (2)
Vessel Traffic Services

Figure 138 - Consulting ARCS Marnier's Notes

To consult chart mariner's notes:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Display** menu, select **Chart Informations** and then click **Mariner's Notes…**. *The* ARCS Notes *window is displayed.*
2.	If you click **Notes**, the list of mariner's notes is displayed. When you select a mariner's note, a checkmark is displayed in front of its mention. 
3.	End of procedure.

VI NAVIGATION

VI.1 Bearing Lines and Bearing Range Lines

You can make the bearing of an object, a seamark or more generally a position. That way, a rudimentary trisection can be drawn. This is the same as an EBL.

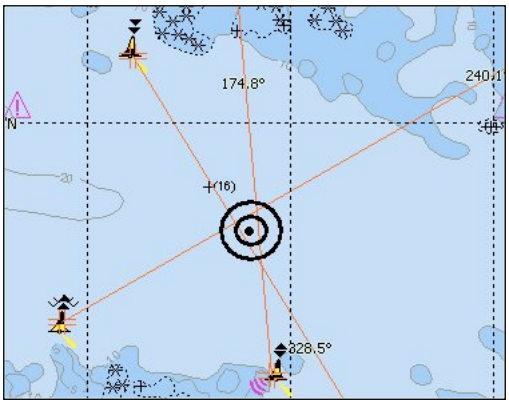


Figure 139 - Bearing Lines

To make your position with bearing lines:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Navigation** and then **Bearing Line…**
2.	Click one seamark and drag the mouse until the angle displayed corresponds to the bearing of the seamark.
3.	Follow the same steps for a minimum of two seamarks. Your position is in the point of intersection of all the bearing lines.
4.	End of procedure.

Bearing range lines allow you to display the heading and distance between two spots, seamarks or locations in the main view. In most cases, you will use them to estimate the heading and distance between your ship and a particular spot in the main view.

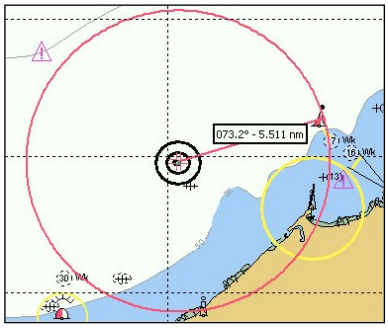


Figure 140 - VRM/EBL

To use bearing range lines:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Navigation** and then **Bearing-Range Bearing Lines**.
2.	Click the first spot of the main view of which you want to know the distance and heading (in this example, this is the Own Ship).
3.	Drag the mouse and click the second spot. A circle is shaped and the bearing and distance are specified in a yellow box.
4.	End of procedure.

To delete all bearings and EBL: Click the **Navigation** menu and then **Delete All Bearing Lines**.

You can consult the distance and bearing between the cursor and the Own Ship. To do so, click the Navigation menu and then Own Ship Bearing Range Line.

VI.2 Clearing Lines

A clearing line is a half-line, constructed from seamarks, which shall not be crossed. Clearing lines are managed by the areas module. Such as lines, they generate alarms as soon as they are crossed. But contrary to user lines, the alarm is generated only when it is crossed by the own ship.

There are two types of clearing lines:

- The NMT clearing line means that in order to clear the danger, the bearing of the mark should be "not more than" the specified value.
- The NLT clearing line means the bearing of the mark should be "not less than" the specified value.

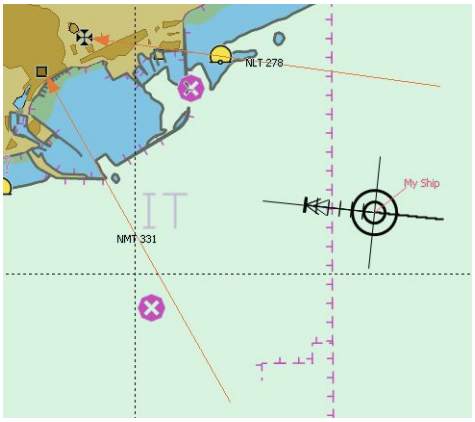
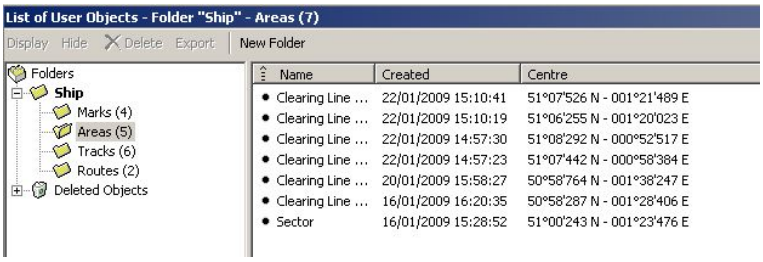
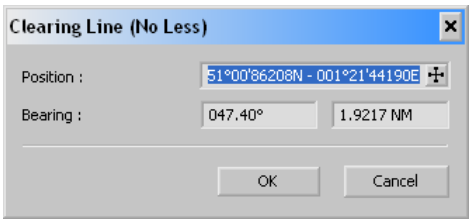


Figure 141 - No Less and No More Clearing Lines

To add a clearing line (no more / no less):

Step	Action
1.	You should locate a seamark. Click **Navigation** and then **Clearing Line (No More)…** or **Clearing Line (No Less)…**
2.	Click the seamark that can be used as a reference and drag down the mouse to draw a line far enough from the dangerous point (that is at the right of the ship). The clearing line is displayed in orange. In its middle, **NMT x** is displayed (where *NMT* means *no more* or *no less* than *x* defines the bearing to the north). *The created clearing lines are stored in the **List of User Objects** in the **Areas** folder:* 
3.	End of procedure.

To edit a clearing line:

Step	Action
1.	Do one of the following: • Select the clearing line you want to edit and click the **Properties…** context-sensitive button on the right of the screen. • Select the clearing line you want to edit, right click it and click **Properties…** in the pop-up menu.
2.	In the *Clearing Line* dialog box, enter a position in the **Position** field and enter a bearing in the **Bearing** field. 
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

To delete a clearing line: Do one of the following:

- Select the clearing line you want to delete and click the **Delete** context-sensitive button on the right of the screen.
- Select the clearing line you want to delete, right click it and click **Delete** in the pop-up menu.

To move a clearing line:

Step	Action
1.	Select the clearing line you want to move, right click it and click **Move…** in the pop-up menu.
2.	Drag the mouse, which is located in the head of the clearing line to change its position and bearing. *The **NMT (no more than)** or **NLT (no less than)** values change accordingly.*
3.	End of procedure.

To rotate a clearing line:

Step	Action
1.	Select the clearing line you want to rotate, right click it and click **Rotate…** in the pop-up menu.
2.	Drag the mouse, which is located in the end of the clearing line to change its bearing.
3.	End of procedure.

VI.3 Geographic Calculations

The **Geographic Calculations** module allows you to calculate the distance between two points.

You can get:

- The distance between two defined points: **Compute bearings and ranges** option.
- The position of a point according to the coordinates of point of origin and a parameter of distance and bearing: **Compute B** option

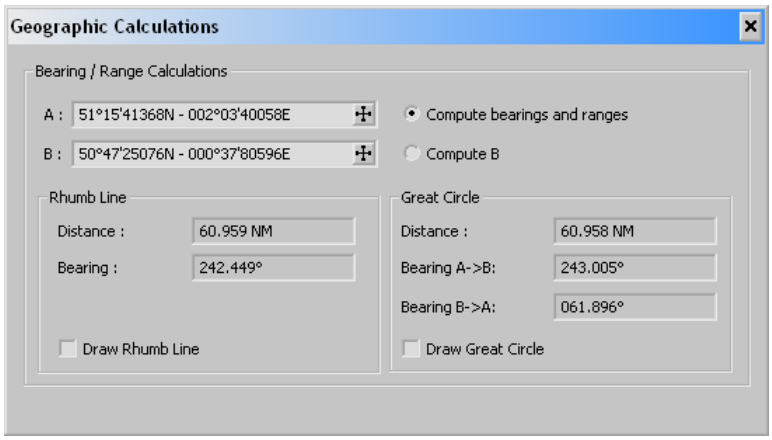
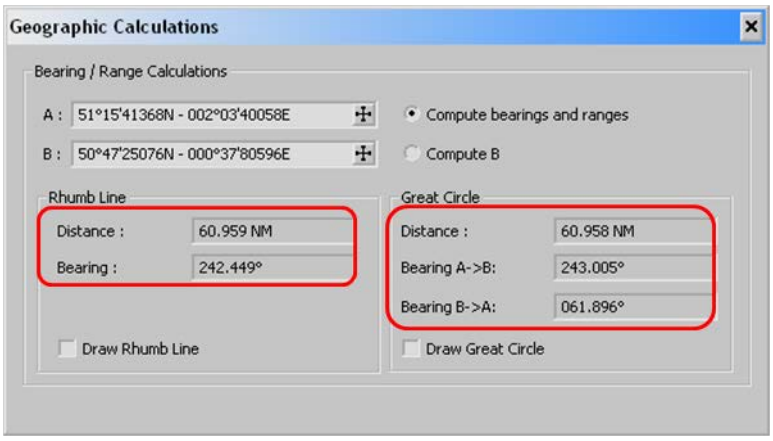


Figure 142 - Geographic calculations dialog

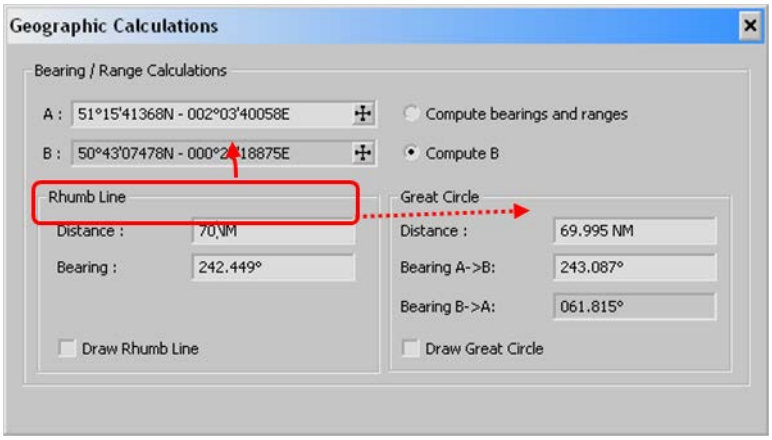
To get the distance between two points:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Navigation** and then **Geographic Calculations…**. *The* Geographic Calulations *dialog box displays.*
2.	Select the option **Compute bearings and ranges.**
3.	Enter or use the button and click the main view to define the position of A point.
4.	Proceed the same way to define the position of B point. *The calculation result, i.e. the distances and bearings between the two points, is automatically displayed in the dialog box:*
5.	End of procedure.



To get the position of a point according to an origin and value of distance and/or bearing:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Navigation** and then **Geographic Calculations…**. The *Geographic Calulations* dialog box displays.

Step	Action
2.	Select the option **Compute B**.
3.	Enter or use the button and click the main view to define the position of A point.
4.	Modify any value of the **Rhumb Line** and/or **Great Circle** fields, B point's position is automatically displayed in the dialog box: 
5.	End of procedure.

VI.4 Piloting fix

VI.4.1 OVERVIEW

Nowadays, GPS is often used to specify ships' position, even if shore is in sight. But this might fail to work, and you might wish to test the reliability of such a system comparing it to fixes displayed with a bearing line or a range marker.

A bearing is the angle of a direction (e.g.: a landmark) to the ship's axis. The position of the ship can be estimated when several bearings are operated. The ship will be located in the location where two bearings cross and in the crossing area of three bearings. You can also estimate the position with a radar range. A circle whose centre is the position of the landmark and the radius is the distance – measured by the radar – between the ship and the landmark will be displayed. You can use bearings at the same as a radar range.

Bearings are often performed with landmarks, in other words near coasts. A bearing is a half-line whose origin is the position of the landmark.

Gecdis allows you to operate bearings or radar ranges:

- From several landmarks, at different times.
- From a single landmark, at different times.

As the observations are performed at different times, they are transferred in accordance with ship's kinematics. The transfer starts from the reference position of the Own Ship (from GPS or dead reckoned). Once the bearings/radar ranges performed, it is possible to

compute the position where the ship is more likely to be located (this is the fixed point). This point can then be used to reset dead reckoned positions (Set EP).

VI.4.2 USING PILOTING FIX

Piloting fixes are often determined with several bearings; the position of the Own Ship is deduced from bearings that have been made at different times. The fixes move the same way as the Own Ship.

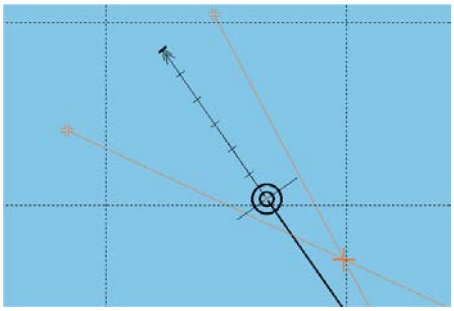


Figure 143 - A fix after two bearings

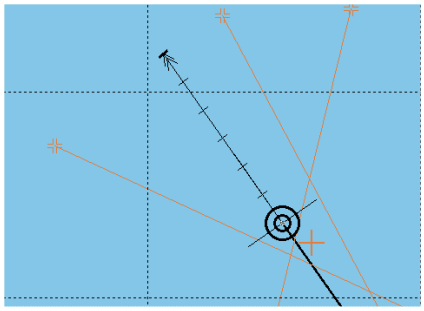


Figure 144 - A fix after three bearings

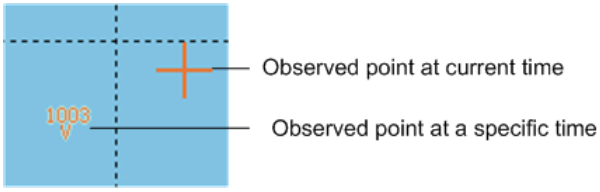
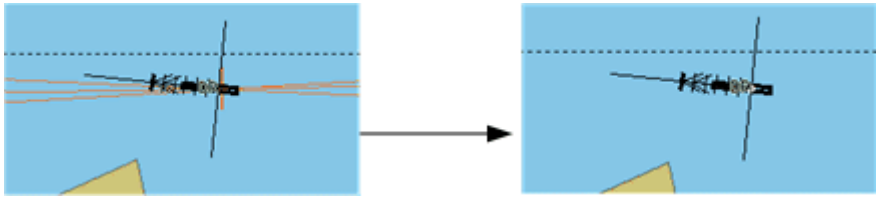
After two bearings, a line is displayed in the main view.

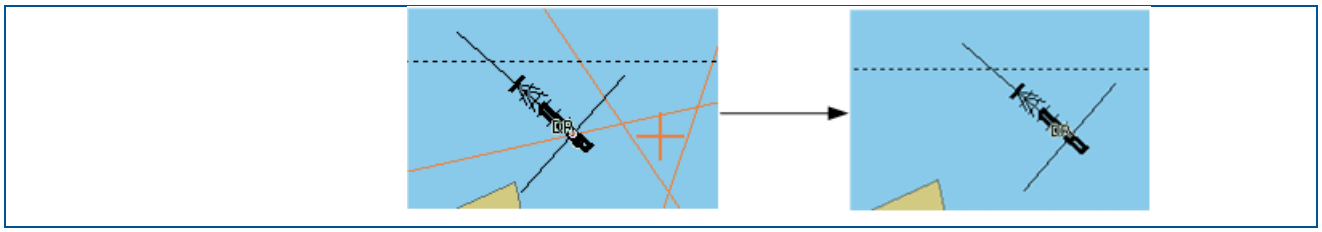
You can either:

- Validate the point and put it in the main view: Fix Point button.
- Validate the point to adjust the position of the ship on this point. The ECDIS symbol with DR label will be displayed on the main view: Set EP button.
- Not validate the point and keep it for a moment on the screen before deleting it..

All the operations are performed with the Piloting Fix dialog box. This dialog box consists in two parts:

- the first one allows to make fixes that correspond to a bearing and / or a radar range ;
- the second one displays information about the fix (the bearing / range between the reference position of the Own Ship) and allows to perform several operations:

Fix point	Specifies in a graphical way a specific position, at a specific time, of the fix point. Whenever you click the button, UTC is displayed in orange. 
Reset	Removes all bearings and radar range circles that have been added with the Piloting Fix dialog box. Other bearings, made with the Bearing option for example, are not removed. 
Set EP	Locate the ship in the fix point. Bearings are removed.



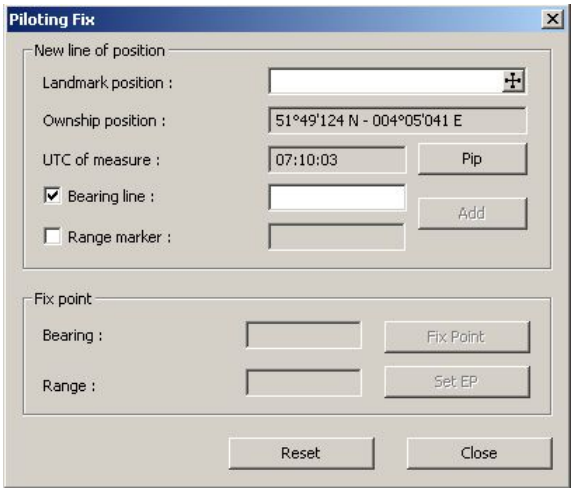


Figure 145 - The Piloting Fix Dialog Box

To make a fix point:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Navigation** menu, and then **Piloting Fix…** *The* Piloting Fix *dialog box is displayed; the* ***Own Ship Position*** *field indicates the coordinates of the Own Ship.*
2.	Click **Pip** when you want to measure.
3.	Do one of the following: • To make a bearing, check the **Bearing** box • To measure a radar range, check the **Range marker** box.
4.	Click , and then the main view, to specify a position for the landmark.
5.	The position of the landmark and the bearing and/or radar range are specified. Optionally change those two values.
6.	Click **Add** to take into account the observation.
7.	Do the same for the other bearings/radar ranges.
8.	Optionally insert the fixed point, delete all bearings / radar ranges or set an EP.
9.	Click **Close** to close the dialog box.
10.	End of procedure.

To delete a bearing: Right click the bearing / radar range circle. Click **Delete** in the pop-up menu.

VI.5 SAR Diagrams

VI.5.1 OVERVIEW

The Search and Rescue (SAR) system helps navigators to search an object (ship, man over board) lost at sea. SAR is used with three different diagrams.

Each diagram allows to display a different search route:

- By square spiral,
- By sectors,
- By parallels (from 1 to 5 ships).

Those diagrams comply with those of the IAMSAR manual, book 3.

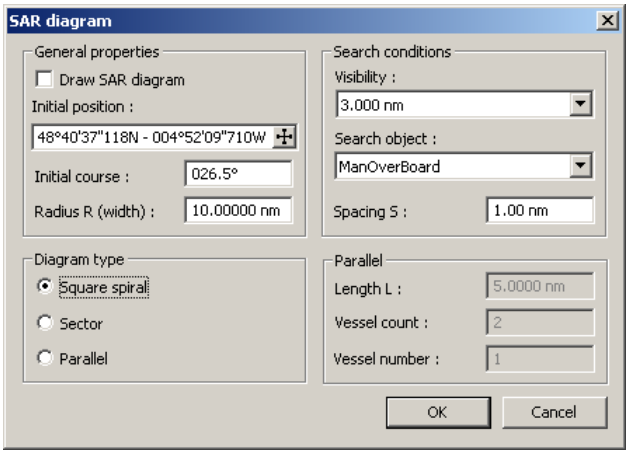


Figure 146 - SAR Diagrams dialog box

Search routes are configured through the SAR diagram dialog box. This dialog box contains some general information that concerns all diagrams, and information that is specific to each diagram.

So before selecting the type of diagram to be used, general search properties should be set:

- The initial position of search;
- The initial route, i.e the orientation of the first leg, which is generally run head wind. If the true wind heading is available, the **Initial course** field is filled with the corresponding field;
- The R radius of the route. The radius differs according to the type of diagram.

The spacing S is automatically computed according to values that are selected for Visibility and Search object. The spacing S, i.e. the distance between each line, will be all the wider as the visibility is better and the search object huge. So a 3 nm visibility and a searched man overboard implies a 0,4 nm spacing S. On the contrary, a 20 nm visibility for a 24 m searched ship implies a 18,1 nm spacing S.

To open the dialog box allowing you to configure SAR diagrams: Click the **Navigation** menu then click **Create SAR Diagram.**

WHEN WORKING IN A NETWORK, SAR DIAGRAMS ARE NOT REPRODUCED IN DIFFERENT MACHINES. SO IT IS POSSIBLE TO PREPARE A DIAGRAM ON ONE MACHINE, WHILE WORKING ON ANOTHER DIAGRAM ON ANOTHER MACHINE.

VI.5.2 SQUARE SPIRAL ROUTE

Square spiral route is normally used for a single ship, if the wind drift is low. Spiral is drawn in a square, each side of which is equal to twice the specified radius in the dialog box. When you select this type of route, the **Spacing S** can now be editable. This field allows you to enter the length of the two first lines. The size of the two following lines will be 2S, the two after will be 3S and so on. For example, if the spacing value is 1 nm, the two first lines will measure 1 nm, the two following lines 2 nm, the two after 3 nm and so on – adding 1 each time until reaching the limits of the square spiral that have been defined by the radius.

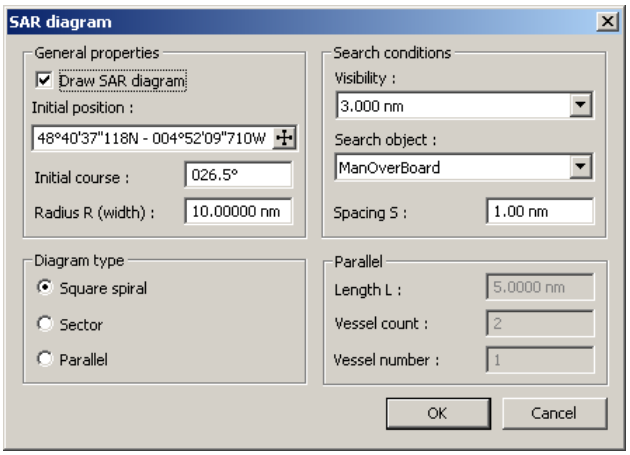


Figure 147 - Square Spiral Configuration

The fist S-length line is generally run head wind. The square spiral shape is as follows:

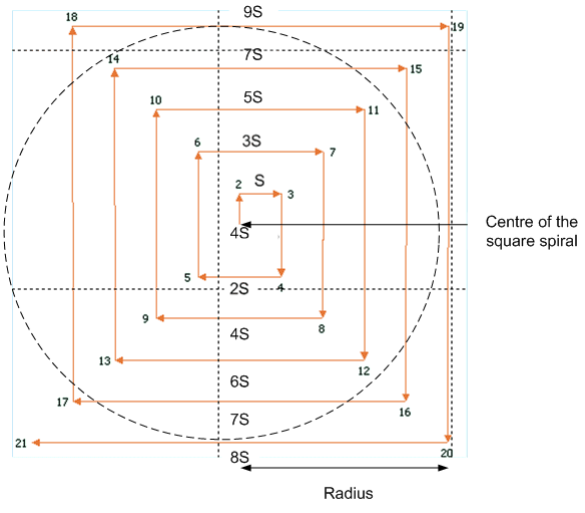


Figure 148 - Square Spiral

To create a square spiral SAR diagram:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Navigation** menu, and then **Create SAR Diagram…**
2.	If not already done, check the **Draw SAR Diagram** box, and then fill in the **General properties** and **Search conditions** fields.
3.	In **Diagram type** area, click **Square spiral**.
4.	Enter your desired value in **Spacing S**, and click **OK**. *The diagram is displayed in the main view.*
5.	End of procedure.

VI.5.3 SECTOR ROUTE

Sector's route is recommended when a single ship searches in a limited circular area. This type of route is drawn in a R radius circle, which normally ranges from 2 to 5 nm. Contrary to square spiral or parallel route, this type of route does not require specific settings; you just have to click OK to close the dialog box and create the SAR diagram.

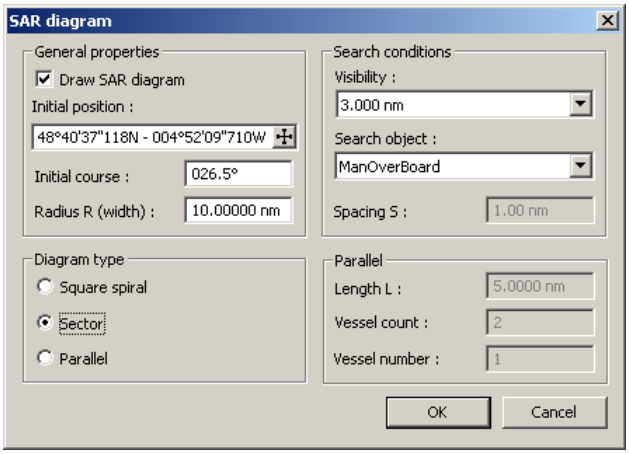


Figure 149 - Sector Configuration

The fist line is generally run head wind; its length is 2R. Each turn is equal to 120°, to starboard.

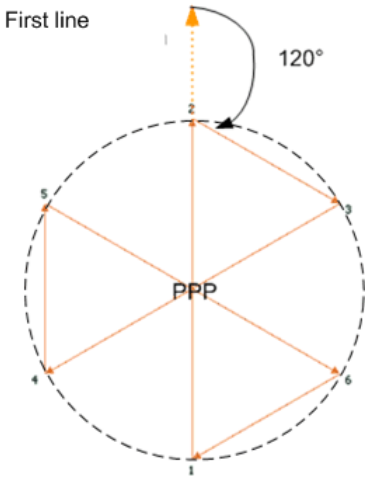


Figure 150 - A Sector

To create a sector-type SAR diagram:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Navigation** menu, and then **Create SAR Diagram…**
2.	If not already done, check the **Draw SAR Diagram** box and then fill in the **General properties** and **Search conditions** fields.
3.	In **Diagram type** area, click **Sector**.
4.	Click **OK**. *The diagram is displayed in the main view.*
5.	End of procedure.

VI.5.4 PARALLEL ROUTE

Parallel route is recommended when two or more ships take part in the search operation on a wide area. This type of route is drawn in a R-width rectangle. Each ship implied in the search follows a trajectory. The trajectory of your ship is drawn with a bolded orange line, whereas this of the other ships are drawn in dotted lines.

To configure parallel route, you should specify:

- The spacing between lines (S);
- The width of the search rectangle (R);
- The length of each line (L);
- The initial position of the diagram (P);
- The number of ships that take part to the search (N), which ranges from 2 to 5;
- The number of the ship's trajectory, that corresponds to the ship's number.

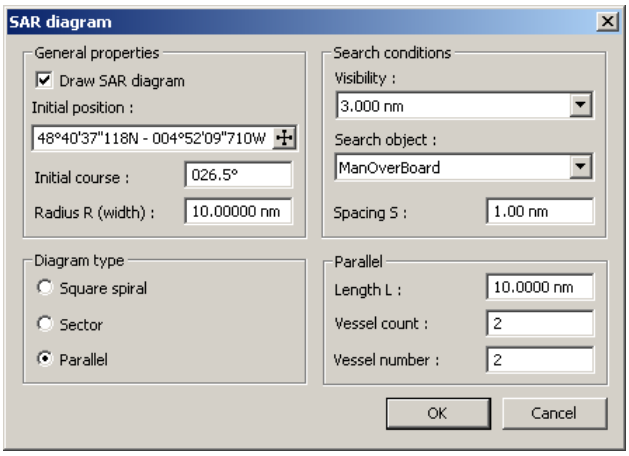


Figure 151 - Configuring parallel route

Depending on the number of ships, you can draw different diagrams. The number of ships should depend on the radius and the length of the lines. This type of route is drawn in a rectangle whose sides are l – S and R – S.

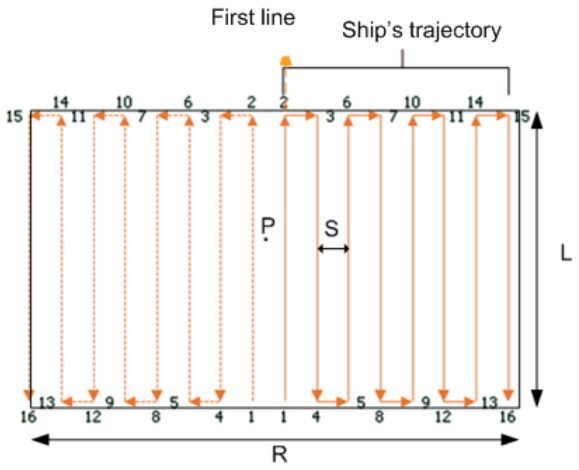


Figure 152 - Diagram with two ships

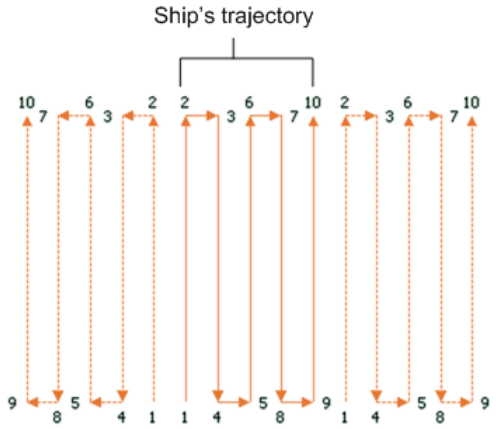


Figure 153 - Diagram with three ships

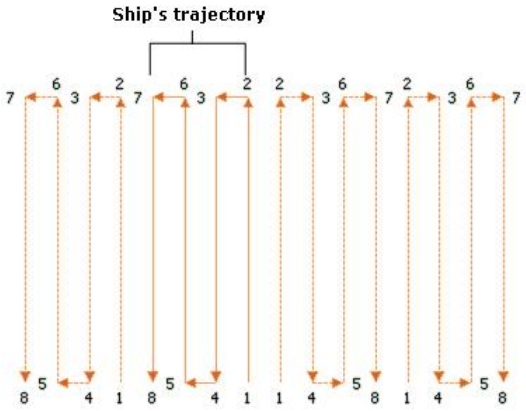


Figure 154 - Diagram with four ships

To create a parallel-type SAR diagram:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Navigation** menu, and then **Create SAR Diagram…**
2.	If not already done, check the **Draw SAR Diagram**, and then fill the **General properties** and **Search conditions** fields.
3.	In **Diagram type** area, click **Parallel**.
4.	Enter your desired values for **Spacing S**, and for the fields of the **Parallel** area.
5.	Click **OK**. *The diagram is displayed in the main view.*
6.	End of procedure.

VII USER OBJECTS

VII.1 Databases and Folders

A database can be compared to a cabinet in which you would store much information. All user objects that you will create will be stored in databases.
By default a database called "IxBlue" is created while installing Gecdis. This database is a .mdb file (the typical database files). All user objects will be added to it.
Gecdis allows you to create as many databases as desired. So you can add a new database and change the current one.

To add or change a database:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **User Objects** and then **Database Management**.
2.	In the dialog box that displays, do one of the following: • If you want to change the current database, browse to your desired database, select it and click **Open Database**. • If you want to add a new database, click **New Database…**, enter the name and click **Create**.
3.	End of procedure.

Folders can be compared to the drawers of a cabinet. They contain all the user objects you create. You can add a folder and change the current folder.

To add a folder:

Step	Action
1.	In the **User Objects** menu, click **Open Objects list...**
2.	Click **New Folder**, enter the new folder name and click **OK.**
3.	End of procedure.

To change the current folder:

Step	Action
1.	In the **User Objects** menu, click **Set Current Folder…**
2.	Select a folder in the list of folders and click **OK**.
3.	End of procedure.

VII.2 Managing User Objects

VII.2.1 General Operation on User Objects

When you select a user object, the Consultation window is displayed in the upper right part of the screen with information about the object you have selected. Below this window buttons are displayed.

To hide a user object:

Step	Action
1.	Click the object you want to hide.
2.	Use the context-sensitive button, on the right of the screen, and click **Hide**. The object is now located with the other hidden objects.
3.	End of procedure.

To move a user object: Select the object to move, and Use the mouse to select the object, and click Move… in the drop-down menu.

To delete a user object: Do one of the following:

- Use the list of user objects and select the object you want to delete.
- Use the **Delete** button of the context-sensitive buttons on the right of the screen.

To display the properties of a user object: Select a user object and click the **Properties** button. You will then have the possibility to change the information relative to the selected user object.

VII.2.2 List of User Objects

The list of user objects allows you to manage the objects of Gecdis object database. It looks like Windows Explorer, and allows you to display the hierarchical structure of folders and user objects.

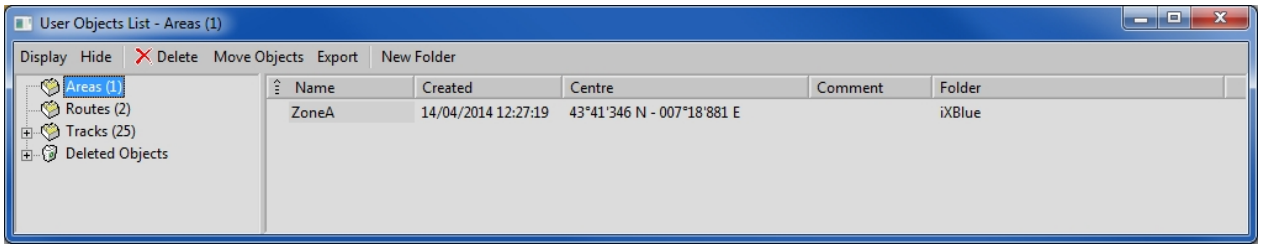


Figure 155 - List of user objects

To open the list of user objects: Click the **User Objects** menu, and then **Open Objects List.**

This menu enables to:

- **Display**: Centres the main view on the selected object and allows you to make visible a hidden user object. When a user object is visible, it is displayed in black.
- **Hide**: Allows you to hide the selected user object in the main view. When a user object is hidden, it is displayed in grey. If you double-click a hidden user object, it becomes visible and the main view is centred on it.
- **Delete**: Deletes the selected user object. When a user objects is deleted, it is located on the Deleted Objects folder.
- **Move Objects**: Allows you to change the folder of the selected user object.
- **Export**: Allows exporting a user object to a database.
- **Restore**: Restores the selected object to its original folder.
- **Clean**: Delete permanently the selected object.

VII.2.3 CONFIGURING THE FILTERS

Gecdis allows you to define filters for user objects:

- Filter 1 to sort out objects by date/campaign/Position…
- Filter 2 to sort out objects according to their object visual features (Symbol, colour, etc…).

Therefore you can gather several types of parameters in one filter and you can choose which one you want to display on the screen.

You can thus display objects having close similarities.

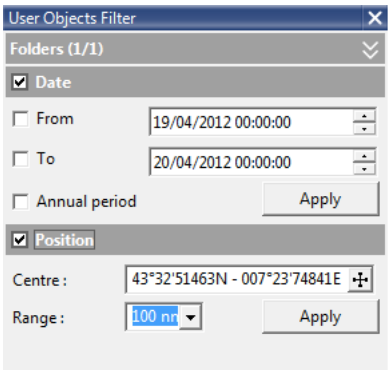


Figure 156 - User object filter window

To configure the filters: In the **User Objects** menu, click **Define Objects Filter**.

VII.2.4 IMPORTING USER OBJECTS

When importing an object to Gecdis, this object is converted into Gecdis format.

BE CAREFUL, THE AMOUNT OF DOWNLOADED DATA MAY INTERFERE WITH THE SPEED AND FLOW OF THE SOFTWARE TO DISPLAY DATA. FURTHERMORE KEEP IN MIND THAT THE NUMBER OF MARKS IS LIMITED TO 1 MILLION.

VII.2.4.1 TurboWin/Turbo2000 Import

You can import user data provided by TurboWin. It can be marks, areas, routes and tracks with or without parameters.
Once the data is downloaded, it is displayed exactly like in TurboWin (position of the objects, parameters related to each object, their colour…).

To import a TurboWin/Turbo2000 user object folder:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Import**, **User objects** and then **Turbo 2000 Directory…**
2.	Click « … » to browse the database or the folder with the user object(s).
3.	In the **Import** area, check the boxes corresponding to the objects you want to import (the number of objects to be imported displays in the low part of the window).
4.	End of procedure.

To import several TurboWin/Turbo2000 user objects folders:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Import**, **User objects** and then **Multiple Turbo2000 Directories...**
2.	Click « … » to browse the database or the folder with the user object(s).
3.	In the **Import** area, check the boxes corresponding to the objects you want to import (the number of objects to be imported displays in the low part of the window).
4.	End of procedure.

VII.2.4.2 Gecdis Import

You can import user data provided by another Gecdis application. It can be marks, areas, routes and tracks with or without parameters.
Once the data is downloaded, it is displayed exactly like in the original Gecdis (position of the objects, parameters related to each object, their colour…).

To import a Gecdis user object folder:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Import**, **User objects** and then **Gecdis database...**
2.	Click « … » to browse the database or the folder with the user object(s).
3.	In the **Import** area, check the boxes corresponding to the objects you want to import (the number of objects to be imported displays in the low part of the window).
4.	End of procedure.

VII.2.4.3 Turbo Tactic Import

You can import user data provided by another Gecdis application. It can be marks, areas, routes and tracks with or without parameters.
Once the data is downloaded, it is displayed exactly like in the original Gecdis (position of the objects, parameters related to each object, their colour…).

To import a Turbo Tactic user object folder:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Import**, **User objects** and then **Gecdis database…**
2.	Click « … » to browse the database or the folder with the user object(s).
3.	In the **Import** area, check the boxes corresponding to the objects you want to import (the number of objects to be imported displays in the low part of the window).
4.	End of procedure.

VII.2.4.4 MaxSea Import

You can import user data provided by MaxSea. It can be marks, areas, routes and tracks with or without parameters.
Once the data is downloaded, it is displayed exactly like in the original MaxSea (position of the objects, parameters related to each object, their colour…).

To import a MaxSea user object folder:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Import**, **User objects** and then **MaxSea File…**
2.	Click « … » to browse the database or the folder with the user object(s).
3.	In the **Import** area, check the boxes corresponding to the objects you want to import (the number of objects to be imported displays in the low part of the window).
4.	End of procedure.

VII.2.4.5 QuodFish Import

You can import user data provided by QuodFish. It can be marks, areas, routes and tracks with or without parameters.
Once the data is downloaded, it is displayed exactly like in the original QuodFish. However you may notice that some objects can be displayed with a different symbol or a different colour.

To import a QuodFish user object folder:

Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Import**, **User objects** and then **QuodFish File…**
2.	Click « … » to browse the database or the folder with the user object(s).
3.	In the **Import** area, check the boxes corresponding to the objects you want to import (the number of objects to be imported displays in the low part of the window).
4.	End of procedure.

VII.2.5 EXPORTING A USER OBJECT

You can export your user objects to the database of one of the following systems:

- Gecdis
- TurboWin.

SINCE DATA IS ENCRYPTED, IT IS NOT POSSIBLE TO USE IT ON OTHER SOFTWARE APPLICATIONS.

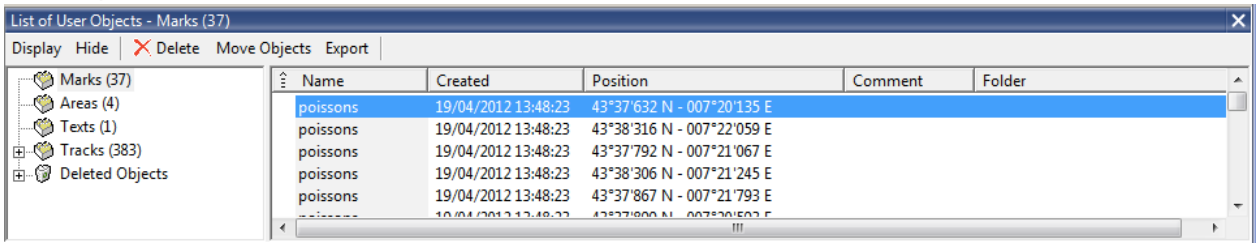


Figure 157 - User object select

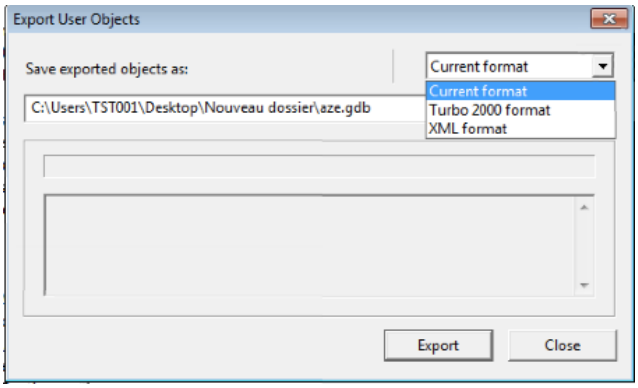


Figure 158 - Format select

To export a user object:

Step	Action
1.	Open the list of user objects (**User Objects** menu, and then **Open Objects List…** option) select the object(s) you want to export and click **Export** in the menu bar of this

Step	Action
	window.
2.	In the dialog box, select the format of data to export (Gecdis or TurboWin) and click « **…** » to search and select the destination database.
3.	You can also create a new database by entering the access path of a file that has not been created yet.
4.	Click **Export** and, once the export process is done, click **Close**.
5.	End of procedure.

VII.3 Routes

VII.3.1 CREATING A ROUTE

A route is a continuous itinerary followed by the ship that links two remote points and possibly separated with intermediate points.

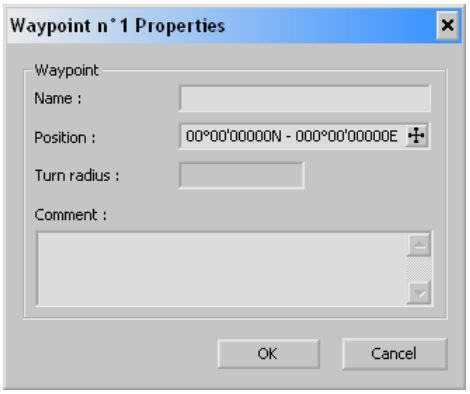
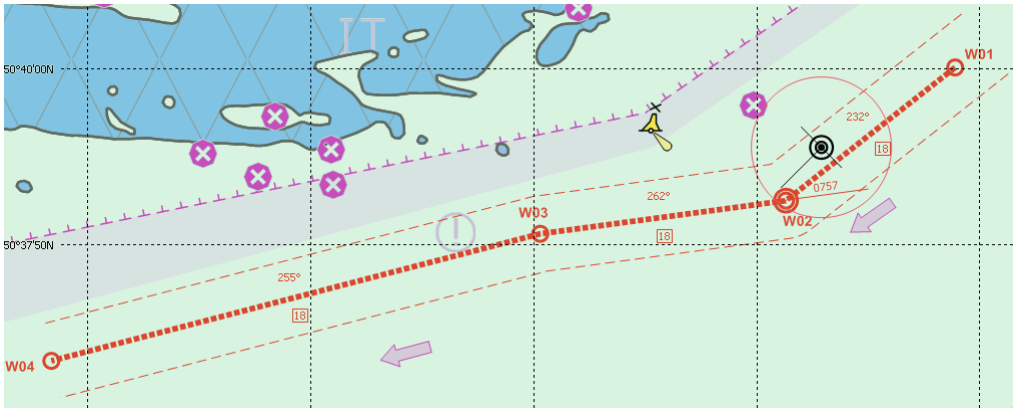
There are two ways of creating a route:

- With the cursor;
- With the Route Properties dialog box.

To create a route with the cursor:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Navigation** menu, click **Create Route with Cursor…**
2.	Click in the main view where you want to insert your first waypoint in the main view.
3.	Drag the mouse and click where you want to insert your second waypoint. Do the same thing for the other waypoints.
4.	Right-click when you want to finish your route.
5.	When you right-click, the leg you have just created will be deleted if you have not first clicked on the left button. *The* Route Properties *dialog box displays information about the waypoints of the route.*
6.	To validate your route, click **OK**.
7.	End of procedure.

To create a route with a list of waypoints:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Navigation** menu, click **Create Route…** *The* Route Properties *dialog box displays.*
2.	Edit the first waypoint by entering values in the editable fields (**Name** and **Position**) and by clicking non-editable fields to access the *Waypoint n°x Properties* dialog box.  *Waypoint dialog box for the first waypoint*
3.	Add the other waypoints clicking the button or with the keyboard, doing the following: • Press the **[Ctrl]+ [Enter]** key combination to add a waypoint • Press the keyboard **[TAB]** key to switch between the **Name** and the **Position** columns.
4.	Click **OK** to save the route. 
5.	End of procedure.

VII.3.2 ROUTE PROPERTIES

By route properties, we mean information entered to create this route.

The *Route Properties* dialog box is the following:

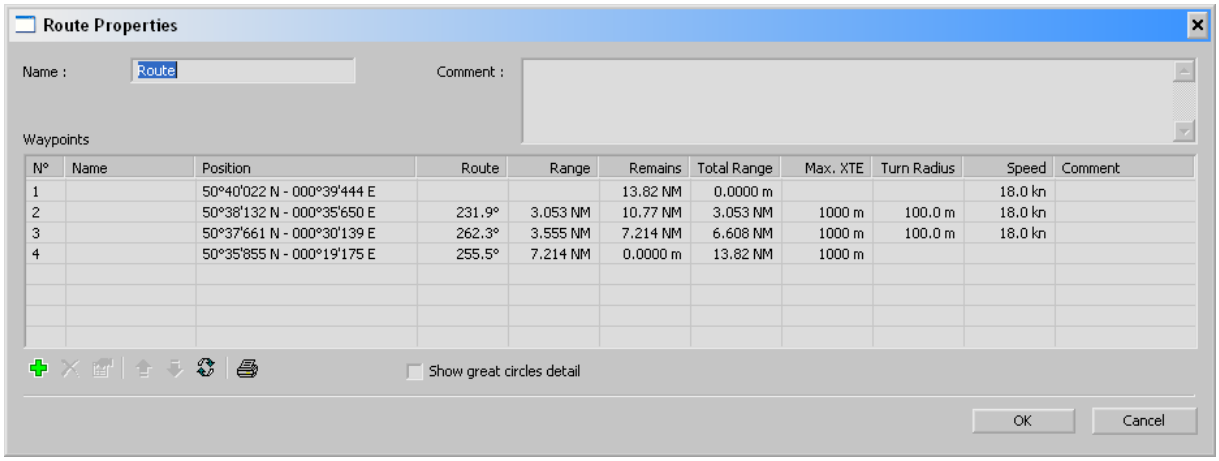

Route Properties
Name :
Route
Comment :
Waypoints
N° Name Position Route Range Remains Total Range Max. XTE Turn Radius Speed Comment
1 50°40'022 N - 000°39'444 E 13.82 NM 0.0000 m 18.0 kn
2 50°38'132 N - 000°35'650 E 231.9° 3.053 NM 10.77 NM 3.053 NM 1000 m 100.0 m 18.0 kn
3 50°37'661 N - 000°30'139 E 262.3° 3.555 NM 7.214 NM 6.608 NM 1000 m 100.0 m 18.0 kn
4 50°35'855 N - 000°19'175 E 255.5° 7.214 NM 0.0000 m 13.82 NM 1000 m
Show great circles detail
OK
Cancel

Figure 159 - Route properties dialog

VII.3.2.1 Route Fields

- **Name**: Name of the route. By default the name is Route.
- **Comment**: Add any comment on the route.

VII.3.2.2 Waypoints Fields

Each line of the table matches a waypoint, and when you double click on a line, you can edit the waypoint properties.

It's equivalent to click on the button.

- **N°**: Number of the waypoint. It is incremented by one for each new waypoint.
- **Name**: Name of the waypoint. You can edit this field by clicking the desired cell and entering a name.
- **Position**: Position of the selected waypoint.
- **Route**: Route to follow for the previous leg. This field is not filled in for the first waypoint because when a route is indicated for a waypoint, it concerns the leg linking the current waypoint to the previous one.
- **Range**: Distance between the selected waypoint and the previous waypoint. This distance is expressed in nautical miles.
- **Remains**: Distance that remains to run in the route. The first cell of the Remains column is equal to the last cell of the Total Range column.
- **Total range**: Distance from the departure to the selected waypoint. The last cell of the Total Range column is equal to the first cell of the Remains column.
- **Max**. **XTE** (Cross Track Error): Distance on each side of the route that the ship shall not pass. If this occurs, an alarm is generated. This field is not filled for the first waypoint.
- **Turn radius**: This field corresponds to the turn radius starboard (System menu,

Settings, I/O Mobiles, and Own Ship Characteristics…, Navigation tab). It is not filled for the first waypoint and the last waypoint.

- **Comment**: Comment of the waypoint.

VII.3.2.3 The toolbar Commands

In the lower part of the dialog box there are several icons allowing you to manage the waypoints:

Adds a new waypoint after the selected waypoint.

Deletes the selected waypoint.

Shows the properties of the selected waypoint and allows you to configure some of them.

Moves the selected waypoint up in the list of waypoints.

Moves the selected waypoint down in the list of waypoints.

Inverts the route so that the first waypoint of a route becomes the last one, the second one the last but one and so on.

Prints on the default printer the route properties in the form of a table.

To add a waypoint to a route with the Waypoint Properties dialog box:

Step	Action
1.	Select a route and access the *Route Properties* dialog box clicking the **Properties** context-sensitive button.
2.	In the table of the *Route Properties* dialog box, click the waypoint before which you want to add a waypoint and then the button.
3.	In the *Waypoint Properties* dialog box, enter: a name, a position, a turn radius, a max XTE, and if you want a comment.
4.	Click the **Rhumb line** or **Great circle** radio button if you want the leg that ends with this waypoint to be computed with rhumb line, or great circle.
5.	If you want, select a display context in the **Display Context** scrolling list.
6.	Click **OK**.
7.	End of procedure.

To add a waypoint to a route with pop-up menus:

Step	Action
1.	Select a route and then right-click the waypoint before which or after which you want to add another waypoint. *A pop-up menu opens.*
2.	Do one of the following: • Click **Insert Wpt After** if you want to insert a waypoint after the selected waypoint. • Click **Insert Wpt Before** if you want to insert a waypoint before the selected waypoint.
3.	Drag the mouse to insert the new waypoint in your desired location.
4.	End of procedure.

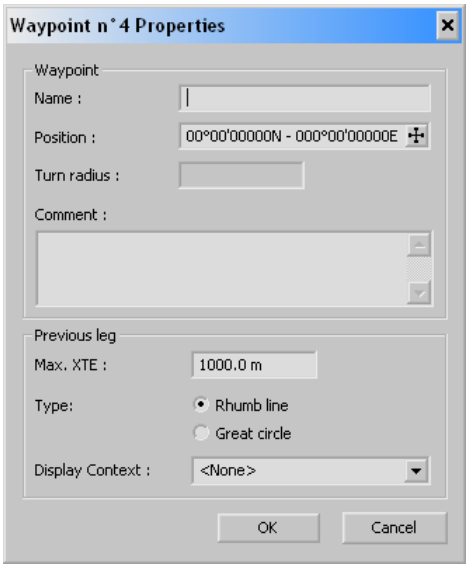


Figure 160 - New waypoint dialog (other than for the 1st point)

To delete a waypoint: Do one of the following actions:

- In the *Route Properties* dialog box, select one of the line of the table and click ✕. In the main view, the selected waypoint is removed if you click **OK.** A new leg links the waypoints that used to be positioned before and after the deleted waypoint.
- Select a route and then the waypoint you want to delete in this route right-clicking it. Click **Delete Wpt** in the pop-up menu. The waypoint is deleted

To edit a waypoint and change its properties:

Step	Action
1.	Double-click the line of the waypoint you want to change or click it and click . *The* Waypoint Properties *dialog box is displayed. This dialog box is divided in one or two areas:* ***Waypoint*** *and* ***optionally Previous Leg*** *(if you have selected any line but the first one).*
2.	Modify the properties in the *Waypoint Properties* dialog box displayed.
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

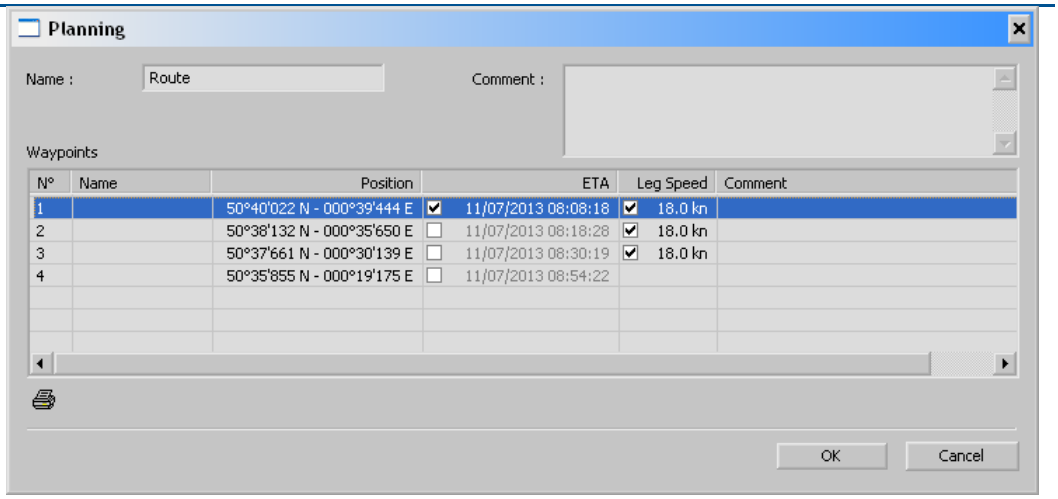
VII.3.3 PLANNING A ROUTE

Planning a route aims at estimating the duration and speed of your journey. To calculate the ETA (Estimated Time of Arrival) for each waypoint you just need to indicate one of the ETA or the date of departure. You can also decide to fix an ETA or a leg speed so that this piece of information remains unchanged.

To plan a route:

Step	Action
1.	Right-click the route you want to plan then select **Planning…** context sensitive button. Click **OK** in the message box "You must set at least one ETA" that appears. *The* Planning *dialog box opens.*
2.	Indicate at least one estimated time of arrival (ETA). Check one of the boxes of the ETA column, click the cell and enter an estimated time or use the up and down arrows to select a date.
3.	ETA and leg speed for each leg are automatically calculated, according to the ETA you have indicated in the previous step. If you have entered a date without checking the cell, the date will not be taken into account by the computation.
4.	You can enable any constraints to your route checking boxes of the ETA or Leg Speed fields and entering in front of the boxes your desired ETA for the waypoint or leg speed for the previous leg.

Step	Action



5. End of procedure.

VII.3.4 DUPLICATING A ROUTE

Duplicating a route consists of copying a route you have already created. This second route must overlap the first route. If you do not modify the location of a waypoint in one of these routes, you will only see one route.

To duplicate a route:

Step	Action
1.	Select a route you have already created.
2.	In the context-sensitive buttons, on the right of the screen, click the **Duplicate** button. *The* Route Properties *dialog box of the new route is displayed, giving you the same details as those entered for the first route.*
3.	Do one of the following: • Click **OK**. This route is superimposed upon the first route. You will optionally change it later on when required. • Change the parameters as you want for this new route.
4.	End of procedure.

VII.3.5 REPRESENTATION OF A ROUTE

The representation of the route depends on the status of the route. Indeed, a route can either be planned or alternate, highlighted or not.

VII.3.5.1 Alternative Route

The route is still displayed with a thin and tight orange dotted line. Each waypoint is represented with an orange circle whose centre is the waypoint. If you have planned a route, the planned speed for each leg is displayed in a small square.

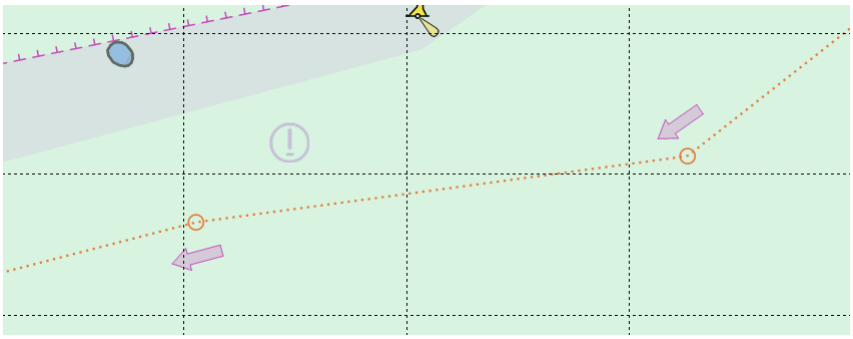


Figure 161 - Alternative route

VII.3.5.2 Planned Route

The heading (route) is displayed with a thick dotted red line. Each waypoint is represented with a circle whose centre is the waypoint. The lane is displayed with a thin broad spaced out red-dotted line. If you have planned your route, the planned speed for each leg is displayed in a little square.

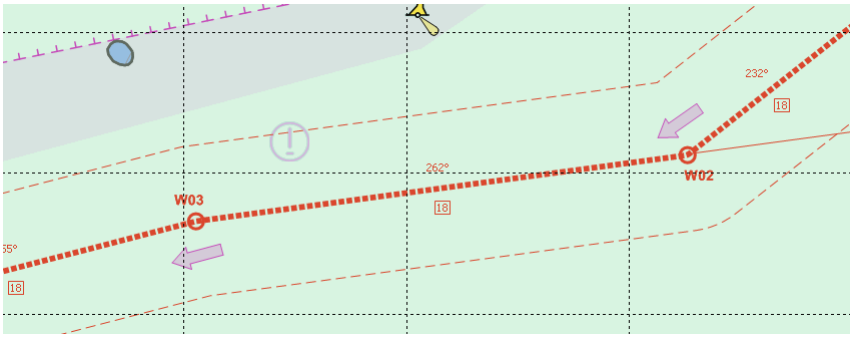


Figure 162 - Planned route

VII.3.5.3 Alternative Route that is Highlighted

The alternative route is displayed with a thin and tight orange dotted line. Each waypoint is represented with a circle around the waypoint. Around each waypoint there is a square. At the end and beginning of each leg, a line crossing and closing the lane is displayed. The lane is displayed with a plain and thick red line. The heading (route) of a leg is displayed in the middle of this leg. If you have planned your route, the planned speed for each leg is displayed in a little square

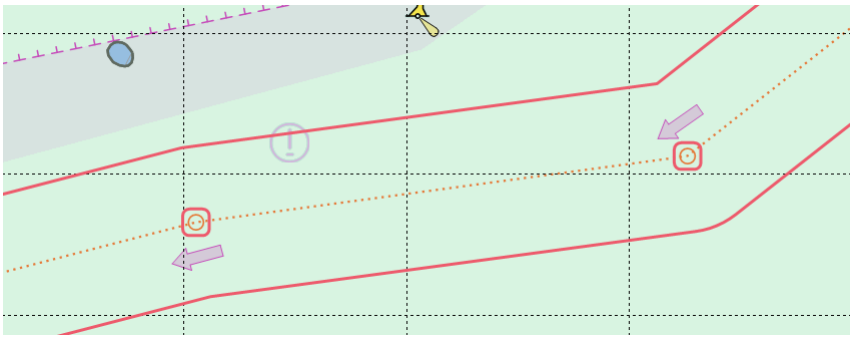


Figure 163 - Highlighted alternative route

VII.3.5.4 Planned Route that is Highlighted

The planned route is displayed with a thick dotted red line. Each waypoint is represented with a circle around the waypoint. A square encircles each waypoint.

A plain and thick line represents the lane. The heading (route) of a leg is displayed in the middle of this leg.

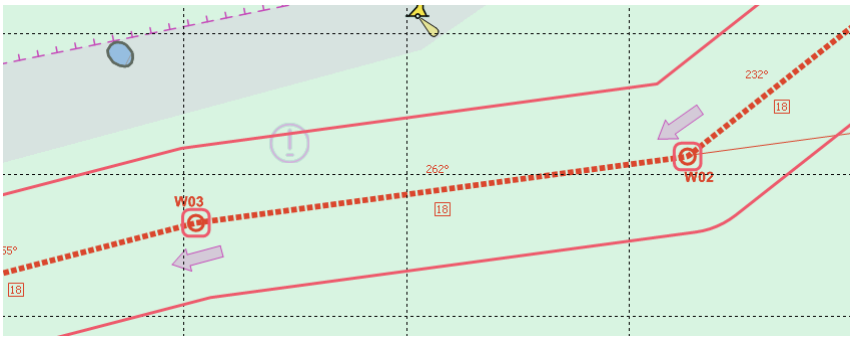


Figure 164 - Highlighted planned route

VII.3.6 SWITCHING IN ROUTE MONITORING

When you launch the route monitoring mode on a planned route, the Pilot window opens, giving several useful pieces of information about the route. While in route monitoring, you can still change the properties and planning of the route.

Along the route monitoring, several alarms may occur:

- When you reach a wheel-over, the following message displays in the Alarms window: Wheel-over Waypoint x reached (where x represents the waypoint number).
- If your ship exceeds the XTE, the following alarm displays: Max. exceeded : x nm (where x represents the distance from XTE, distance expressed in meters up to 1852 meters and then nautical miles).
- When the last waypoint is reached, the following alarm displays: Waypoint x reached.

To switch in route monitoring mode:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Navigation** menu, click **Start Track Keeping** to display the route monitoring information. To do so, the ship must be inside the lane of the route.
2.	If you want to stop the route monitoring, click **Navigation** and then **Stop Track Keeping**.
3.	When you switch to monitoring mode, the Pilot view is displayed.
4.	End of procedure.

VII.3.7 THE PILOT VIEW

This view includes the following items:

- **TO name**: destination waypoint name.
- **TO-NEXT course**: next leg course. Corresponds to the Route field of the Route Properties dialog box. This value is also indicated in red colour in the middle of each leg (it is corrected to the nearest whole number).
- **NEXT name**: next destination waypoint name.
- **Heading to steer**: heading to steer to follow the selected route. This value takes into account the drift.
- **XTE**: current cross track error from Own Ship position to the route lane. This value can be preceded by << if the ship must steer to the left to reach the route or >> if the ship must steer to the right.
- **WOD**: wheel over distance from the current Own Ship position to the wheel over line.
- **WOTTG**: wheel over time to go corresponding to WOD and Own Ship SOG.
- **WOT**: UTC date and time of arrival to wheel over line (according UTC, SOG and WOD).
- **Final ETA**: The estimated time (UTC) of arrival to the last waypoint of the route.

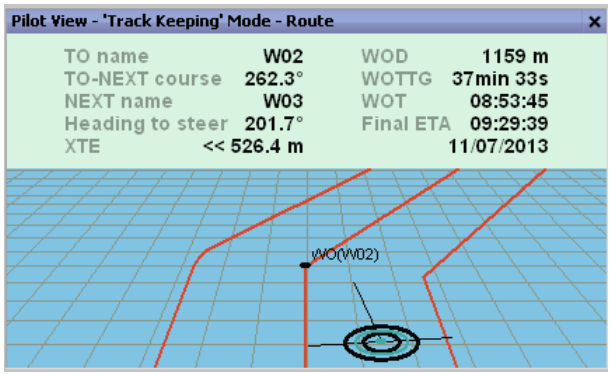


Figure 165 - Pilot View

VII.3.8 AUTOPILOT CONTROL

The autopilot control allows you to select the type of autopilot to use, and the sentences to transmit.

There are four autopilot modes:

- **Manual**: this mode, which is selected by default, allows you to start the autopilot manually or end one of the other modes. This implies that Gecdis sends no command to the pilot.
- **Steering course**: allows you to follow a continuous heading. When this mode is enabled, a route is displayed with the entered heading and the Pilot view is displayed with COW and Heading to steer information.
- **Track Keeping**: launches the route monitoring mode. If the Ship is outside the lane of the planned route, the Pilot view is displayed with the information concerning the first waypoint of the route. If the Ship is inside the lane, information about the next waypoint of the route is displayed.
- **Pilot to one Waypoint**: allows creating a one-legged temporary route between the Ship and the entered coordinates. It is not possible to save this type of route.

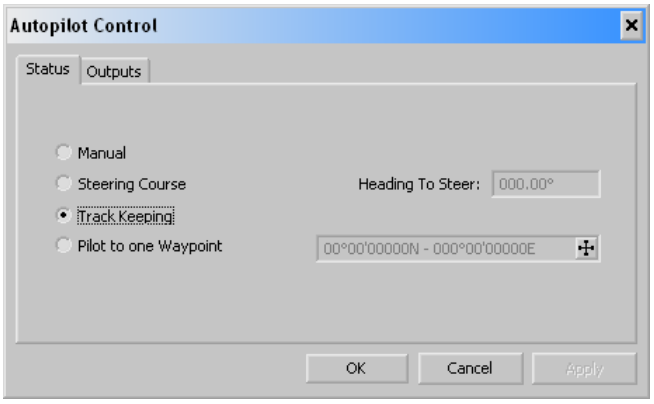


Figure 166 - Autopilot control dialog

To open the autopilot control dialog box: In the **Navigation** menu, click **Autopilot Control…**

To use the steering course mode:

Step	Action
1.	In the *Autopilot Control* dialog box, select **Steering Course** option, and then enter a value in the **Heading To Steer** field.
2.	Click **OK** or **Apply**. *A dotted line is displayed, with the same heading as the one you entered. To follow the mentioned course, you will have to follow this line.*
3.	End of procedure.

To use the route monitoring mode:

Step	Action
1.	To start, do one of the following actions: • In the *Autopilot Control* dialog box, select the **Track keeping** option. If your ship is not in the lane of the route to follow, a message displays warning you that you cannot start the route monitoring, and the **Manual mode** is selected. • In the **Navigation** menu, click **Start Route Monitoring.**
2.	To stop the route monitoring mode, do one of the following: • In the *Autopilot Control* dialog box, select the **Manual** radio button. • Click the **Navigation** menu and **Stop Track Keeping**
3.	End of procedure.

To use the autopilot on a waypoint:

Step	Action
1.	In the *Autopilot Control* dialog box, click the **Pilot to one Waypoint** radio button.
2.	Do one of the following actions: • Enter the position of the point to be reached. • Click , and then click the desired location into the chart.
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	End of procedure.

To transmitt sentences to the autopilot:

Step	Action
1.	In the *Autopilot Control* dialog box, click the **Outputs** tab.
2.	Select the stream that will transmit the sentences, check the sentences you want to transmit and click **OK**.
3.	End of procedure.

VII.3.9 THE CHANNEL VIEW

The Channel View is a plane representation of the main view. It gives:

- An overview of the route followed by the ship,
- A better understanding on how the Ship is moving. That is why this window is oriented in leg-up mode, according to the route direction.

Its behaviour is the same as the main view. For example, when you select a mobile in the main view, it is also selected in the Channel View.

Functions that can be applied to the route monitoring are available in the channel view.

You can modify the scale (from 1/1 200 to 1/45 000) and the grid (each square may represent 25, 50, 100, 250 or 500 meters) of this view.

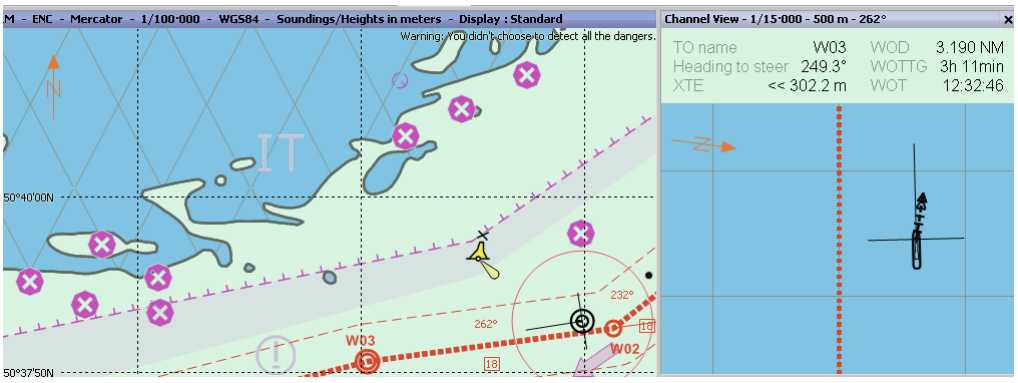

M - ENC - Mercator - 1/100·000 - WGS84 - Soundings/Heights in meters - Display : Standard
Warning: YOU didn't choose to detect all the dangers.
Channel View - 1/15·000 - 500 m - 262°
TO name W03
Heading to steer 249.3°
XTE << 302.2 m
WOD 3.190 NM
WOTTG 3h 11min
WOT 12:32:46
50°40'00N
50°37'50N
W03
W02
232°
262°

Figure 167 - Channel view

Furthermore, an alarm warns you when the distance from your ship to this wheel-over is equal to 2.5 times the length of a square of the grid. For example, if the grid is configured to 100 meters, the alarm will be displayed when approaching the wheel-over by 250 meters.

This view includes the following items:

- **TO name**: destination waypoint name.
- **Heading to steer**: heading to steer to follow the selected route. This value takes into account the drift.
- **XTE**: current cross track error from Own Ship position to the route lane. This value can be preceded by << if the ship must steer to the left to reach the route or >> if the ship must steer to the right.
- **WOD**: wheel over distance from the current Own Ship position to the wheel over line.
- **WOTTG**: wheel over time to go corresponding to WOD and Own Ship SOG.
- **WOT**: UTC date and time of arrival to wheel over line (according UTC, SOG and WOD).

To change the scale or the grid of the view:

Step	Action
1.	In the **View** menu, click **Channel View**.
2.	Right click the channel view. A pop-up menu is displayed that allows you to change the scale or grid.
3.	Select **Scale** or **Grid**, and click your desired value.
4.	End of procedure.

VII.3.10 CHANNELLING

Channelling allows you to assign a display context to the route leg. So you can define specific properties (scale, dedicated windows to display, etc.) for each leg. Channelling is only active in route monitoring mode.

To assign a channeling to a leg:

Step	Action
1.	Define your desired display context for the leg.
2.	Access the waypoint edition dialog box selecting it, right clicking and clicking **Edit Waypoint…**
3.	Select your desired display context in the **Display Context** scrolling list of the *Waypoint Properties* dialog box.
4.	End of procedure.

VII.3.11 IMPORTING/EXPORTING ROUTES

One of Gecdis features consists of importing and exporting, with a hard or removable disk, all user objects created by the user. Another feature enables to export or import routes from streams (COM, NET and FILE).

So in case the user stored routes on his/her GPS, he/she should be able to recover them in the software.

The main benefit of this feature (import/export) is to support communication between several systems (Gecdis → Gecdis, Gecdis → Turbo, etc.).

To import a route via a stream:

Step	Action
1.	You must have previously enabled a stream when configuring the mobiles. If this has not been done yet, click **System**, **Settings**, **I/O and Mobiles** and then **Input/Output Mobile Configuration**. In the dialog box, click the **Add** button, point to **Stream** and click the stream you wish to use (COM if you wish to recover data from your GPS).
2.	After configuring the stream, click **System**, **Import…, User objects**, and then select **Route from NMEA**.
3.	As far as information about routes are not received, the Waiting NMEA sentences warning message is displayed. The import report is displayed into the Report window. So if the import process has failed, you can know why. Finally, the main view is centred on the route you have imported. The import process cannot be carried out towards file streams.
4.	End of procedure.

To export a route:

Step	Action
1.	Select a route that is not currently used and in the object information window, click **Export**.
2.	Select an output stream, i.e. the stream to use to export the route.
3.	Click **OK**.
4.	You can check transmitted data by clicking the magnifying glass icon of the *Stream Configuration* dialog box. Then select **Output** in the contextual menu of the grey window that displays.
5.	End of procedure.

VII.4 Tracks

VII.4.1 STARTING/STOPPING A TRACK

It is possible to start/stop a track for any mobile.

To start/stop the Own Ship's track:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Mobile**, and then click **Start Own Ship Track**.
2.	To stop the track, click **Stop Own Ship Track**.
3.	End of procedure.

To start/stop any mobile's track:

Step	Action
1.	Starting/stoping the track is done by using the toolbar icon, or via the **Mobile** list.
2.	Click **Mobile** and **Open the mobile list…**
3.	In the dialog box that displays, select the ships or fleets for which you want to start a track, and then click **Start**. *The tracks start.*
4.	To stop some of the tracks, or all of them, click **Mobile**, open the list of mobiles, select the mobiles for which you want to stop a track, and then click **Stop**.
5.	End of procedure.

VII.4.2 TRACK TEMPLATES

To configure a track template: In the **System** menu, **Settings**, **Tracks**, and then **Own ship Track recording…**

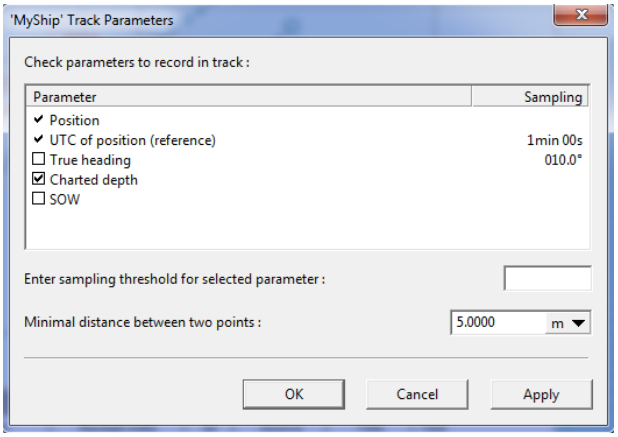


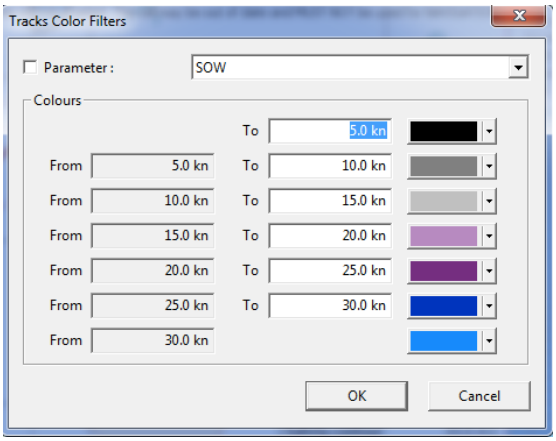
Figure 168 - Track parameters dialog

VII.4.3 TRACK COLOR FILTERS

Color filters allow you to assign colors to scale values, for each possible parameter of a track. The colour of the track changes in the screen with the selected parameter.

TO ASSIGN THE TRACK TO THE COLOUR FILTER OF A PARAMETER, YOU MUST HAVE PREVIOUSLY SAVED THIS PARAMETER FOR THE TRACK TEMPLATE YOU ARE USING.

To configure a color filter:

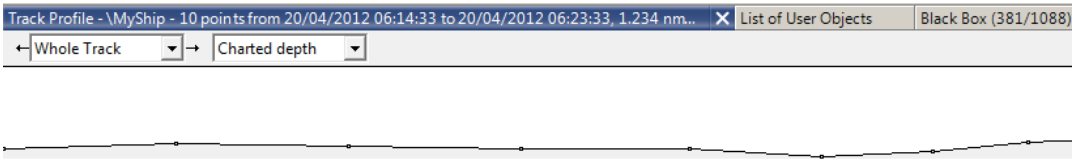
Step	Action
1.	In the **System** menu, click **Settings**, **Tracks** and then **Tracks Color Filters…**
2.	Choose a parameter in the **Parameter** scrolling list.
3.	For each line: • In the **To** field, enter a ending of the end limit of the range. • Select the color that will represent the defined range. 
4.	Once all ranges are configured, repeat the steps for all parameters you want and then click **OK**.
5.	End of procedure.

IN ECDIS MODE, ALL USER OBJECTS ARE DRAWN WITH THE ORANGE COLOR (SEE I.4.2 PAGE 19).

VII.4.4 DISPLAYING THE TRACK PROFILE

The profile of a track gives you the evolution of this track depending on a range or on the evolution of a specific parameter.

To see the profile of a track:

Step	Action
1.	Select the track.
2.	In the context-sensitive buttons, right part of the screen, click the **Profile** button. *The track profile displays in the lower part of the screen. You can now choose to display a specific range or parameter.* 
3.	End of procedure.

Title Bar	Status bar showing the name of the tracked mobile, as well as the creation date of the track.
First Scrolling List	To display only a part of the track. You can either display a distance that ranges from 1 nm to 1000 nm of the track or the whole track. If you select a value that is superior to the length of the track, the whole track is displayed.
Second Scrolling List	This scrolling list allows you to select one of the filters and display the profile of this filter.
The Graph	This graph gives you the profile of the parameter for your desired distance. When you drag the cursor on one of the points represented in this graph, the location to which this location refers in the main view is displayed.

VII.4.5 CHANGING THE TRACK PROPERTIES

Whenever you want, you can modify the track's visual representation.

To change properties of a track:

Step	Action
1.	Select a track and click the **Properties...** context-sensitive button.
2.	In the *Track Properties* dialog box, change, if you want, the line and color and the maximum number of points to display.
3.	When you choose a color, this color is displayed for the half segment of the current track (the current segment is the line that starts at the last point recorded in the track).
4.	End of procedure.

Name	Name of the tracked mobile, and the date of creation of the track.
Line	Type of line for the track. There are 8 types of lines available.
Color	Color of the track. This color is applied only if no track color filter has been assigned to it. **In ECDIS mode, all user objects are drawn with the orange color (see I.4.2 page 19).**
Display at most	The maximum number of points for the track. The track stops if this maximum number is reached.

VII.5 Marks and Events

VII.5.1 CREATING MARKS

In this part you will see how to create a mark and an event. The difference between both of them is that a mark can be inserted anywhere in the main view whereas an event can only be inserted in the current ship's position (events are mainly used when an immediate decision should be taken).

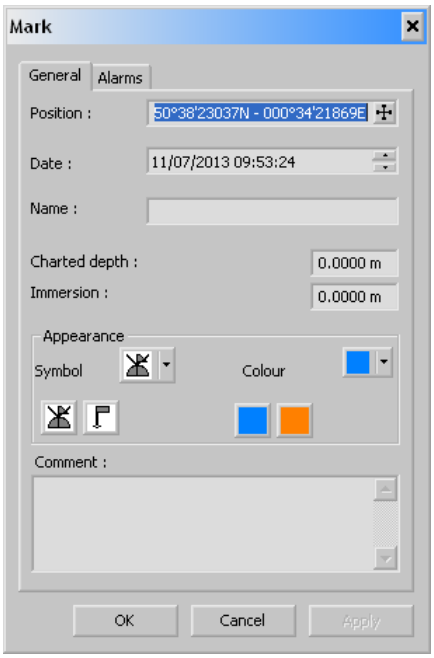
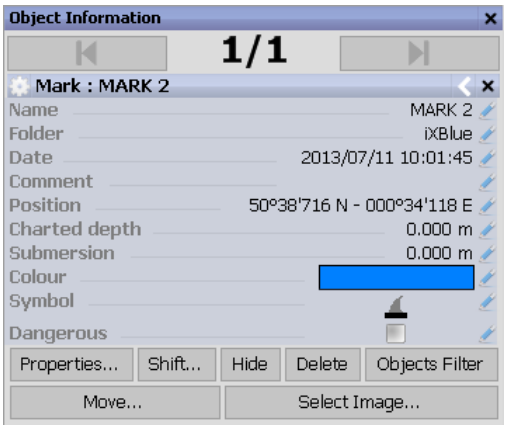


Figure 169 - Mark properties dialog

To create a mark:

Step	Action
1.	Click **User Objects** and then **Create Mark…** in the main view where you want to create your mark.
2.	A dialog box allowing you to configure the mark is displayed. You can define the different parameters of the mark: • **Position** • **Date** • **Name** • **Charted depth** • **Immersion** • **Appearance** defined by a symbol and color **Note:** To improve the repetitive tasks, the last four colors and symbols used are selectable directly. **In ECDIS mode, all user objects are drawn with the orange color (see I.4.2 page 19).** • **Comment** **Note**: The contents of the **Comment** field will be displayed nearby the symbol of the mark.
3.	Once configured the mark, click **OK**.

Step	Action
4.	If you select the mark you have just created, the Object Information window gives you the details of the mark and allows you to edit it with context-sensitive buttons.

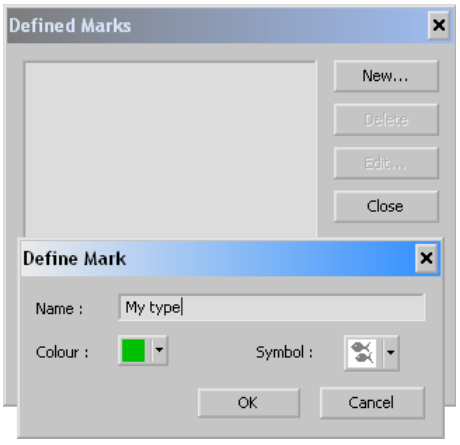


5.	End of procedure.

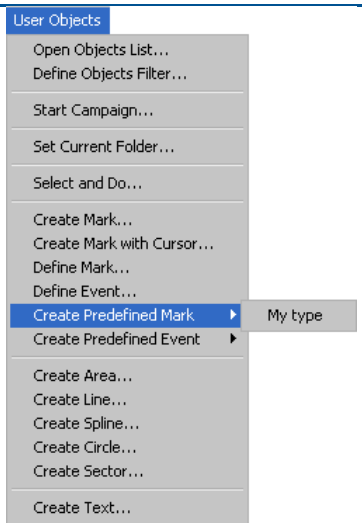
If you know that you may use many times a mark with special characteristics, you can define it so you will not need to create it whenever required.

To define a mark template:

Step	Action
1.	Click **User Objects**, **Marks** and then **Define Marks...**
2.	Click **New...** button.



3.	In the new dialog box, enter a **Name** (compulsory), choose a **Colour** and a **Symbol**, and click **OK**. *The name of the new mark is displayed.*
4.	Click **Close**.
5.	Click **User Objects** and point to **Create Predefined Marks** to display the label of the mark you have just created.

Step	Action
	
6.	To insert the mark, click the name of this template and insert it, clicking wherever in the main view. The mark is automatically selected. You can then use the context-sensitive buttons to manage it.
7.	End of procedure.

VII.5.2 CONFIGURING MARK DISPLAY OPTIONS

By default, when you insert a mark, only its symbol is displayed. You may want to display other elements, like its depth.

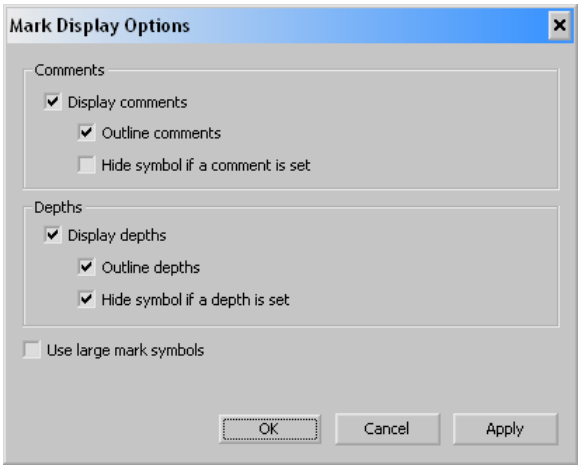


Figure 170 - Mark display options dialog

To configure the mark display options:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Systems**, **Settings**, **User Objects** and **Mark Display Options...**
2.	In the **Comments** area of the *Mark Display Options* dialog box, do one of the following: • Check the **Display comments** box if you want to display comments you may have

Step	Action
	entered while creating a mark, • Check the **Outline comments** box to highlight the mark comments if displayed in the main view, • Check the **Hide symbol if a comment is set** box if you want to hide the symbol for which you have indicated a comment.
3.	In the **Depths** area: • Check the **Display depths** box if you want to display depths you may have entered while creating a mark, • Check the **Outline depths** box to highlight the mark depth if displayed in the main view, • Check the **Hide symbol if a depth is set** box if you want to hide the mark symbol for which you have indicated a depth.
4.	Check the **Use large mark symbols** box if you want to display symbols with double size in the cartographic views.
5.	End of procedure.

IN ECDIS MODE, ALL USER OBJECTS ARE DRAWN WITH THE ORANGE COLOR (SEE SECTION I.4.2 PAGE 19).

VII.6 Areas

An area is a polygon the user can add to symbolise and highlight, on the screen, a part of the chart that is remarkable or dangerous.

Each area can be associated to several characteristics:

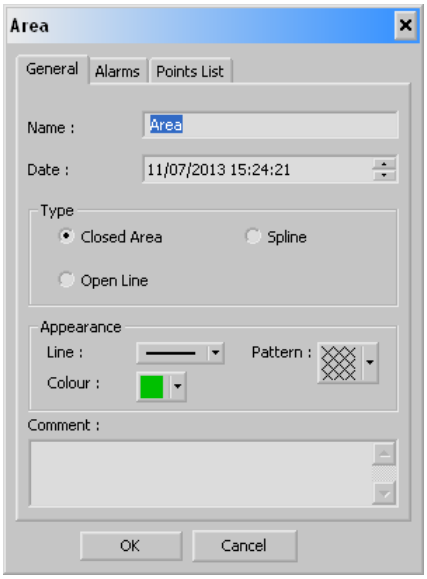
- It can be closed or opened.
- It can have a specific visual representation (line and/or symbol).
- Furthermore, it is possible to configure the area so that an alarm is generated when one or several mobiles (ARPA targets for example) defined by the user enters or quits this area.

Figure 171 - Area alarm

These alarms are:

- **Mobile is in the area**, if the mobile enters the area,
- **Mobile is out of the area**, if the mobile leaves the area.

To create an area:

Step	Action
1.	Click **User Objects**, and then **Create Area...** drag the mouse in the main view clicking each time you want to define the limits of a side of your area.
2.	Right click to end the area creation process.
3.	In the *New Area* dialog box, enter a name for this area in the **Name** field, and a date in the **Date** field: 
4.	Click the **Closed Area** radio button if you want your area to be closed or the **Open Line** radio button if you want your area to be opened.
5.	In the **Appearance** section, choose a **colour**, a **pattern** and a **line** for this area. **Note: In ECDIS mode, all user objects are drawn with the orange color (see I.4.2 page 19).**
6.	Enter, if you want, a **comment** for this area. You will be able to consult this comment in the area's Object Information window if you select this area.
7.	Click the **Alarms** tab. This tab must be filled in a logical way. In the **Send Alarm when** area, do one of the following: • Click **The Own Ship** if you want to send an alarm when the Own Ship crosses the zone. • Click **A mobile in** and select one of the mobile in the scrolling list of this field if you want to send an alarm when a mobile which is not the Own Ship crosses the area. • Click **Any Mobile** if you want to send an alarm whenever a mobile crosses the zone.
8.	Check **Enters** and/or **Is Leaving** if you want to send an alarm when the mobile enters and/or leaves the area.

Step	Action
9.	Click the **Points List** tab. You can insert or delete a point in this tab.
10.	When finished, click **OK**.
11.	End of procedure.

VII.7 Circles and Sectors

The circle functionality enables to insert circular-type areas. Alarms can be assigned to a circle, they are generated whenever a mobile enters or leaves the circle.

The sector (crowns) functionality enables to insert operation areas.

This functionality enables to create four types of objects:

- A crown,
- A sector,
- A circle,
- A sector of circle.

The creation of a sector is performed in 4 steps:

- Step 1: Selecting the centre of the sector,
- Step 2: Defining the exterior radius of the sector,
- Step 3: Defining the first and last angles of the sector,
- Step 4: Defining the radius range.

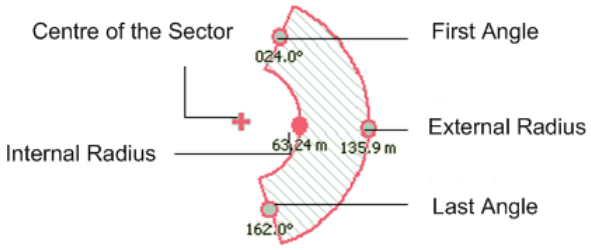


Figure 172 - Example of a Sector

To create a sector:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **User Objects** menu, and **Create Sector…** then click the location in the main view in which you wish to put the centre of the sector.
2.	Drag the mouse to make a circle. As you drag the mouse, sector's radius and angle are displayed.
3.	Click and do one of the following: • For the angle to represent the first angle of the sector, move the mouse clockwise.

Step	Action
	• For the angle to represent the last angle of the sector, move the mouse counter clockwise.
4.	Click once again and drag the mouse to define sector's width.
5.	End of procedure.

To create a circle:

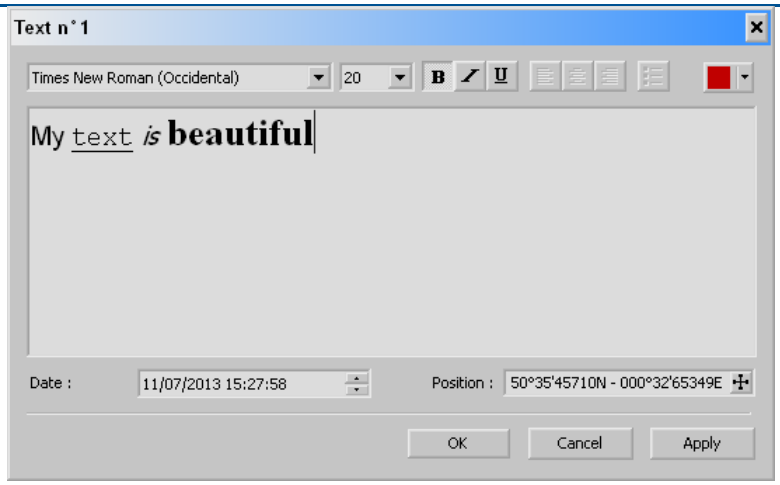
Step	Action
1.	Click the **User Object** menu, and then **Create Circle…** then click in the main view where you want to insert the circle, drag down your mouse to create a circle and then click. *The properties of the circle you have just created are displayed in the* New Circle *dialog box.*
2.	In the **General** tab, enter a name for this circle in the **Name** field, a date in the **Date** field, the position of the centre of the circle and the radius.
3.	Select a **Colour**, a **Pattern** and a **Line**, and if you want, enter a **Comment**.
4.	If you want to assign an alarm, click the **Alarms** tab.
5.	When the circle is defined, click **OK**.
6.	End of procedure.

VII.8 Text

To create a text:

Step	Action
1.	Click **User Objects** menu, and then **Create Text…** and then click in the main view where you want to insert a text.
2.	The *Text* dialog box looks like a typical text editor. In the blank window, enter your text.

Step	Action



3. Format your text with the formatting bar. You can:

   - Change your font,
   - Change the size of your font,
   - Change the general appearance of the font assigning to it the **bold**, *italic*, underlined characteristics or changing its colour,
   - Change the alignment of the font,
   - Insert bullets.

   Note: In ECDIS mode, all user objects are drawn with the orange color (see I.4.2 page 19).

4. Enter a date in the **Date** field and If you want, change the position in the **Position** field.

5. Click **OK**. When you have created a text, you can edit it, shift it, hide it or delete it selecting it and clicking the corresponding right context-sensitive buttons.

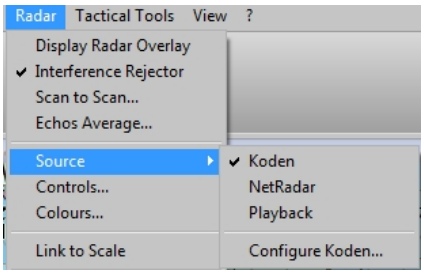
6. End of procedure.

VIII THE RADAR MODULE

VIII.1 Configuring the Radar Source

Radar information can be obtained in several ways:

- Via a digitizer that gives information on a radar overlay,
- Via a file generally used for simulation. This file can be a `.snr` or a `.srd` file.



To configure a radar source:

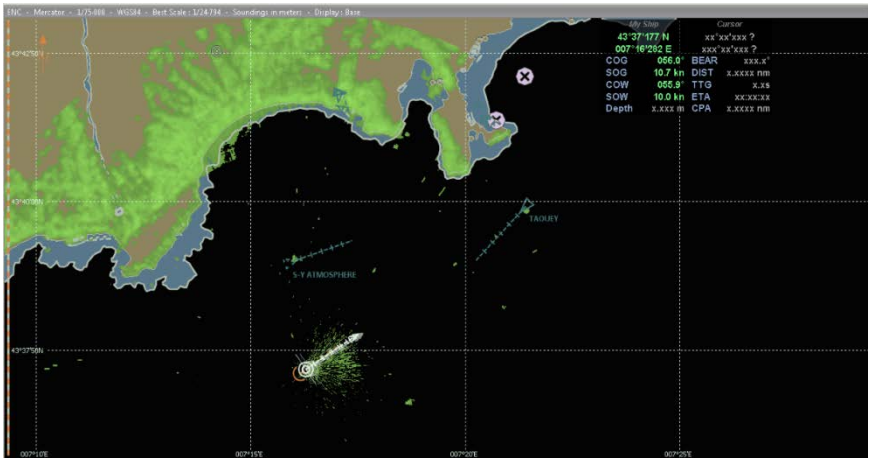
Step	Action
1.	Click the **Radar** menu, point to **Source** and then select your desired source (once selected, the source is checked).
2.	If you have selected **NetRadar**, your machine looks for the radar image digitizer.
3.	End of procedure.

VIII.2 Turning the Radar On/Off

Once configured your radar source, the first thing you must do is to activate it, to turn it on.

To activate the radar:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Radar** menu and then **Display Radar Overlay**.
2.	The radar is activated and displays information on a layer that overlaps other layers.
3.	End of procedure.



To disable the radar: In the **Radar** menu, uncheck **Display Radar Overlay.**

VIII.3 Configuring Information of the Radar Source

To display data provided by a Netradar, you must have previously configured it. This means you must have selected the type of Netradar you are using and filled in the configuration fields.

The NetRadar source source must be configured through the menu **Radar/Source / Configure NetRadar…**

- Main parameters of the **Server** tab

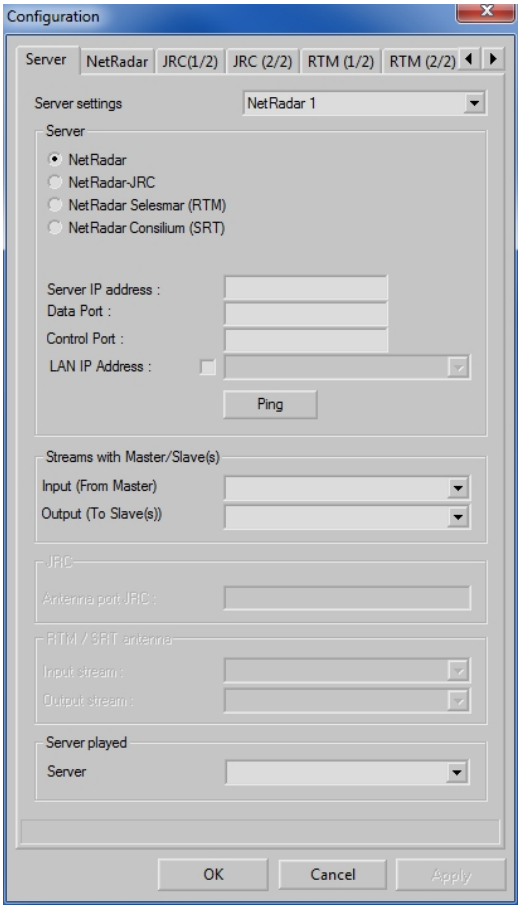


Figure 173 – NetRadar settings, Server tab

Server settings	If several NetRadar boxes are present, allows you to select the NetRadar to configure.
Server IP address	Allows you to configure where to read the radar.
Data Port and Control Port	Port where the data are read(**Data Port** and where the commands are sent (**Control Port**). The values of both fields mus be equal. If the value of the **Data Port** field is false, no radar image is received. If the value of the **Control Port** field is false , no command can be achieved.
Ping	With the **Ping** button, you can validate the connectivity with the radar antenna. **Important** : after an information connection change, you must click on **Apply** button to ping with the new values.
Server played	If several NetRadar boxes have been configured, select here the source of the radar images you want to display.

- Main parameters of the **NetRadar** tab

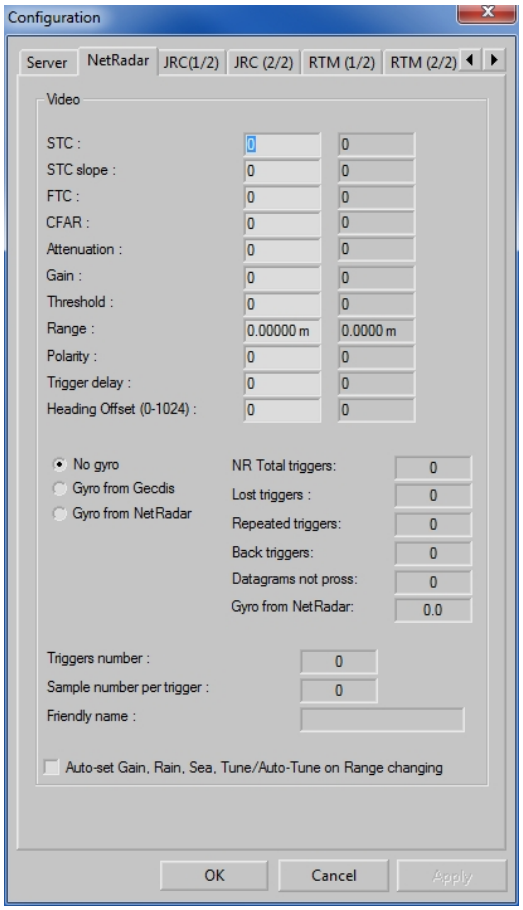
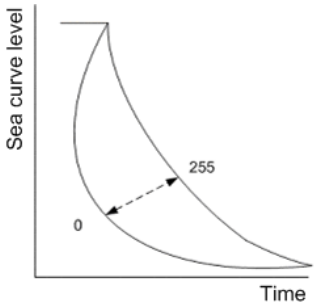


Figure 174 – NetRadar settings, NetRadar tab

In the greyed box, the data are those sent by the selected radar.

STC/ Sea Slope (STC	It modifies the slope of theSTC curve. The bigger the value of this field, the

slope)	more attenuation is performed on a long distance. 
CFAR (Constant False Alarm Rate)	The CFAR processor removes sea and rain clutter from the radar screen for a clear view of targets. The goal of CFAR is to remove the range-related dependence and local clutter background of the radar image and make the probability of a detection (typically measured by a target being brighter than a fixed threshold) equal for all parts of the image.
Range	It gives the distance radar capacities.
Gain	It gives the video gain (signal intensity), which is the amplification given a signal by the receiver. This control can be compared to the volume control on an audio amplifier. The bigger this value the more noise will be displayed. Gain values range from **0** to **127**.
STC (Sensitivity Time Control)	This is a technique for reducing radar receiver gain automatically when receiving echoes or replies from close range (where maximum sensitivity is not generally required), allowing more gain to be applied to data from farther ranges where more sensitivity is desired. This increases the possibility to detect small targets at longer ranges.
FTC	The "rain filtering". Removes the echo from far noise.
Attenuation	It changes the level of attenuation of the video signal before it is sampled. If the radar's video signal is too strong (the image saturates or it is difficult to control the gain), you can set it with this option.
Heading offset	If the head-up orientation of the radar image doesn't correspond to the head-up orientation of the radar it can be adjusted here. This field ranges from 0 to 1024. Finding the optimal correction is a matter of trial and error.
Trigger Delay	If the cable linking the radar transmitter and the display unit is long, you can reduce the waiting period entering a value in this box. Check the radar image to see if it is necessary to give a correction. If the straight lines are not straight, you must enter a correction. Make some tries before finding the best correction.
Option	**Auto-set Gain, Rain, Sea, Tune/Auto Tune on range changing** : if the box is selected, the settings of Gain, Rain Sea are automatic.

- Parameters of the **Radar antenna position** tab

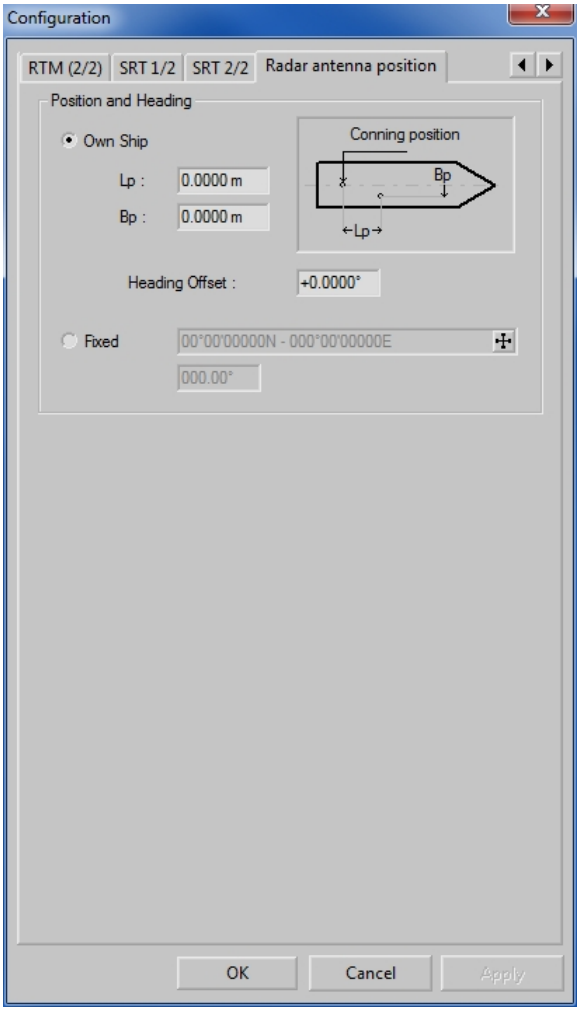
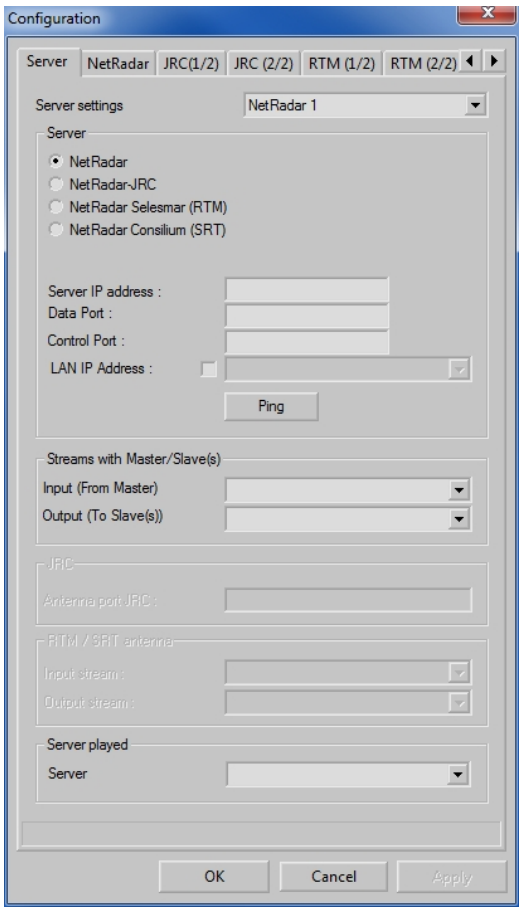
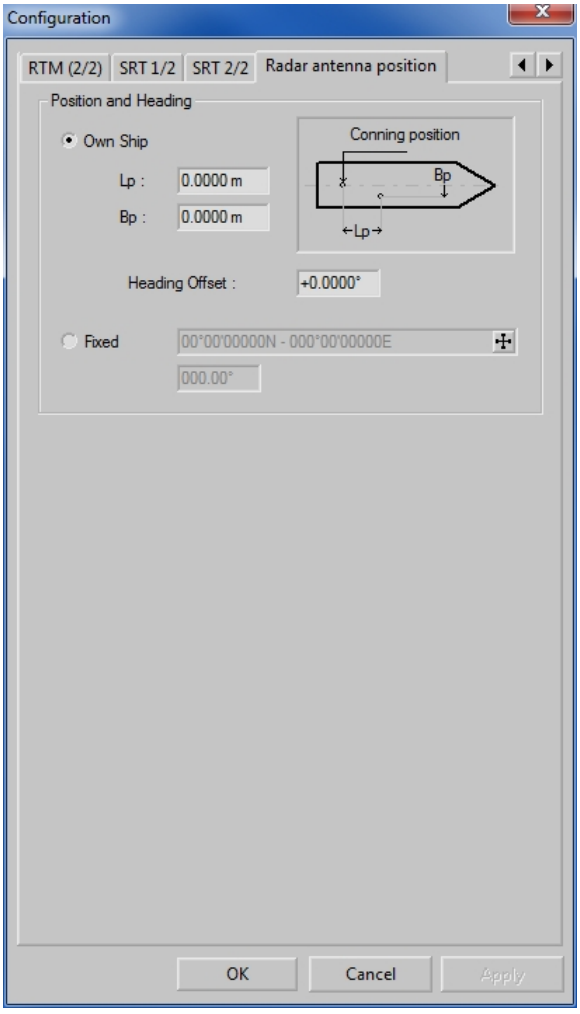


Figure 175 – NetRadar settings, Radar antenna position tab

Own Ship	This radio button indicates that the radar antenna is aboard the own ship and thus moving with it.
Lp	Longitudinal distance between the conning position and the antenna. Value must be negative if the antenna is located backwards the conning position.
Bp	Transverse distance between the conning position and the antenna. Value must be negative if the antenna is located on the left of the conning position.
Heading Offset	Correction of the antenna heading. Value is in degree, from -179° to 180°.
Fixed	This radio button indicates that the radar antenna is at a fixed location that must be specified in the position field ou using button. You must also enter the heading of the radar.

To configure parameters of the Netradar you are using:

Step	Action
1.	In **Radar** menu, select **Source** and click **NetRadar** to select the data provider.
2.	In the **Radar** menu, click **Source** and then **Configure NetRadar**. *The Configuration dialog box appears.* 
3.	In the **Server** tab, select the NetRadar that you want to configure in the Server settings scrolling list.
4.	In **Server** area, • Enter the settings corresponding to the server that you are using (NetRadar type, **IP address/Data Port/Control Port**…) then click on the Ping button to validate the connectivity. *A message displays in the Configuration dialog box.* • If necessary, define the input stream and output streams in the
5.	In **Streams with Master/Slave(s)** area: if necessary, define the input stream and output streams in the dedicated fields.
6.	In **Server played** area, select the netradar (in **Server** field) source of the radar images you want to visualize.

Step	Action
7.	Select the tab corresponding to the NetRadar type that you will visualize and, if necessary, customize the settings (STC, attenuation, gain, range…see the description of the fields in the tables above). *The displayed data correspond to those of the radar source selected in the **Server** field of the **Server** tab.*
8.	Enter the radar antanna location in the Radar antenna position tab using the buttons to move along the various tabs. 
9.	If several Netradar have to be configured, redo steps 3 to 7 for each NetRadar that you will enter in the **Server settings** field.
10.	End of procedure.

VIII.4 Customizing Radar Data Display

VIII.4.1 CHOOSING THE COLORS

Tha radar data display can be configured with several color modes:

- **ECDIS** ( ), display with 2 colors
- **Gradual ECDIS** ( ), display a gradation between both shades of green of ECDIS color scale
- **ARPA** ( ), display of a gradation that you can change as much as you want.
- **HEAT** ( ),display of a range of colors from dark blue to white. Non editable.

For each of these color modes, it is possible to define a **Threshold**, expressed in percentage defining the display level of the radar data. By increasing the threshold value you will display less radar information. The **Gain** allows you to increase the level of the signal emitted by the radar. The **Brightness** allows you to configure the brightness of the radar image.

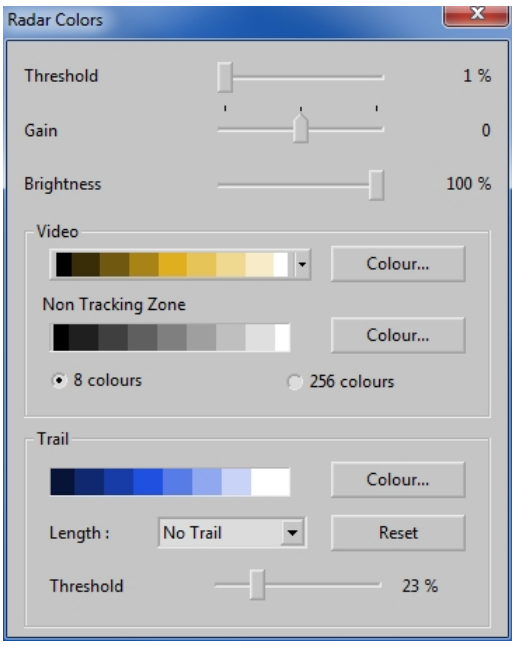


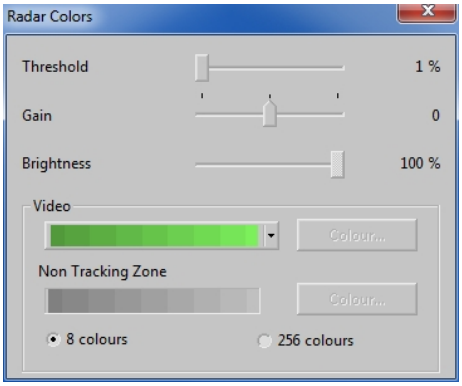
Figure 176 – Configuration of the colors of radar data

With two of the color modes, you can configure the color numbers displayed in the radar image: Gradual ECDIS and ARPA. You can choose to display 8 or 256 colors. If you select **8 colours**, 8 different shades willl be displayed in the radar video. If you select **256 colours**, 256 different shades willl be displayed in the radar video. With the ARPA color mode, the **Colour** buttons are active. With them you can change the colors of the radar video.

In the the Trail area of the Radar Colors dialog box, you can configure the trail of the targets of the radar video. The crolling list of the Length field allows you to define the

length of the trail. Th Threshold moving cursor allows you to favour the trail display with respect to the video display. The more the percentage is increased and the more you will see the trail to the detriment of the video.

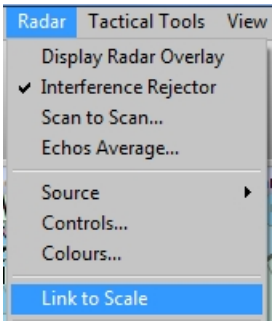
To configure the display of radar data colors:

Step	Action
1.	Click the **Radar** menu and then **Colours…**. *The Radar Colors dialog box opens.* 
2.	Configure the **Threshold**, **Gain** and **Brightness** fields.
3.	Select the Video color scale.
4.	If needed, define other settings then close the dialog box.
5.	End of procedure.

VIII.4.2 ADJUSTING THE DISPLAY IN THE VIEW

Gecdis has an option that you can use each time you modify the radar image range. This option enables to fit the main view display (zoom in or out) to the radar image.

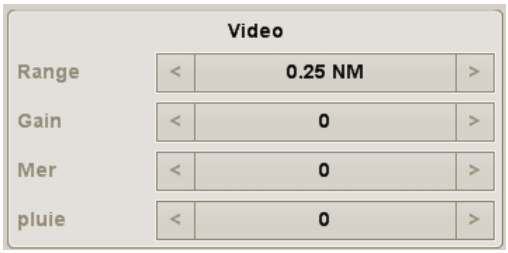
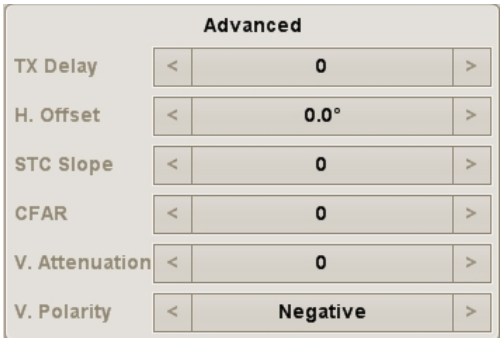
To adjust the main view display: In the **Radar** menu, click **Link to Scale**.



VIII.4.3 CONTROLLING RADAR DATA DISPLAY

You can, at any time, control and change the radar data display.

To change display settings:

Etape	Action
1.	In the **Radar** menu, click **Controls…**. *The* Radar Controls *window displays:*
2.	Click on **Video**. *This gives you access to four parameters:*  These parameters are explained in section VIII.3.
3.	Click on **Advanced**. *This gives you access to sixparameters:*  These parameters are explained in section VIII.3.
4.	If necessary, modify the displayed parameters buttons.
5.	Fin de procédure.

VIII.4.4 OPTIMIZING THE RADAR VIDEO DISPLAY

Several ways exist to improve the radar video display.

- **Interference rejector**: Mutual radar interference may occur in the vicinity of another radar. It is seen on the screen as a number of bright spikes in the form of curved

spoke-like dotted lines extending from the center to the edge of the picture. This type of interference can be reduced by activating the **Interference Rejector**.

- **Scan to scan**: This option enables to improve the video display and decrease the noise by comparing the display of previous scans (up to 5 scans) and to display the only data that is persistent from a scan to another until the current scan. SC/SC: Number of scan to take into account for the display.
- **Echos average**: This option enables to improve the video display and decrease the noise by averaging the preceding scans (up to 3 scans) and the current scan.

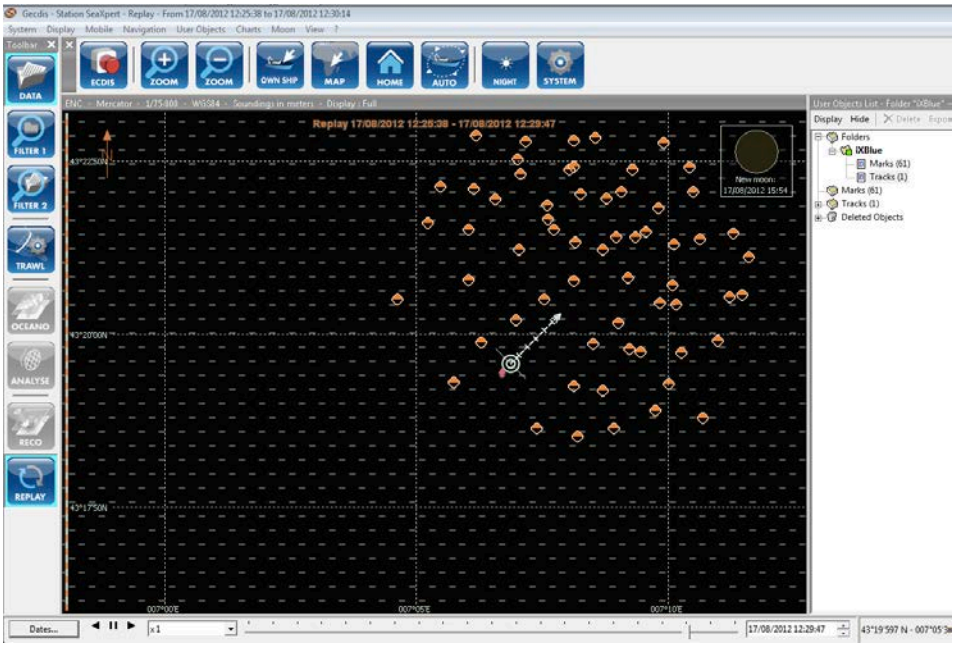
IX REPLAY MODULE

Replay module allows users to play back and thus view mobiles' tracks. Once these tracks are stopped and stored in Gecdis user database, you can play back the routes of the different mobiles in order, for example, to proceed to analyses.

Launching the replay module opens another Gecdis application on the second screen. Since this occurrence of the application is used by the replay mode, some of the menus (such as, for example, those that are used to create user objects (Library menu), or manage the mobiles (Mobiles menu) are greyed. On the other hand, the commands to adjust the display scale and those to centre the main view remain available. The **Replay** menu includes 3 additional commands.

To recover a normal use of Gecdis application, it is highly recommended to quit the replay mode by closing the second occurrence.

IX.1 Configuring/Launching the Replay Module



The replay module uses the tracks previously created via the **User Objects** menu.

So, before using the replay module, check that the user database containing the tracks you want to use is well loaded. However, note that if you have not changed the database since the tracks record, there is no need to check the database.

When launching the replay mode, you must also enter the period to take into account by the replay mode. You can't enter a start date superior to the end date.

To launch the replay mode:

Step	Action
1.	In the **View** menu, click **Replay**.
2.	Configure the replay mode speed and start it by clicking .
3.	You can, at any time, pause the replay by clicking ., or interrupt it by clicking .
4.	End of procedure.

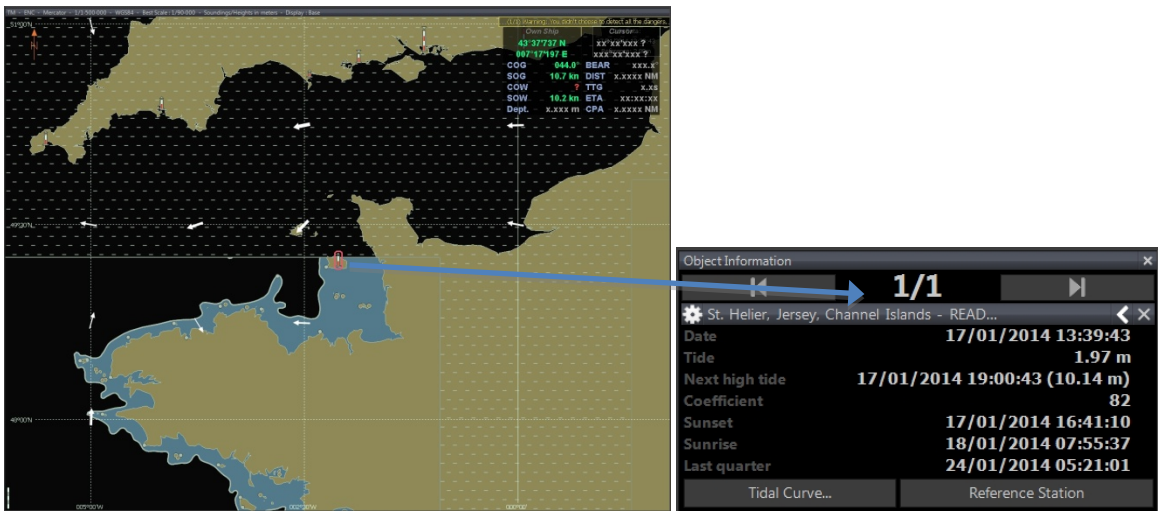
X TIDE MODULE

X.1 Consulting Tidal Gauges and Tidal Streams

Gecdis allows you to display tidal gauges and tidal streams. When selecting a tidal gauge or a tidal stream of the chart, some information is displayed in the Object information window.

When you select a tidal gauge, you are given the following information:

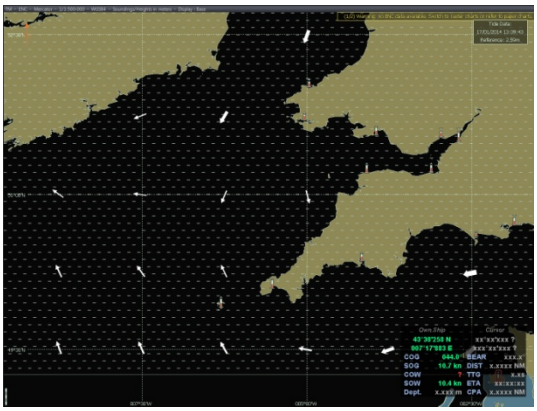
- The predicted date
- The tide (in meters)
- The next high tide (its date and time plus its height)
- The next low tide (its date and time plus its height)
- The coefficient, for a French harbour
- The next sunset
- The next sunrise
- The next quarter plus its date



When you select a tidal stream, a pop-up window is displayed giving you the speed and heading of the tidal stream.

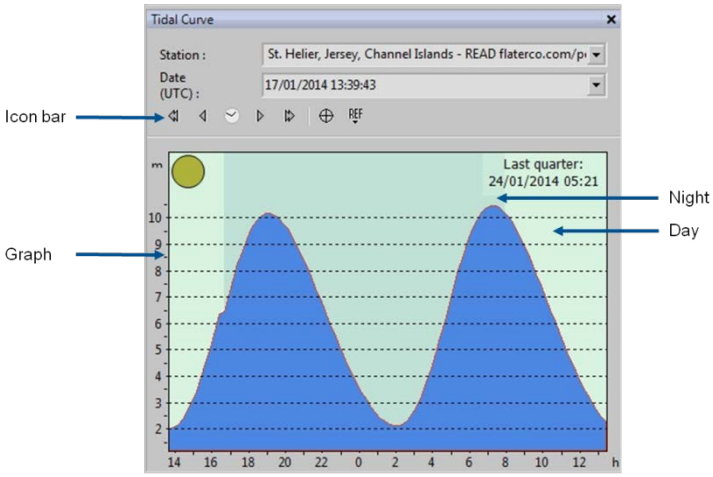
Be careful!

Tide data is commercial data not included by default when purchasing Gecdis.



X.2 Tidal curves

Tidal Curve option allows you to display the evolution of the tidal gauges in a specific time for a specific place. The **Tidal Curve** window will allow you to see the evolution of the tide gauges in many harbours all around the world.



Station: name of the station for which you consult data. More than 10 000 stations are listed.

Date (UTC): date of consultation of the tidal gauge. The date that is written corresponds to the beginning of the tidal curve.

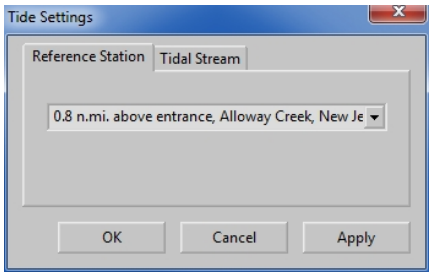
Icon bar: The icon bar allows you to change the date and time of the consultation of the station height of tide.

Graph: The graph is represented with two axes. The horizontal axis represents the time and the vertical axis represents the height of tide. The dark part represents the night period and the light part represents the day, which is the period from the sunset to the sunrise.

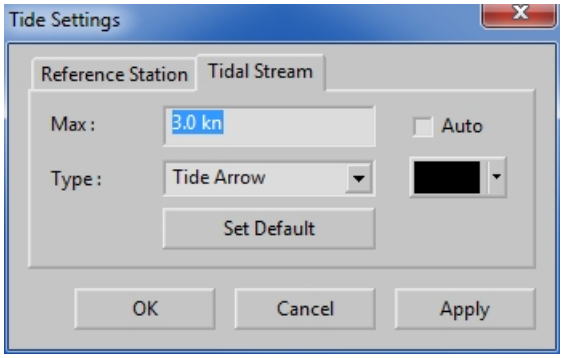
To configure a tidal curve:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Tide** and **Display Tide Gauge** to display the tide gauges in the main view.
2.	Display the **Tidal Curve** window doing one of the following: • Click **Tide** and **Tidal Curve…** • Select a tide gauge and then click the **Tidal Curve** context-sensitive button.
3.	In the **Station** scrolling list of the **Tidal Curve** window, do one of the following: • Click inside the field and enter your desired place. As you type the name you will see the list scrolling. • Scroll the list to select the place the tide gauges of which you want to see the evolution.
4.	In the **Date (UTC)** field, change the date and time field for which you want to see the tidal gauges doing one of the following: • With the left and right arrow keys, select information of the field and manually change the date pressing the up and down arrow keys. • Click the arrow of the date field, optionally change the forecasting month with the side arrows of the calendar and click the day of the selected month. • Enter directly a date with the keyboard.
5.	Click to centre the main view on the gauge of the station you have selected.
6.	When you drag the trackball in the tidal curve, the height of the tidal gauge and the time for this height are indicated.
7.	End of procedure.

X.3 Configuring the Tidal Stream Display

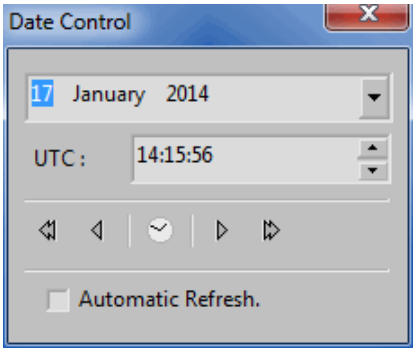


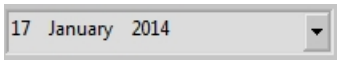
To configure the tidal stream display:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Tide** and then **Settings...**
2.	Choose **Tidal Stream** tab: 
3.	In the **Max** field, enter the value you want to be considered as the higher tidal stream for the tidal stream arrow display. For example, if you enter `3.0`, the largest arrow available will represent 3.0 kn. If there is a tidal stream superior to 3 kn in the main view, this field is no longer taken into account and the highest value is assigned to the largest arrow.
4.	You can click **Auto** if you want the arrow width to be calculated according to the streams visible on the main view. The largest value is assigned to the largest arrow of the main view.
5.	In the **Type** scrolling list, select your desired display for your desired display for the tidal stream and choose a colour in the Colour field.
6.	When finished, click **OK** (**Set Default** allows you to go back to the default values).
7.	End of procedure.

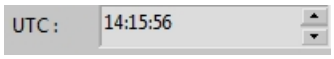
X.4 Control of tidal stream date

The date control allows you to control the date that is taken into account to display the tidal stream and tide gauge on the screen. So when this date is modified the arrows and gauges used to define the tidal stream and tidal gauge change accordingly.





date specified for the tidal stream display.



UTC specified for the tidal stream display.

To display information one hour before the current displayed date.

To display information 15 minutes before the current displayed date.

To reset the date and time. When you click this icon, the system date and time are displayed.

To display information 15 minutes after the current displayed date.

To display information one hour after the current displayed date.

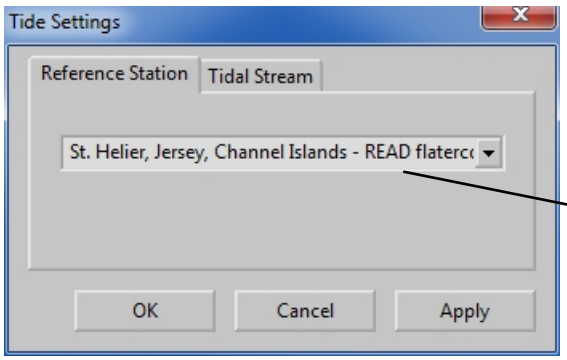
Automatic Refresh.

When checked, the tidal streams and/or tide gauges of the main view are refreshed with 15-minute steps.

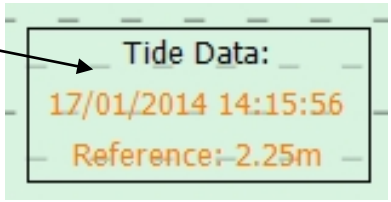
To configure the date:

Step	Action
1.	Centre the main view where you want to observe tide gauges or tidal streams.
2.	Click **Tide** and then **Display Tide Gauge** to display the tide gauges and/or **Display Tidal Stream** to display the tidal streams.
3.	Click **Tide** and then **Date Control…..**
4.	In the **Date Control** dialog box, you can change the date of the forecast doing one of the following: • With the left and right arrow keys, move into the date field and change manually the date pressing the up and down arrow keys. • Click the arrow of the date field, optionally change the forecasting month with the side arrow of the calendar displaying and click the date of the selected month. • Enter directly a date with the keyboard
5.	Change the **UTC** doing one of the following: • In the icon bar below the **UTC** field, click the two far-right and far-left icons to change the time depending on your desired schedule. You can click the middle icon to enter the system time. • Enter with the keyboard a UTC in the **UTC** field. • Change the UTC clicking the hour, minutes or seconds and clicking the side arrows of this field.
6.	Option: check the **Automatic Refresh.** box if you want the tidal streams to be refreshed automatically in the main view. **You will no longer be able to** change **the date**.
7.	End of procedure.

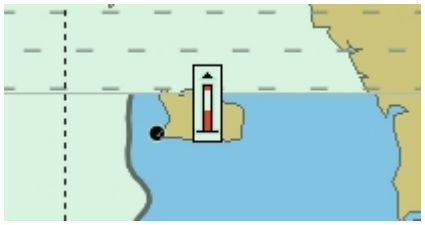
X.5 Reference Station



You can also set a reference station to have a reference tide displayed on map.



Note: If the tide date is not synchronized with current time, data will be displayed in colour.

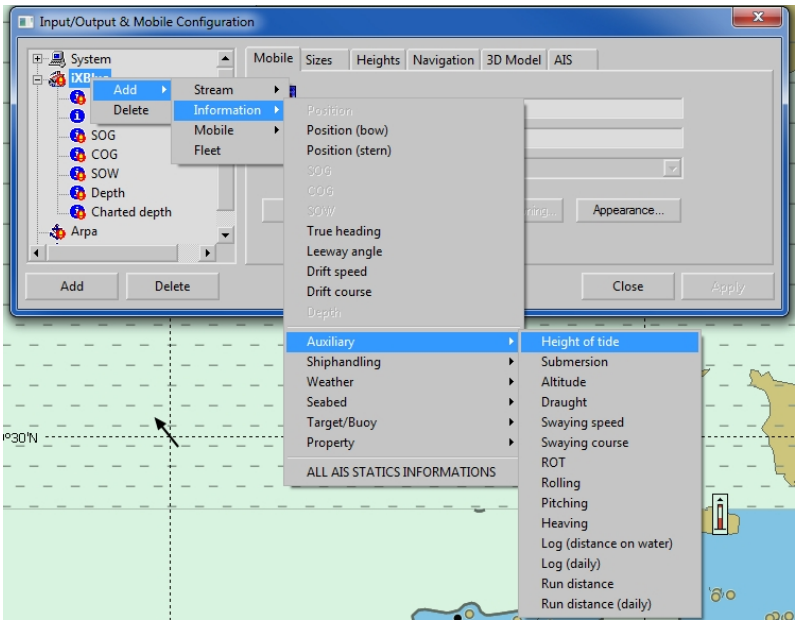


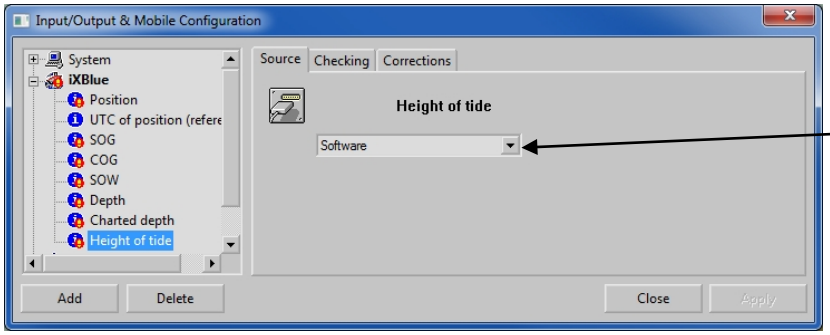
The reference station choosen will be highlighted in white.

This reference station can then be used to set the "Height of Tide" information on your ship, if no commercial data are available on your area.

X.6 Ship 'Height of Tide' information

"Height of Tide" information can be added on your ship through IO configuration:
[Right Click on your ship \ Add \Information…]





Choose **Software** if you want **Height of tide** automatically set with your commercial data.

Important: If no commercial data is available for your area, tide of reference station will be used.

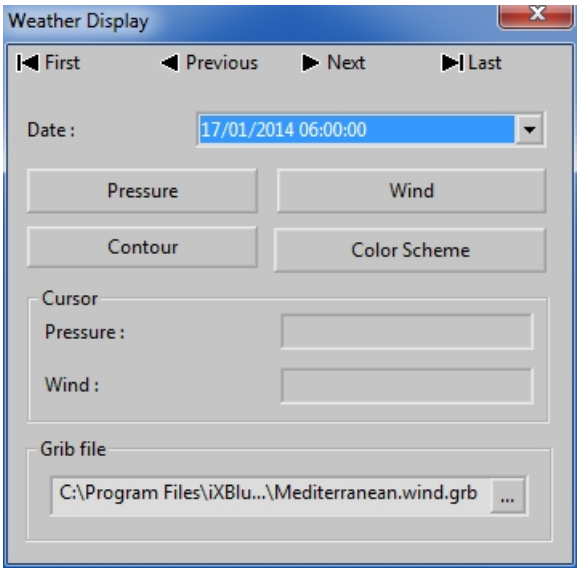
XI WEATHER MODULE

The weather module is a set of tools required to define weather parameters and display weather data provided by different data files.

Use this module to select different weather parameters under the form of coloured areas or vectors.

XI.1 Data Download

The import of weather data generates GRIB files (.grb).



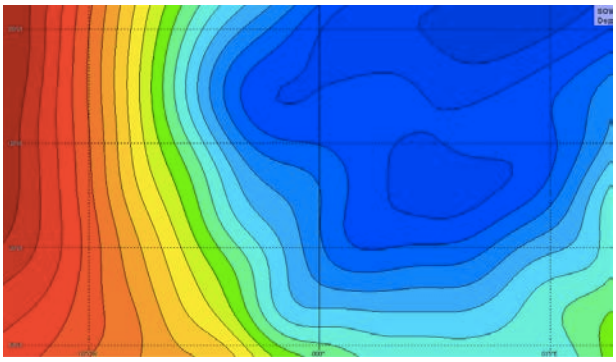
To import a file:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Weather** and then **Weather Display…**
2.	In the **Grib** file of the **Weather Display** dialog box, enter the path to the file to import.
3.	End of procedure.

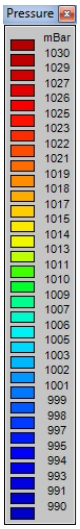
XI.2 Pressure

The Grib option enables to display pressure information. This data is available via weather data files. Once selected, received data is analyzed and displayed in Gecdis.

The visual representation is as follows:



You can also display the isolines and the legend.



To display pressure data:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Weather** and then **Weather Display…**
2.	Select **Pressure**.
3.	End of procedure.

To display pressure isolines:

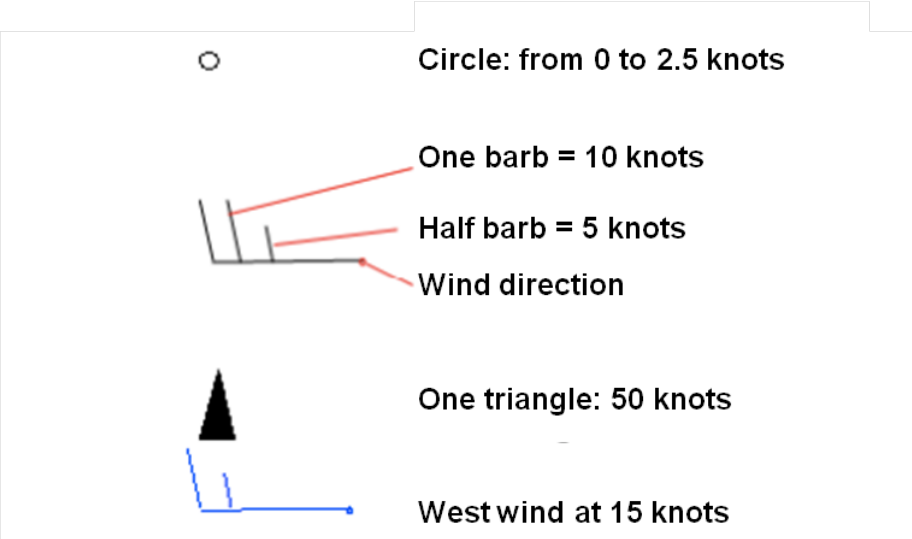
Step	Action
1.	Click **Weather** and then **Weather Display…**
2.	Click **Contour**.
3.	End of procedure.

To display the legend:

Step	Action
1.	Click **Weather** and then **Weather Display…**
2.	Click **Color Scheme**.
3.	End of procedure.

XI.3 Wind

The Grib option enables to display wind information. This data is available via weather data files. Once selected, received data is analyzed and displayed in Gecdis.
The visual representation is as follows:



To display wind information:

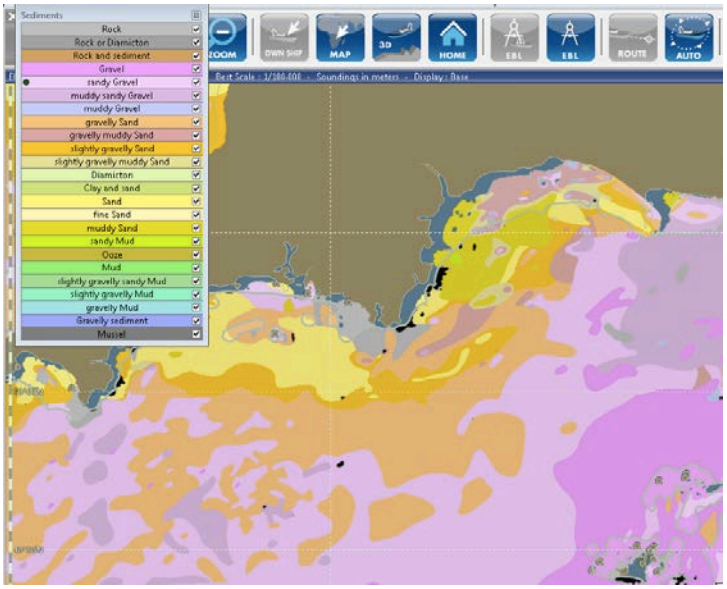
Step	Action
1.	Click **Weather** and then **Weather Display…**
2.	Click **Wind**.
3.	End of procedure.

XII SEDIMENTS MODULE

The Sediments module has been designed to display or hide sedimentary zones (silt, sand, rock, gravel etc.) according to data from official maps or data acquired from the sounder you are using. This data can be displayed in the main 2D view as well as in the 3D view.

XII.1 Display

Sediments are displayed on the map in transparence.



To display sediment data: Click **Sediments**, and **Show official Sediments** if you have sediment charts.

To display data records:

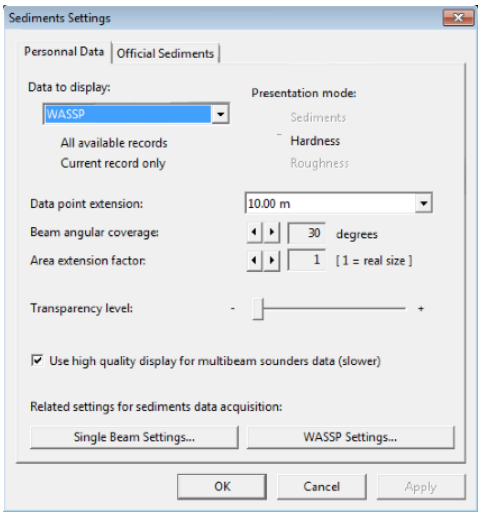
Step	Action
1.	In the **Sediments** menu, click **Show All Available Records**. This action enables to display all your records.
2.	Click **Sediments** and then **Show Current Record Only** if you want to display only the current record.
3.	End of procedure.

XII.2 Configuration

There are two types of sediment data:

- Personnal data
- Official sediments

Personnal data includes data provided by a sensor such as WASSP, SeaScan, Roxan, etc.:



To configure the display of sediment data provided by a sensor:

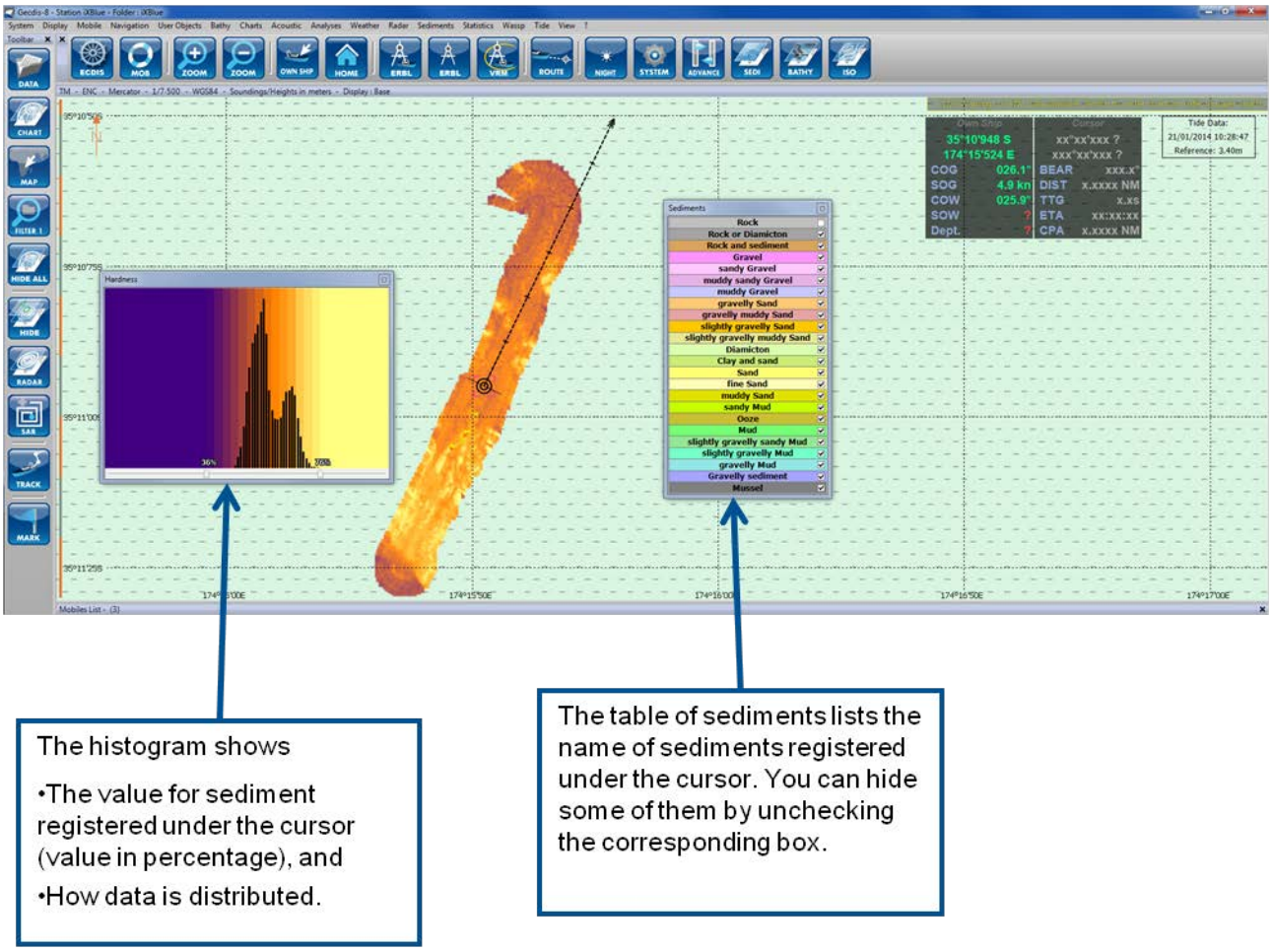
Step	Action
1.	In **Sediments** menu, click **Settings…**
2.	In the **Personal Data** tab, click **Data to display** and select your sensor.
3.	According to the selected sensor, the visual representation options may vary (Sediments, Hardness and Roughness).
4.	Then select the data point extension, the beam angular coverage, the area extension factor, and the transparency level.
5.	End of procedure.

To configure the acquisition of sediment data when using a sensor:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Sediments** menu, click **Settings…**
2.	In the **Personal Data** tab, click **Single Beam Settings…** (if your sensor = single beam) or **WASSP Settings** (if your sensor = WASSP sensor).
3.	In case of Single Beam: • Select the ship on which the sensor is installed. • Then select the flow. • And then select the type of sentence.
4.	In case of WASSP: • In the **Databases** tab, check **Real time recording database**.

Step	Action
	• In the **Data** tab, select the WASSP output stream. • Check the options you want to apply.
5.	End of procedure.

However official sediments are sediment databases. Importing these databases is done directly from the source folder. The access path to this folder is the following:
…`\iXBlue\SeaXpert\IXMSedi`



To display the histogram: In the **Sediments** menu, select one of the histograms.

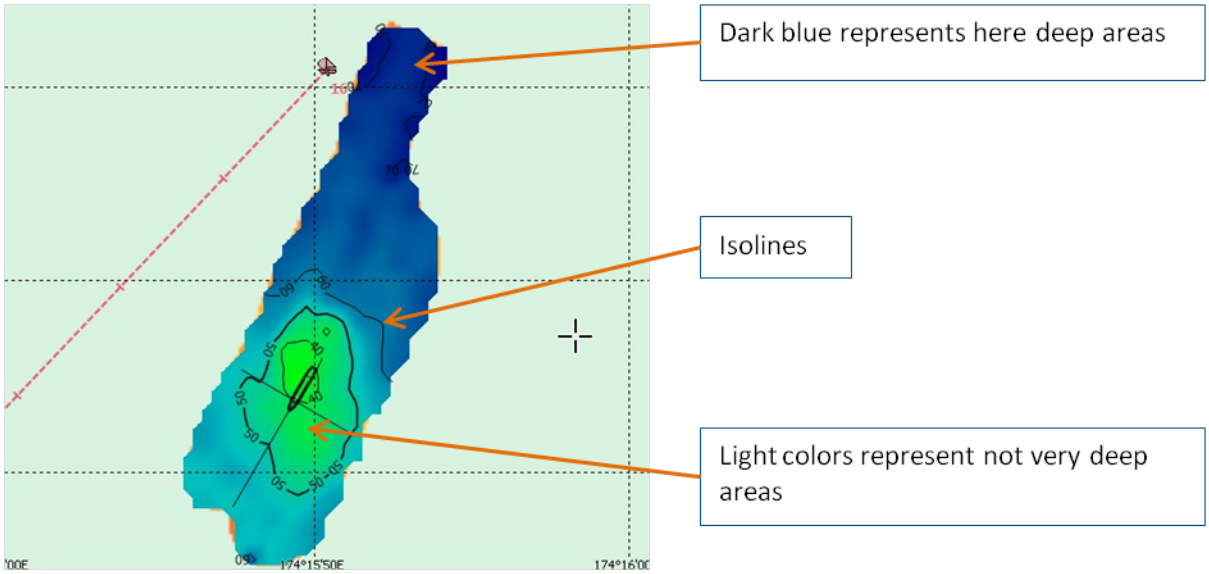
To display the table of sediments: In the **Sediments** menu, click **Sediments Table**.

XIII BATHYMETRY MODULE

SeaXpert bathymetry module is used to represent underwater topography on the chart. Two types of visual representation are available:

- **Isolines** that are contour lines that join points of equal elevation, given by sounding lines. The application allows you to configure max and min values of the sounding lines.
- **Colored surface** that is used to represent the sensors by a colored texture ranging from green for less deep depths, to blue for the deepest depths. Display this surface can appear opaque or transparent to see chart and user data.

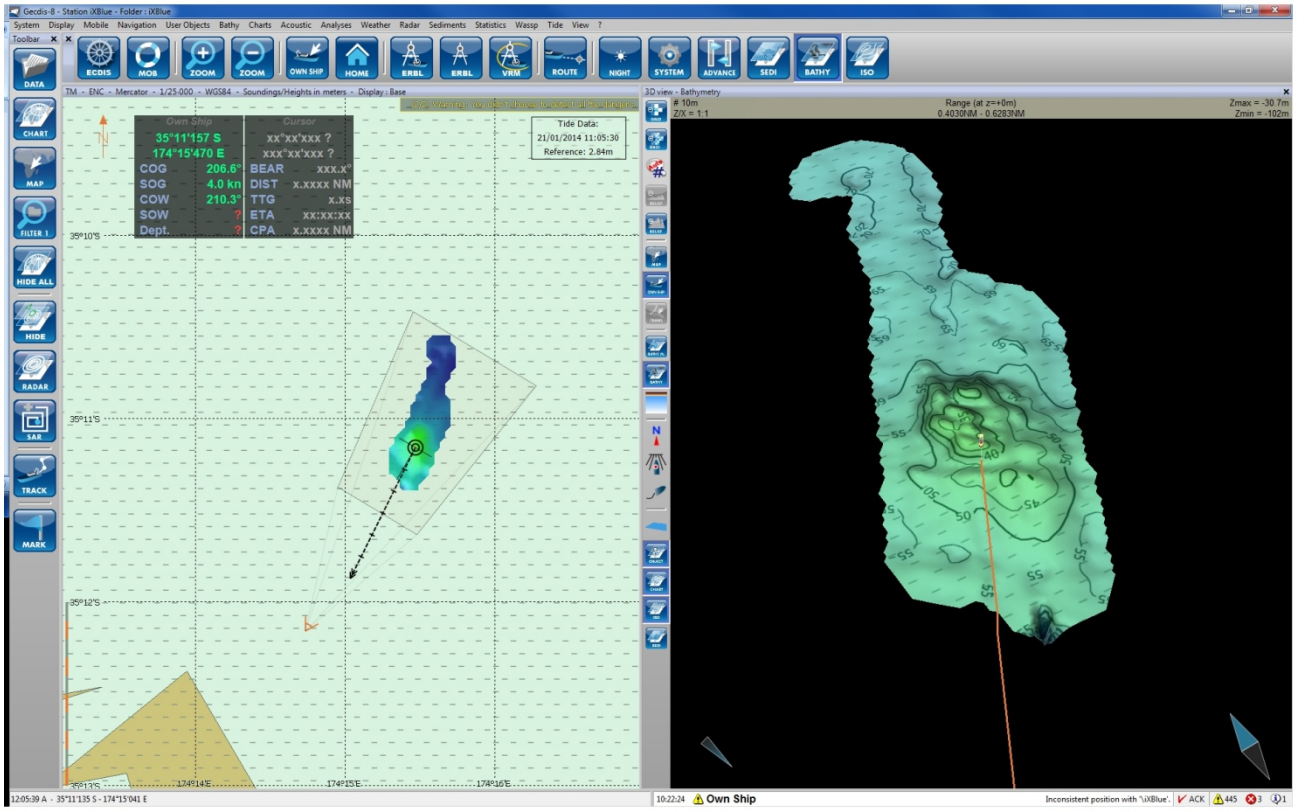
On the contrary to isolines, this representation of bathymetry can be used to represent areas all over the globe if you have the corresponding data files.



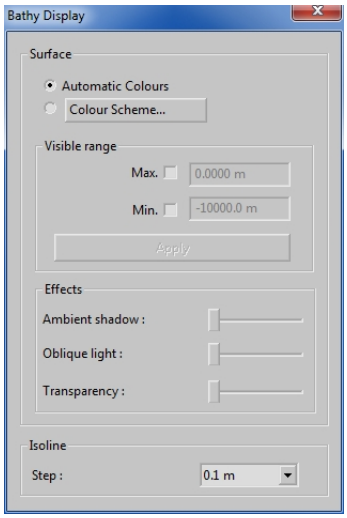
XIII.1 Display Configuration

SeaXpert enables to customize the visual representation of bathymetry. Therefore you can:

- Change the color code.
- Define the area's boundaries to display by entering the min and max depths.
- Add effects: shadow, light and transparency.
- Configure the value of two isolines.



The window dedicated to display customization is as follows:



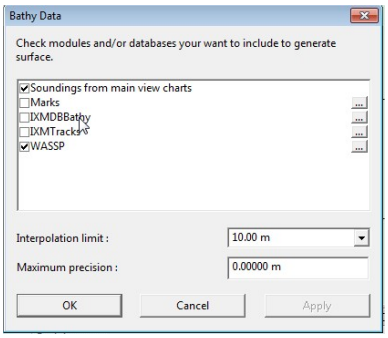
XIII.2 Bathymetry Data to Display

Choosing the bathymetry data to display is done via the **Bathy Data** dialog box. You select the modules or the databases that are to be taken into account to generate the shape of the seabed surface.

5 modules are available to get bathymetry data:

- **Chart sounding**: seabed shape is defined with information provided by the ship's sounding line.
- **Marks**: seabed shape is defined with information provided by the marks entered by the user.
- **Database bathy**: seabed shape is defined with information provided by SeaXpert bathymetry database.
- **Tracks**: seabed shape is defined with information provided by SeaXpert tracks database.
- **WASSP**: seabed shape is defined with information provided by multibeam sounding line.

Here is an example of **Bathy Data** dialog box.



To configure the reception of bathymetry data:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Bathy** menu, select **Bathy Data…**
2.	The *Bathy Data* dialog box displays, so you can choose the provider of bathymetry data.
3.	You can also fix the limit of interpolation and the maximum precision.
4.	End of procedure.

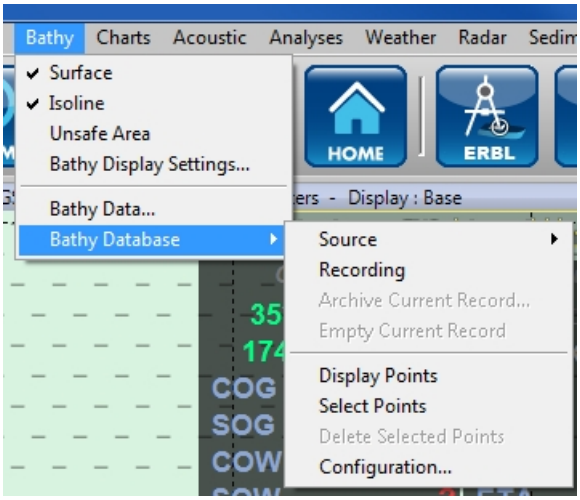
XIII.3 Database

Bathymetry visual representation done with colored surfaces uses information provided by user databases:

- User databases gather all sounding points acquired by your devices. You can thus create your own databases. Note that a database requires at least one sounding point to be created.

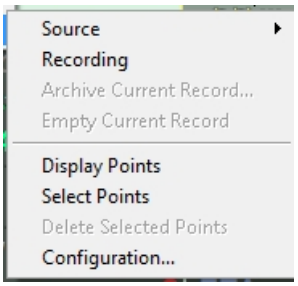
- Commercial databases are used to display existing bathymetry data, i.e. acquired sounding points.

Both types of databases can be used as bathymetry data providers for 2D and 3D display.
You can choose to take into account or not the sounding points of each database.
The **Database** configuration window is the following:



Source: to choose the data source for the recording (in many cases this source will be your ship).
Recording: to launch the recording of bathymetry data.
Archive Current Record: to record all acquired bathymetry data in one database.
Empty Current Record: to delete all acquired points. Be careful the operation is irreversible!
Display Points: to display points acquired during a recording operation.
Select Points: to select bathymetry measuring points acquired during the recording operation.
Delete Selected Points: once selected you can delete these points. This option is very useful to delete absurd values.
Configuration: to select the data to display. There are two types of data: data acquired in real time and data saved in a database.

To start recording bathymetry data:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Bathy** menu, select **Bathy database**: 
2.	You can select the data provider in the **Source** menu.
3.	To start recording, click **Recording**. The recording process starts immediately. To stop the recording process, check again Recording. This unchecks the option. • Once your recording is done, save it with the **Archive Current Record** button. • If you are not satisfied by the record, you can delete it by clicking the **Empty Current Record** button.
4.	End of procedure.

To modify the record (i.e. deleting some of the acquired points):

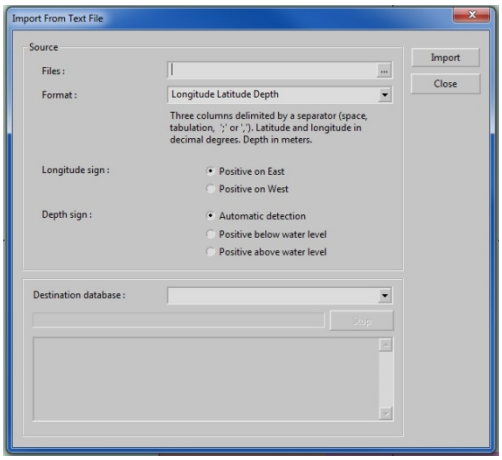
Step	Action
1.	In the **Bathy** menu, select **Bathy Database** and then **Display Points**.
2.	Once all the points are displayed, click **Select Points** in order to check those to delete.
3.	Once the points are selected, click **Delete Selected Points**.
4.	End of procedure.

To configure bathymetry data to display:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Bathy** menu, select **Bathy Database** and then **Configuration…** and check the options to display.
2.	Click **OK**
3.	End of procedure.

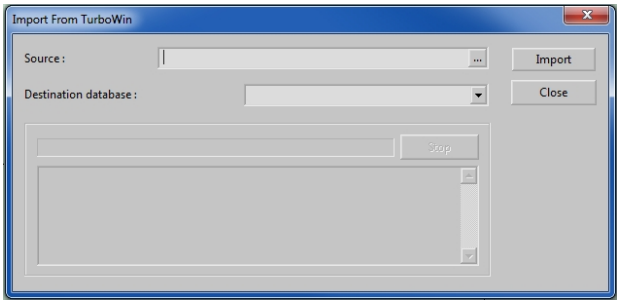
To import bathymetry data:

Step	Action
1.	In TEXT format:



- In the **System** menu, click **Import** and then **Bathy Data**.
- Click **Import From Text File…**

2.	In Turbo format



- In the **System** menu, click **Import** and then **Bathy Data.**
- Click **Import From TurboWin...**

3.	End of procedure.

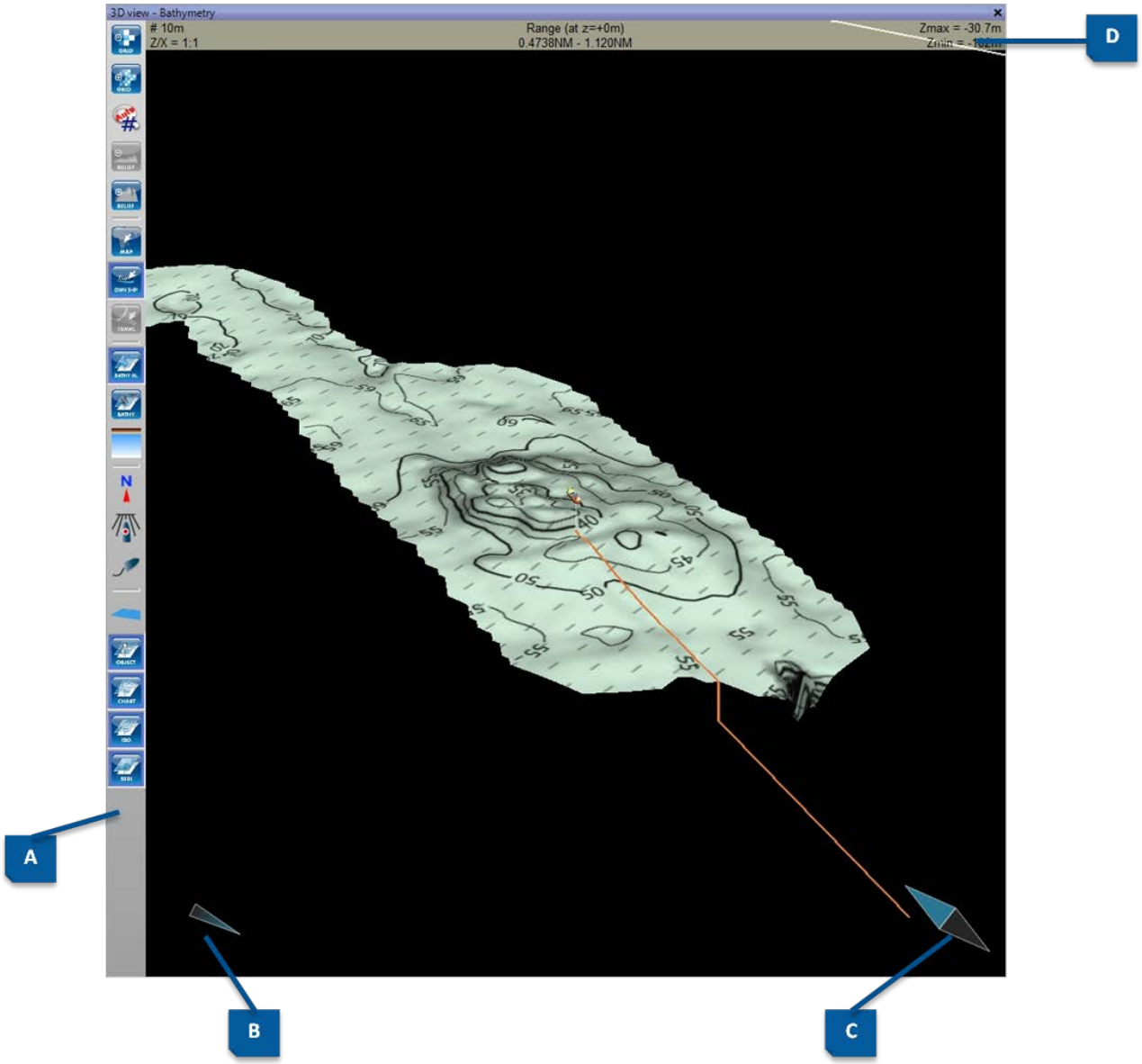
To visualize the bathymetry data you have imported: perform the procedure described in section XIII.2 to activate the database and then the procedure to configure the bathymetry data to display (see above).

XIV 3D VIEW

In SeaXpert, the 3D view is a representation of the screen taking into account depth values.

3D view representation lies on all available depth spots in the chart given by sensors, marks and tracks for which a depth sensor must have been defined.

XIV.1 Representation of 3D View



Area	Explanations
A	Toolbar dedicated to the 3D view
B	The elevation gives the viewing angle of the camera compared to the horizontal.
C	The orientation is a compass giving the chart orientation. The blue side of this compass stands for the geographical north.

	Note that when the 3D viewing angle is located under water, orientation changes by 180°, in such a way that North and South are reversed.
D	Information bar summing up the selected parameters. You can choose to display information or not. To do so, use the **3D View Configuration** dialog box. Displayed information is: • Z/X = vertical exageration • Canvas grid resolution that determines the accuracy of the representation • Zoom: option dedicated to the 3D view. • Orientation in ° • Elevation: shows camera angle between its direction and the horizontal axis. • Z Max: maximum depth displayed in the 3D view. A positive value is a value above 0. • Z Min: minimum depth displayed in the 3D view

XIV.2 3D Tools

This dedicated 3D toolbar cannot be configured.

Table 2 - 3D toolbar description

Button	Explanation
   	Canevas grid resolution determines the accuracy of the representation. • The lower the value is, the less accurate the bathymetry representation is • The higher the value is, the more accurate the bathymetry representation is • Automatic mode is a mode that adapts the canevas automatically acconding to the geographic area covered by the camera's vision. The more you zoom, the better the canevas grid is
 	Vertical exaggeration enables to increase or decrease the vertical scale compared to the horizontal scale
	3D displays the 2D general view
	3D is centered on the boat
	3D is centered on the trawler

	Monochrome representation of the bathy surface
	Default color of the bathy surface
	Color of the surface with the default scheme
	3D is positioned towards the north
	3D is positioned according to the ship's heading
	Visualization of the 3D from above
	Display of water surface (level 0)
	Display (or not) of objects layers
	Display of the chart layer
	Display of the isolines
	Display of the sediments

XV WASSP

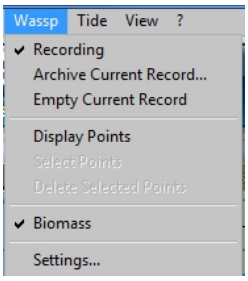
XV.1 Introduction

The WASSP module is able to record seabed hardness (as well as bathymetry) and provides a more accurate resolution of the bathymetry than the one gotten with sensors of monobeam sounders (grids with sub-metric resolution). SeaXpert WASSP module is totally dedicated to Wassp data and cannot record any other data (as for example, manual or chart points).

The WASSP module offers the following functionalities:

- Acquisition and storage of bathymetry and hardness data provided by SMF Wassp.
- Provides bathymetry data for bathymetry and 3D modules.
- Provides hardness data for sediment modules.
- Import/export Wassp database.
- Deletes points from the database by a simple geographical selection.

You can find the module's tools in the **Wassp** menu.



The acquisition of data from the Wassp program is carried out using a TCP stream. Therefore Wassp owner software (server) and SeaXpert must be properly configured.

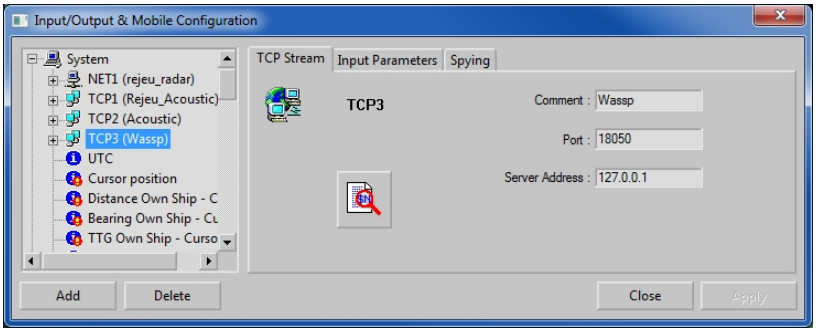
XV.2 Configuring and Using WASSP with SeaXpert

XV.2.1 CREATING A STREAM DEDICATED TO WASSP DATA

Step	Action
1.	Under **System** menu, **I/O and Mobiles**, click **Input/Output Mobile Configuration** and create a TCP nertwork stream **Note**: you must have first disable the simplified mode.
2.	In the **Comment** field, enter a name for the stream: WASSP for example. This will help you identify the stream.
3.	Enter the port number: **18050**.
4.	Enter the address for the Wassp server: • **127.0.0.1** if the Wassp software is running on the same PC as SeaXpert application, OR • The **IP address** (or name of the network) on which the Wassp software is running

Step	Action

(usually this address is: 192.168.65.10)



5. End of procedure.

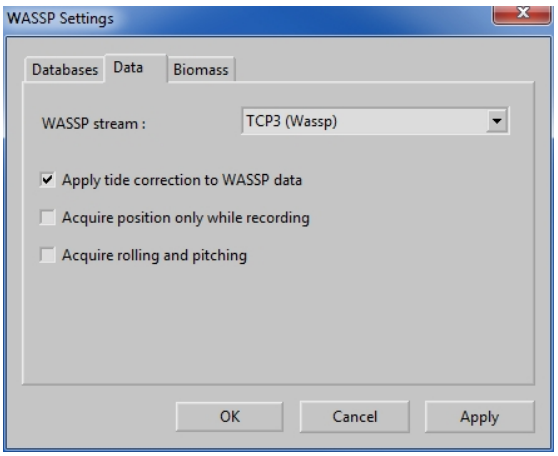
When the Wassp software is launched and is transmitting data, SeaXpert stream control module (magnifying glass icon) checks that binary data has been received

XV.3 Configuring Wassp module

Step	Action

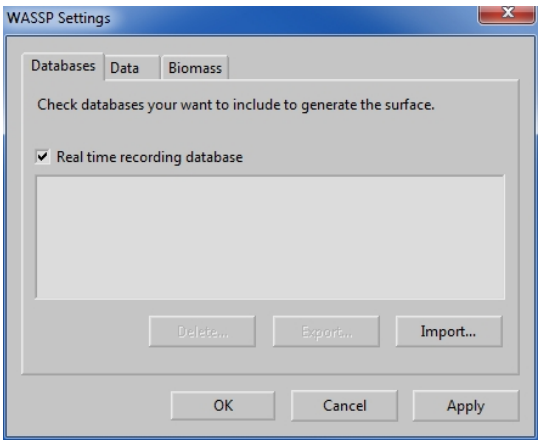
1. In the **Wassp** menu, click **Settings**.

2. Open the **Data** tab:
   - Select the stream you have previously created (in our example: TCP4 WASSP). The Wassp mobile is automatically created once you have validated this step.
   - Do not select **Acquire the position only during recording**; if you do so, the Wassp mobile will only move if the bathymetry recording has been started.



3. In Gecdis toolbar, select the **Wassp** menu, and click **Settings**. Click the **Databases** tab**:**
   - Check the **Real time recording database** option. This enables to view the database while it is being recorded.
   - It is also possible to display a base that has already been stored by checking it

Step	Action
	among the list that displays below the Real time recording database option.



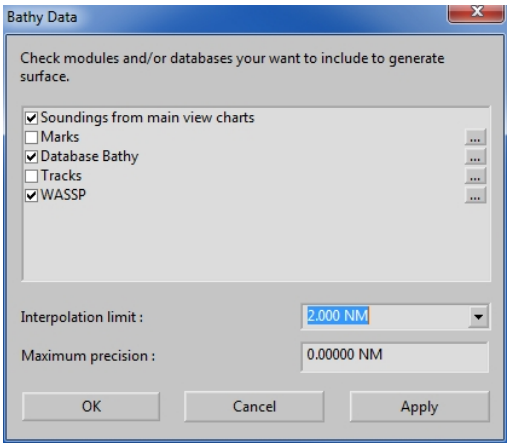
4. End of procedure.

XV.4 Configuring Bathymetry and Sediment modules

XV.4.1 BATHYMETRY MODULE (WHEN AVAILABLE)

In Gecdis toolbar, select the **Bathy** menu and click **Bathy data…**

- Check **WASSP** as the bathy data source.
- In order to have a realistic display of data in 2D and 3D, we suggest you to choose a limit of interpolation of 10m (i.e., 0.0054 NM).

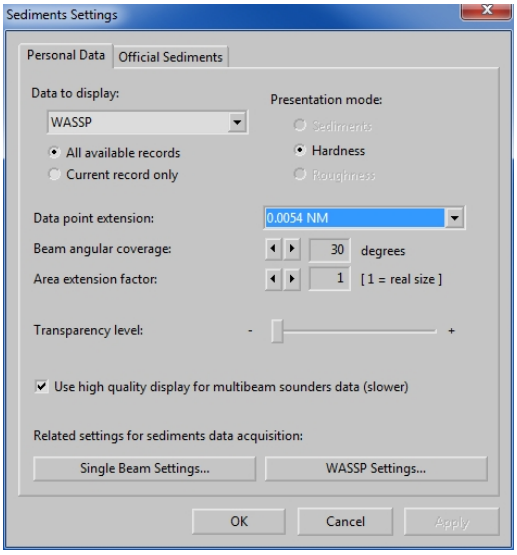


The button '…' near each bathy provider is used to open the dialog box related to the module.

XV.4.2 SEDIMENT MODULE (WHEN AVAILABLE)

In SeaXpert toolbar, select the **Sediments** menu and click **Settings…**:

- Select **WASSP** as provider of sediment data.
- In order to have a realistic display of the data in 2D and 3D, select an extension zone based on the depth/opening with an angular opening of a few degrees (between 3 and 5°).
- You can also choose 10m (i.e., 0.0054 NM) as the **Data point extension**.
- To increase the speed of data display (to the depriment of visual representation), uncheck **Use high quality display for multibeam sounders data**.

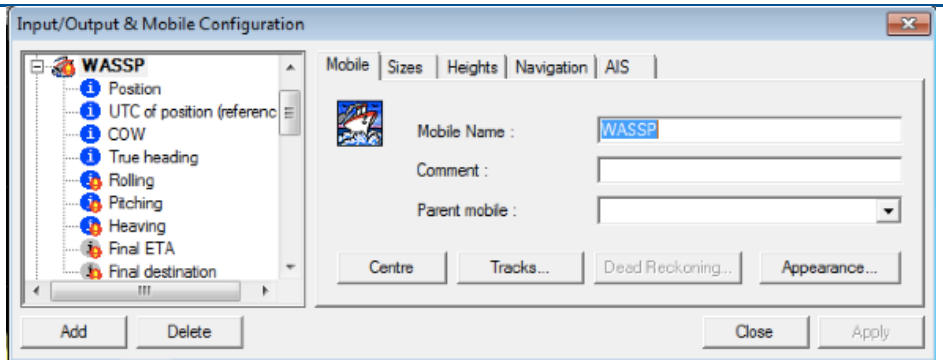


To get more information of the Sediment module, see the document describing the SEDI module in details.

XV.5 Using WASSP Mobile

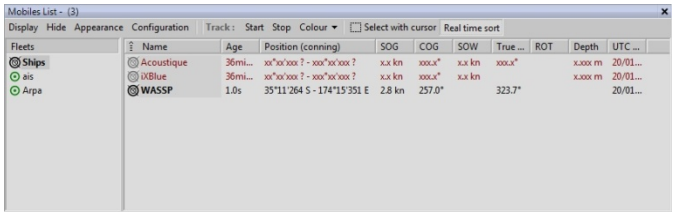
Step	Action
1.	In Gecdis menu, select **System** menu, **Settings**, **I/O and Mobile** and click **Input/Output & Mobile Configuration**. *A Wassp mobile must be displayed. Information about the mobile must not be modified; it is either external or software.* *The red exclamation mark indicates that data has not been received yet.*

Step	Action



2. In **Mobile** menu, click **Open Mobiles List…**

3. To make the Wassp mobile the main mobile, make the modification so that the screen is centred on the Wassp mobile.



4. End of procedure.

Recording and displaying data in real time:

Step	Action

1. In Gecdis menu, select **WASSP**, and click **Recording.**
   - To display Bathy data, click in the **Bathy** menu: **Surface** or **Isolines**.
   - To display sediments data, in the **Sediments** menu, click **Show Official Data.**

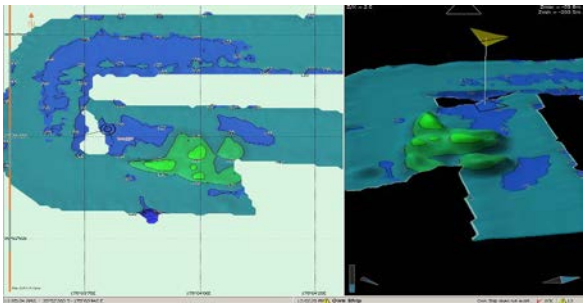
Important !

The display of sediment data in 3D view implies that you have activated the 2D chart option in the 3D view parameters (right-click in the 3D view)

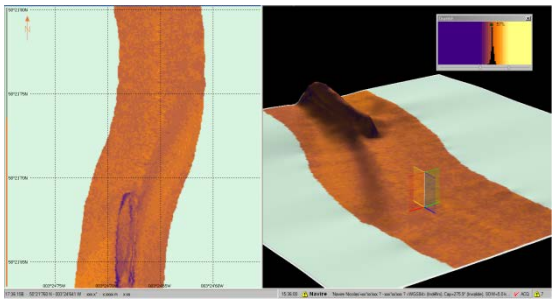
2. To stop recording, click again on **Recording**.

3. End of procedure.

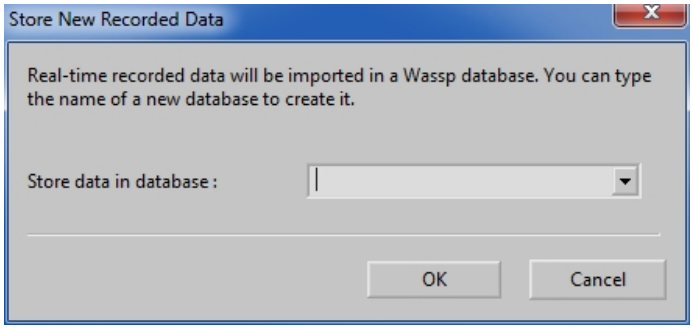
Example of Bathy display



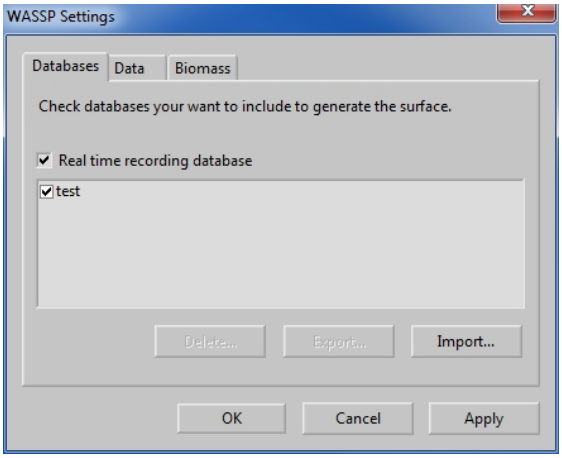
Example of Sedi display (hardness)



Wassp data acquired in real time (temporary database) can be archived on a permanent basis via the command **Archive Current Record...**


Store New Recorded Data
Real-time recorded data will be imported in a Wassp database. You can type the name of a new database to create it.
Store data in database :
OK
Cancel

The new database created with the recording in progress is listed in the WASSP Settings dialog box. You can delete or export a stored database by selecting it and by clicking the button corresponding to the action you want to carry out.



To delete points of a database displayed on the screen:

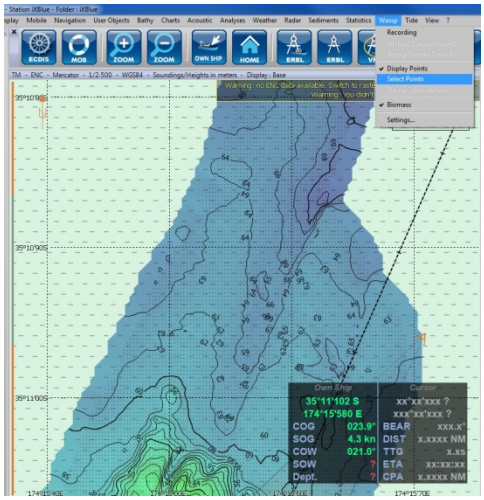
- Select **Display points**, zoom in on the zone until you can see the row sweep points or grid points at the lowest level.
- Choose **Select points**, and define the rectangular zone of points to be removed.

- Click **Delete selected points**, the points disappear from the screen.

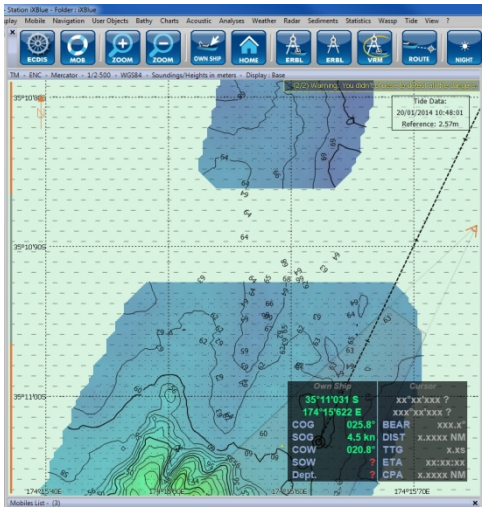
Important

THIS PROCEDURE IS NOT REVERSIBLE.

Before deleting



After deleting



XVI SIMRAD ES70

Gecdis Simrad module has been designed to store and display acoustic data provided by a Simrad single beam echo sounder (Raw data protocol).

SeaXpert module supports all the range of Simrad Ex60 (ES/EK/EQ60et 70). The module receives the stream provided by Simrad software via BI500 protocol.

Simrad module enables to:

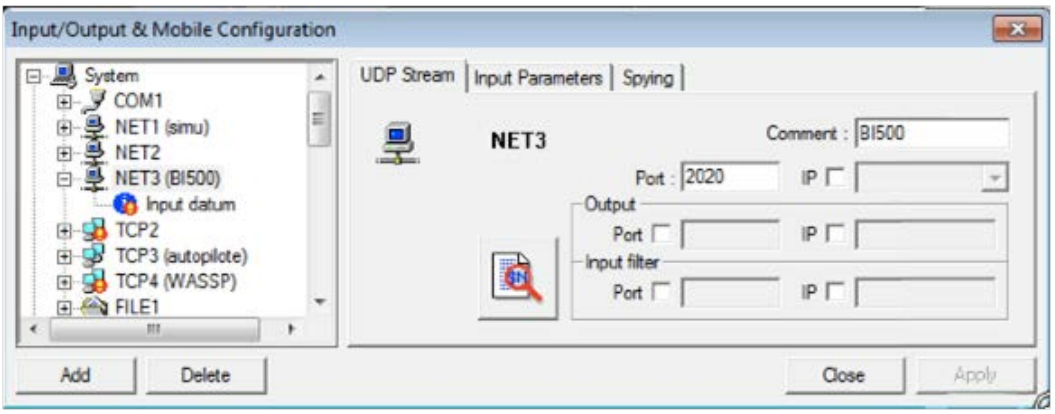
- Record in continuous the last hours of acoustic data provided by a single-beam or split beam sounder of the range Ex60/70 (water columns echos/seabed echos, geographical position, specific timestamp).
- Display the data graphically with echograms.
- Geo-localize each ping and create a mark directly from the echogram.
- Focus and adjust the main view according to a point selected in the echogram.
- Provide a simultaneous and multi-frequency display of echograms provided by several channels.
- Record and store echogram segments having a specific interest

Hardness data by Simrad is not available with our module. Hardness is managed by our SEDI module.

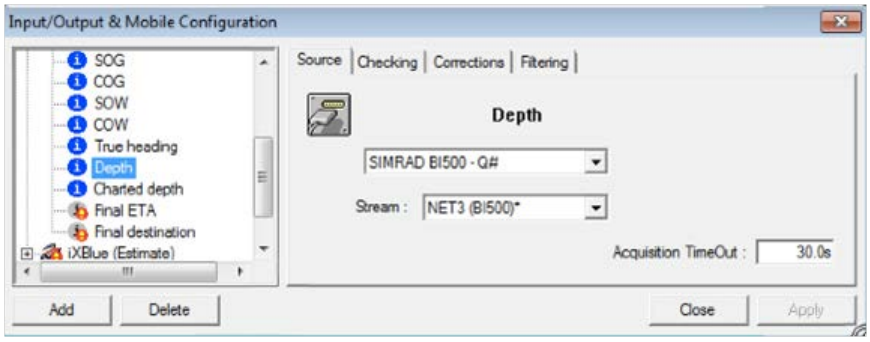
XVI.1 Configuring the Input Stream

To configure input data stream:

Step	Action
1.	Click **System**, **Settings**, and **then I/O and Mobiles** and **Input/Ouput Mobile Configuration**.
2.	Create a NET stream with the same port as the one defined in Simrad (in our example: 2020…).
3.	Assign the new stream to your ship. In the **Input/Output&Mobile Configuration** dialog



Step	Action
	box, add the depth parameter provided by the sentence « Simrad BI500 ».



4. In the Stream field, select the stream you have previously created.

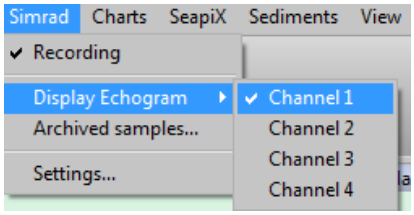
5. End of procedure.

IMPORTANT!

THE SHIP MUST GET VALID AND ACCURATE GPS POSITIONS TO COMBINE A POSITION TO EACH PING.

XVI.2 Using the Simrad Module

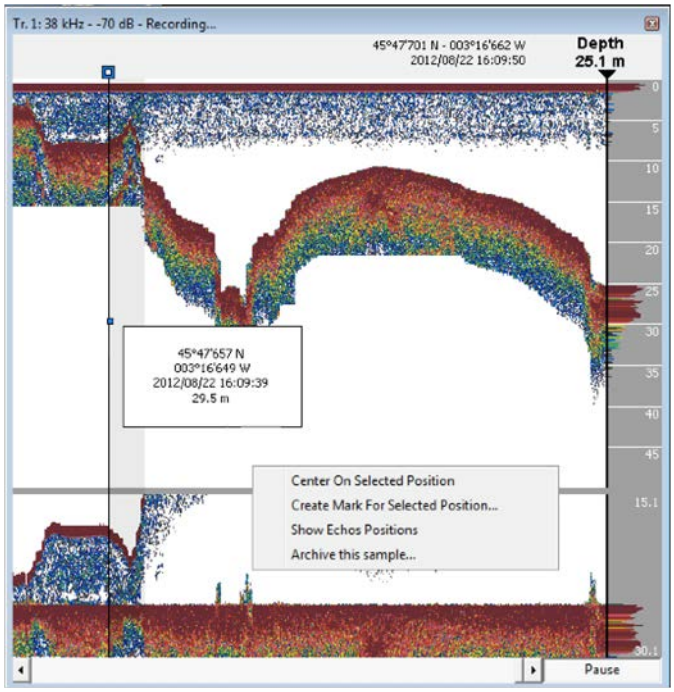
Step	Action
1.	In the **Simrad** menu, click **Recording**.
2.	Select **Display Echogram** and check the echograms to display.



3. End of procedure.

The recording is launched for all available transducers. This recording process is carried out in continuous, with a circular mouvement (oldest data being deleted as new data is recorded).

Storage capacity: 10 hours with 1ping/second



Each window of the module is equipped with 2 modes:

- **A scrolling mode**: to view each new ping as and it is recorded.
- **A pause mode**: to go back to a previous event. To start it, click **Pause** and use the scrolling bar.

For both modes, a left-click enables to select a point that is simultaneously displayed in the 2D view.

The Pause mode has two complementary functions: a tooltip (left click) and a pop-up menu (right click).

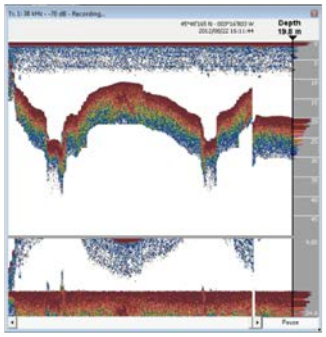
The pop-up menu enables to:

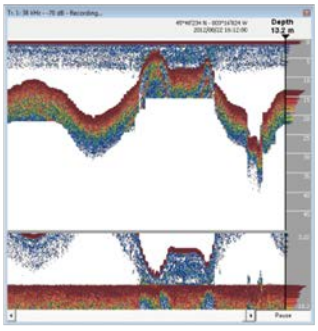
- For a selected point:
  - Centre on the point in the main view (2D view).
  - Create a mark at this location.
- For the histogram portion that is displayed:
  - Display all the points of this portion in the main view (2D view).
  - Store the current portion.

Important

ONCE THE RECORDING PROCESS IS STARTED, IT REMAINS ACTIVATED EVENT IF THE **PAUSE** MODE IS USED.

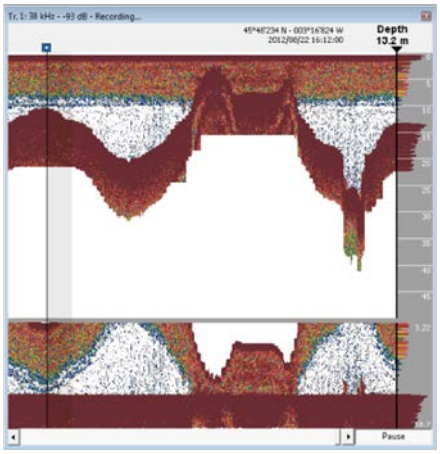
WHEN THE PAUSE MODE IS DISABLED, THE WINDOW SWITCHES AUTOMATICALLY TO THE SCROLLING MODE AND THE MOST RECENT PINGS ARE DISPLAYED.





Using the mouse wheel enables to:

- Modify the threshold in dB when the mouse points to the echogram.



- Zoom the upper part of the echogram when the mouse points to the depth scale. This function enables to hide the low part of the echogram, the part dedicated to the seabed.

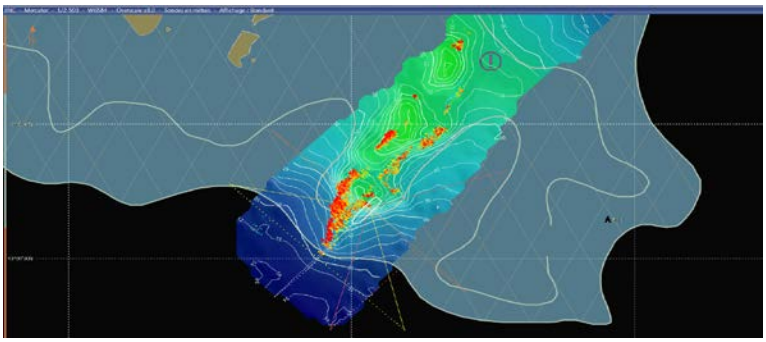
XVII BIOMASS MODULE

XVII.1.1 INTRODUCTION

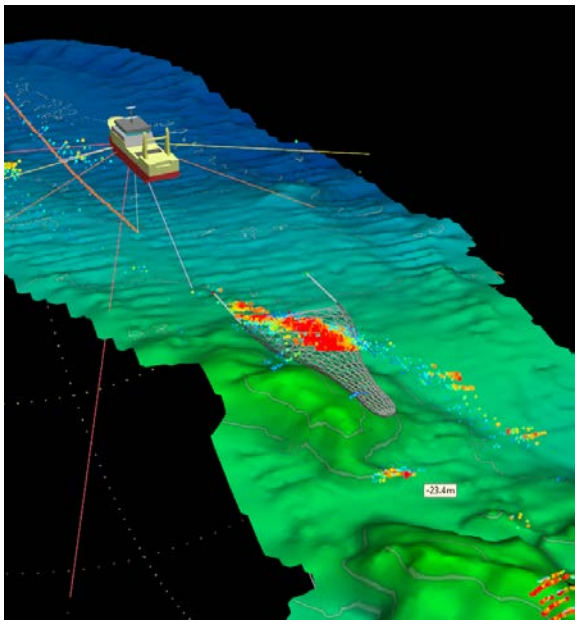
Biomass optional module allows sounder fish detections to be displayed in 2D map and 3D view. It also provides a useful distribution tool to show fish repartition according to their acoustic intensity.

Supported sounders are: **SEAPIX** multibeam sounder, **WASSP** multibeam sounder and **SIMRAD** singlebeam sounder with BI500 output (ES60/ES70 and others…)

Fish detections in 2D, 3D views and SONAR views



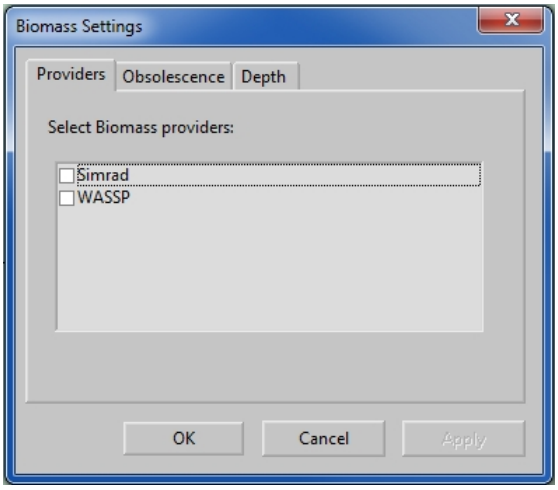
2D fish detections (cartographic view)



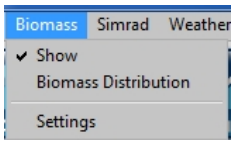
3D fish detections (with trawl display)

XVII.1.2 BIOMASS DISPLAY

The sounder(s) used need to be set in menu **Biomass** under **Settings** command (either Simrad, Wassp or Seapix):

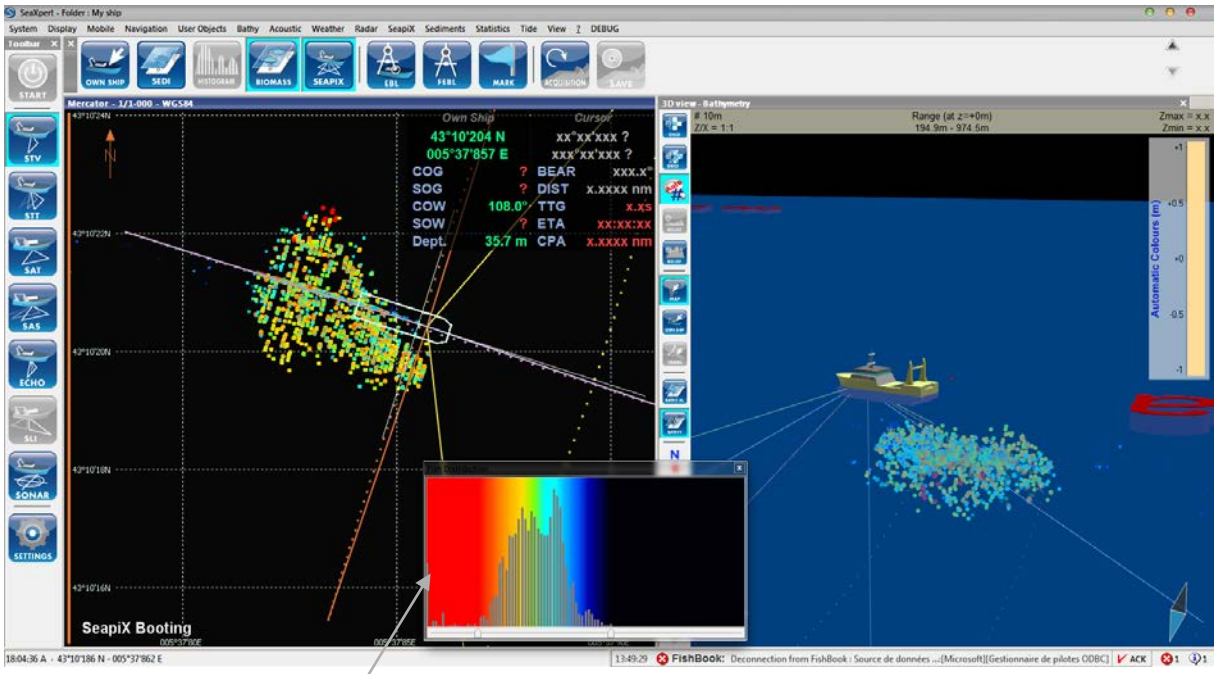


To visualize the biomass: In **Biomass** menu (or toolbar), check **Show**.



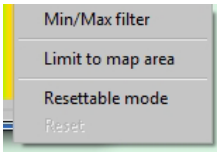
If recent fish detections are available they will be displayed in 2D/3D/Sonar view.

In 3D view options right click, the checkboxes **Modules layer** and **Biomass** must be checked.



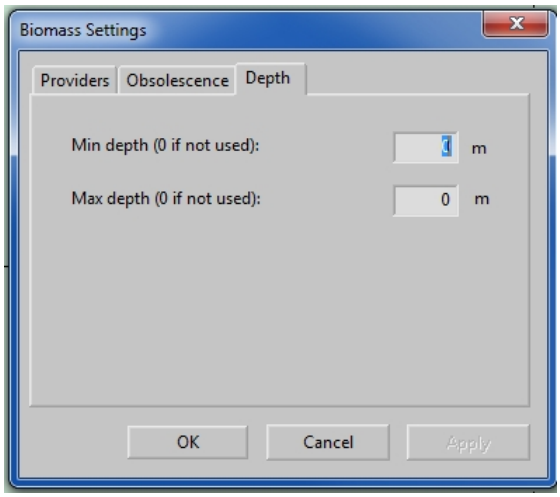
Use **Biomass Distribution** command of the **Biomass** menu to display echo distribution (high power to low power echos) and adjust detections colors.

Right click in the *Biomass distribution* window to access useful commands:



Min/Max filter	to reject out of range values.
Limit to map area	Geographical restriction to see in distribution only the fishes contained in the 2D geographic area displayed in GECDIS.
Resettable mode	to reset the distribution when clicking on **Reset.**

In *Biomass Settings* dialog box, in **Depth** tab, you can also select the depth range (min/max) where biomass have to be displayed:

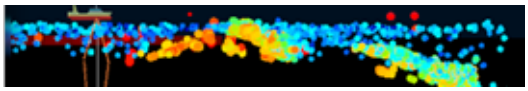


Example

Here, 25 meters where choosen (second image), leading to mask the detections from 0 to 25 m below the ship.

Min depth = 0 m

Max depth = 0 m



Min depth = 0 m

Max depth = 25 m

Important

IN SONAR VIEW YOU ALWAYS HAVE THE LATEST FISH DETECTIONS. THE OLDEST ONE WILL NOT BE DISPLAYED!

IN OTHER VIEWS (2D/3D) YOU HAVE THE OLDEST FISH POINTS DISPLAYED, BUT YOU CAN MASK THEM OR CHANGE THEIR APPEARANCE IN THE SETTINGS BOX.

XVIII SEAPIX MODULE

XVIII.1 Introduction

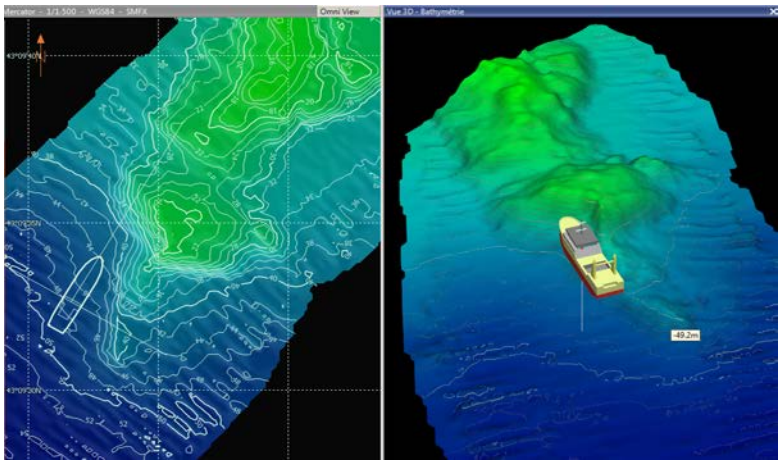
The SeapiX module offers the following functionalities:

- Provides a User interface for iXBlue SeapiX sounder control.
- Provides bathymetry data for bathymetry and 3D modules.
- Provides hardness data for Sediment module.
- Allows Record and Import/Export of seabed databases (bathymetry/hardness).
- Displays water column content measured from various directions.
- Provides fish detections to Biomass module to be displayed in 2D, 3D and a specific Sonar View.

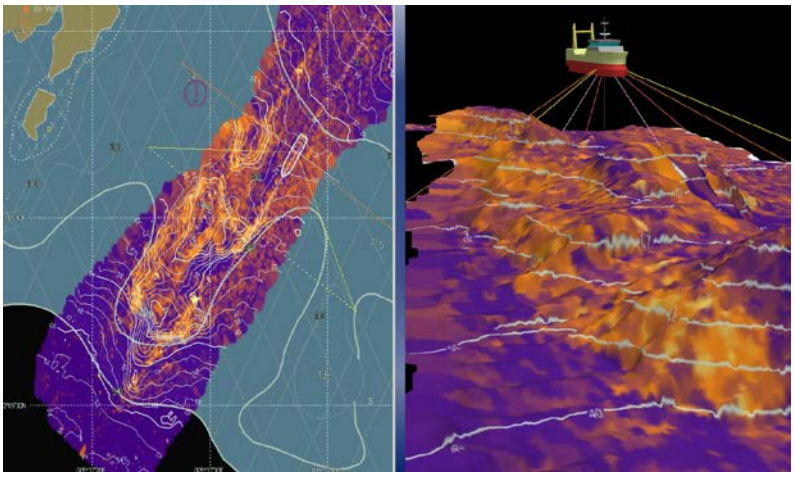
Display Overview

Bathymetry and Hardness

in 2D and 3D views



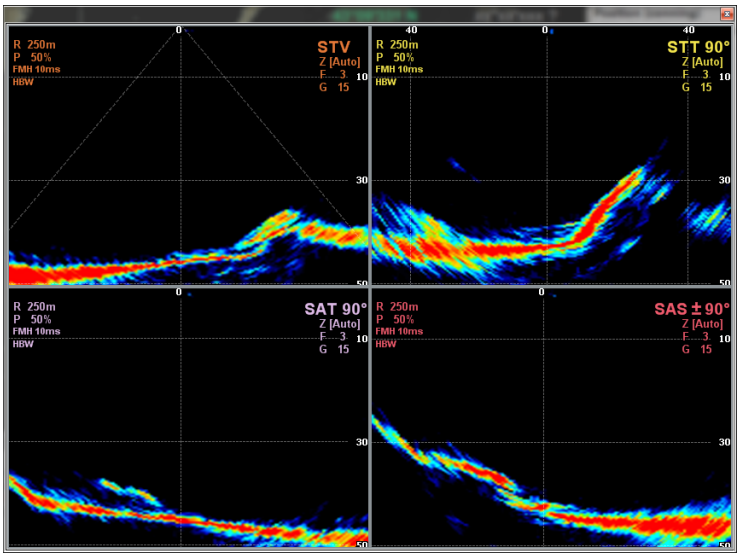
Bathymetry 2D/3D



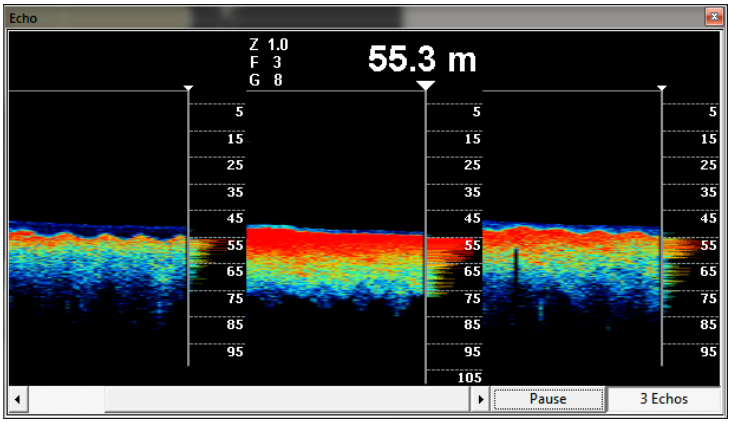
Hardness 2D/3D

Water column visualization

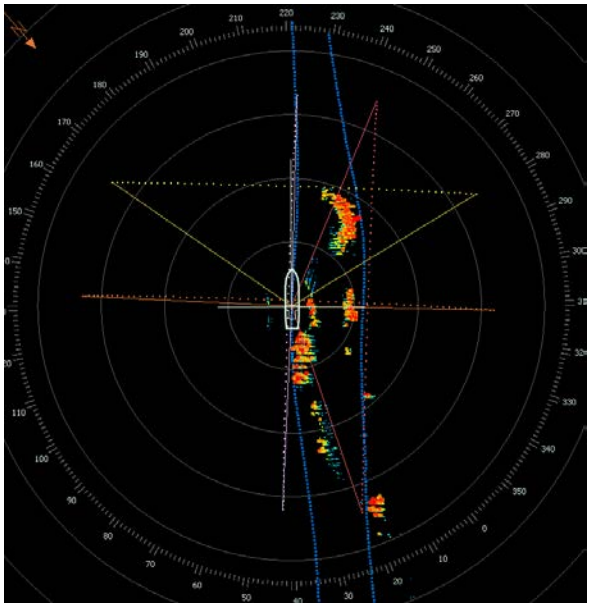
in STV / STT / SAT / SAV and Echogram views.



STV / STT / SAT / SAS views



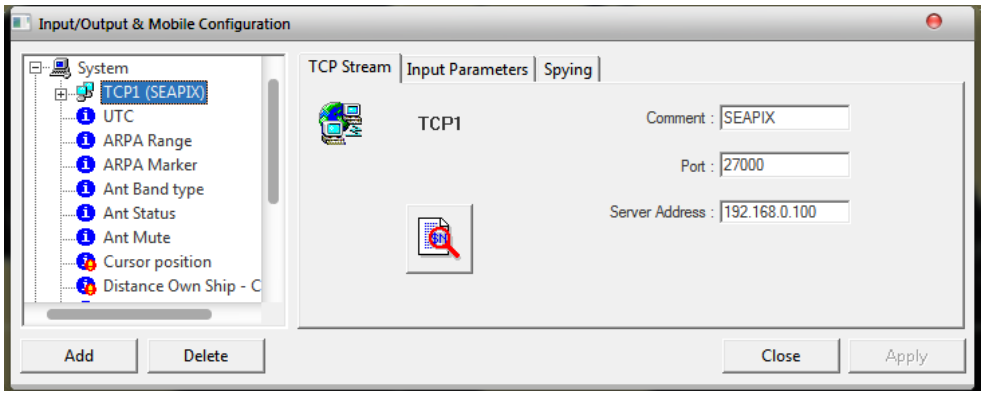
Echogram view (with triple echogram display)



Sonar view with fish detections

XVIII.2 Configuration

XVIII.2.1 Creating a Stream Dedicated to SeapiX Communication

Step	Action
1.	Under **System** menu, **I/O and Mobiles**, click **Input/Output Mobile Configuration** and create a TCP nertwork stream. **Note**: you must have first disable the simplified mode.
2.	In the **Comment** field, enter a name for the stream: SEAPIX for example. This will help you identify the stream.
3.	Enter the port number: **27000.**
4.	Enter the **IP address** of SeapiX processing unit [Refer to installator instructions]. 
5.	End of procedure.

When the SeapiX is connected and is transmitting data, SeaXpert stream control module (magnifying glass icon) checks that binary data has been received.

XVIII.2.2 Configuring SeapiX Module

XVIII.2.2.1 Step 1: Stream Configuration

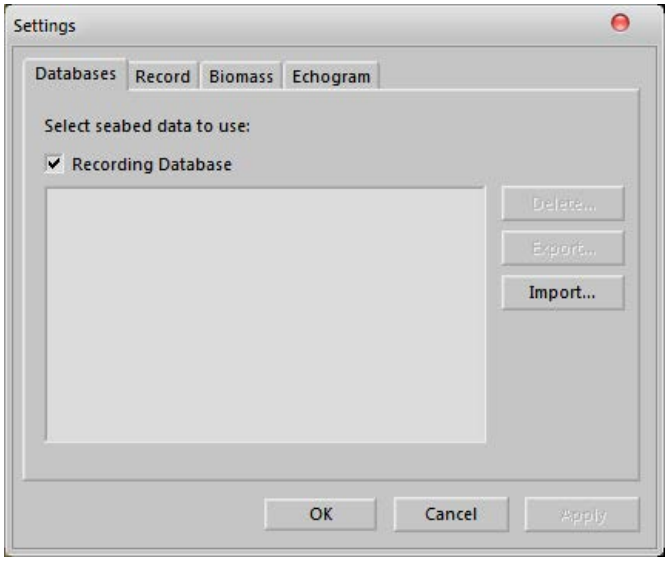
Step	Action
1.	In the **SeapiX** menu, click **Adanced Settings**.
2.	Select the stream you have previously created (in our example: TCP1 SEAPIX). The SeapiX mobile is automatically created once you have validated this step. Refer to installator instructions for other settings.

Step	Action
3.	End of procedure.

XVIII.2.2.2 Step 2: Installation Configuration

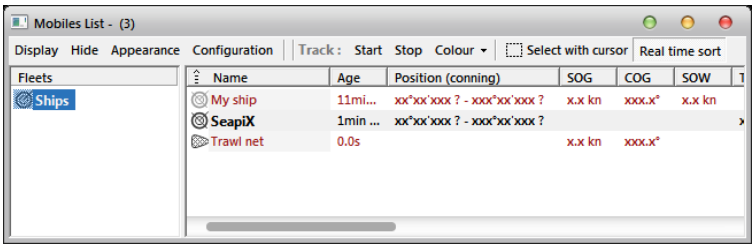
Because installation parameters will be different according ship, use other settings provided by your installator (offsets, etc…).

XVIII.2.2.3 Step 3: Database Configuration

Step	Action
1.	In the **SeapiX** menu, click **Settings** and select the **Databases** tab.
2.	Check the **Real time recording database** option. This enables to view the database while it is being recorded. Refer to installator instructions for other settings. **Note**: It is also possible to display a base that has already been stored by checking it among the list displayed below the Real time recording database option. 
3.	End of procedure.

XVIII.2.2.4 Step 4: Check SeapiX Mobile Availability

Step	Action
1.	In the menu **System**, select **Settings**, **I/O and Mobile** and then click **Input/Output & Mobile Configuration**. *A SeapiX mobile must be displayed (mobile was automatically created after Step 1).* *Information about the mobile must not be modified; it is either external or software.* *The red exclamation mark indicates that data has not been received yet*

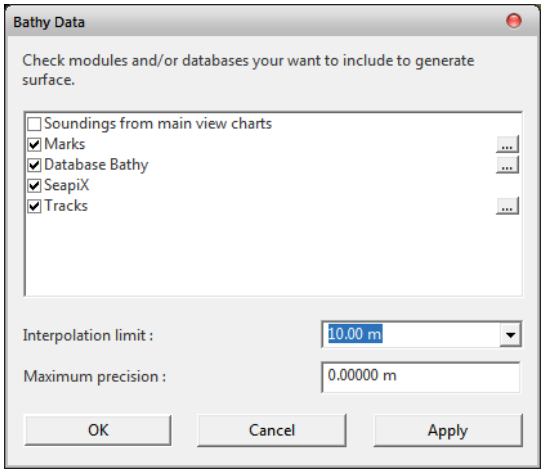
Step	Action
2.	In **Mobile** menu, click **Open Mobiles List….**
3.	To make the SeapiX mobile the main mobile (so that the screen is centred on the SeapiX mobile), select the SeapiX mobile and click **Own Ship**.  **Note**: To avoid multiple mobiles in cartographic view, you can hide the already defined mobiles and keep only the SeapiX one. For that, just select the mobile(s) to hide and press **Hide** button (i.e. "My Ship" hidden below).
4.	End of procedure.

XVIII.2.3 CONFIGURING BATHYMETRY AND SEDIMENT MODULES

XVIII.2.3.1 Bathymetry Module

In Gecdis toolbar, select the **Bathy** menu and click **Bathy data…**

- Check **SeapiX** as the bathy data source.
- In order to have a realistic display of data in 2D and 3D, we suggest you to choose a limit of interpolation of **10m**.

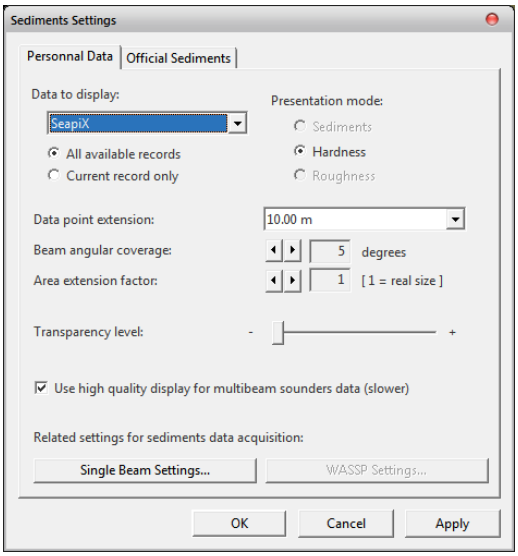


XVIII.2.3.2 Sediment Module (when available)

Step	Action
1.	In Gecdis toolbar, select the **Sediments** menu and click **Settings…**: • Select **SeapiX** as provider of sediment data.

Step	Action
	• In order to have a realistic display of the data in 2D and 3D, select an extension zone based on the depth/opening with an angular opening of a few degrees (between 3 and 5°). • You can also choose 10 m as the **Data point extens**ion.

2. To increase the speed of data display (to the detriment of visual representation), uncheck **Use high quality display for multibeam…**



3. End of procedure.

To get more information about the Sediment module, see chapter XII.

XVIII.3 Using SeapiX

XVIII.3.1 Overview of SeapiX Fire Modes

Four fire modes are available on SeapiX: STV, STT, SAT, SAV.
Modes can be activated simultaneously, leading to successive interlaced fires.
Each fire mode has its own dedicated acoustic view (swath content).

Important

EACH VIEW IS ALSO USED TO CONTROL THE FIRE WHERE FIRE PARAMETERS CAN BE MODIFIED THROUGH RIGHT CLICK [SEE BELOW].

STV mode **"Sonar / Transversal / Vertical"**

Specificity: Vertical fire (like a classical multibeam sounder)

Used for:

- Bathymetry/Hardness recording
- Echogram construction
- Fish detection

User Control: Right Click in STV swath view.

STT mode **"Sonar / Transversal / Tiltable"**

Specificity: Fire with Front/Back adjustable angle.

Used for:

- Fish detection
- Obstacle detection

User Control: Right Click in STT swath view.

SAT mode **"Sonar / Axial / Tiltable"**

Specificity: Fire with Front/Back adjustable angle.

Used for:

- Fish detection
- Obstacle detection

User Control: Right Click in SAT swath view.

SAV mode **"Sonar / Axial / Volumetric"**

Specificity: Fire with Left/Right adjustable scanning.

Used for: Dynamic fish detection

User Control: Right Click in SAV swath view

XVIII.3.2 SEAPIX MENU AND DEDICATED TOOLBARS

Module functionalities are available through SeapiX menu and/or SeapiX dedicated toolbars if SeaXpert package was installed in "SeapiX Mode" (in SeaXpert setup.)

Table 3 - SeapiX toolbars

Seapix toolbars are available when SeaXpert package is installed with "SeapiX mode".

Keep centered on the ship.
(available in **Display** menu)

Start 3D view.
(available in **View** menu)

Show Bathymetry 2D layer.
(available in **Bathy** menu)

Show Isobaths 2D layer.
(available in **Bathy** menu)

Show Hardness histogram to adjust sediment colors
(available in **Sediment** menu)

Show Biomass 2D layer.
(available in **Biomass** menu)

Start SeapiX acquisition.
(available in **SeapiX** menu)

Show STV view.
(available in **SeapiX** menu)

Show Sediment 2D layer.
(available in **Sediments** menu)

Show Swaths 2D layer.
(available in **SeapiX** menu)

"Bearing Range Line" Navigation tools.
(available in **Navigation** menu)

Store temporarily and Archive seabed data: Bathymetry/Hardness.
(available in SeapiX menu)

Create a Mark
(available in **User Objects** menu)

Show Biomass histogram to adjust fish colors.
(available in **Biomass** menu)

Show SONAR view
(available in **View** menu)

Show SAV view.
(available in **SeapiX** menu)

Show STT view.

(available in **SeapiX** menu)

Show ECHO view.

(available in *SeapiX* menu)

Show SAT view.

(available in **SeapiX** menu)

Show settings page.

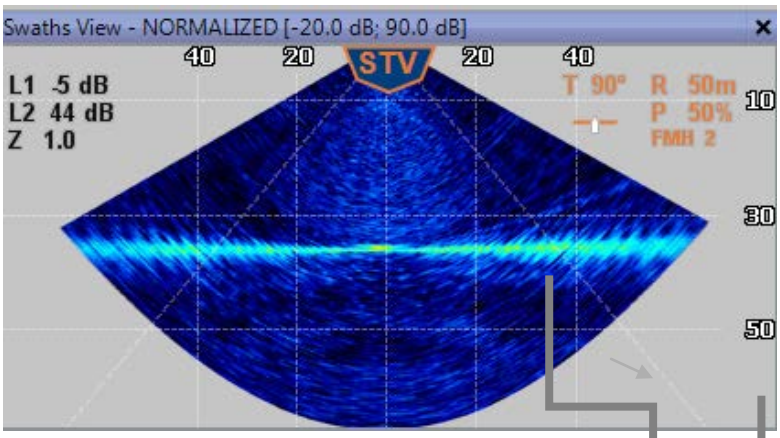
(available in **SeapiX** menu)

XVIII.3.3 START SOUNDER ACQUISITION

Step	Action
1.	**Start sounder acquisition:** • In cartographic view (bottom left) check that sounder status is "Connected" • In **SeapiX** menu (or SeapiX toolbar) click **Start Sounder**. *Sounder is now waiting for fire activation…*
2.	**Activate STV main fire mode:** • Display STV view end right click on it to access to fire control parameters. • Set correct parameters for the fire (Right click to access to fire settings): ❑ **Working depth,** which means the range depth to be applied to all fires (STV, STT, SAT, SAV) ❑ **Power**: Power level of the ping. Use **Auto**. ❑ **Modulation**: Signal modulation. • In same menu, choose **STV activation** to start pinging. *Data are displayed both in STV view and in echogram view (if activated).* **Important** STV fire is main fire. It has to be activated in order to be able to build echogram, to record seabed data or to know depth below surface.
3.	**If needed, activate secondary fires modes: STT, SAT, SAV:** • Display STT, SAT ou SAV view and right click on it to access to fire control parameters. • Set correct parameters for the fire [refer to previous step] especially, tilt fire to use! • In view menu, choose fire activation to start pinging. *Data are displayed in "swaths view".*

Step	Action
4.	**Stop sounder:** In SeapiX menu (or toolbar) click **Start Sounder** (activated previously) *Sounder signal is now de-activated.*
5.	End of procedure.

Table 4 - Information displayed in swath view



L1 = Min signal level
L2 = Max signal level
Z = Zoom factor

T = Tilt angle.
R = Range depth.
P = Power

Modulation type.

How to use swath view:

Left Click on swath = Switch between L1 and L2 levels.
Use **mouse-roll** on swath to change L1/L2 values.

Use **mouse-roll** on right to change Zoom level.

Right Click on swath = Control commands for the fire.
(Tilt / Power / Range / Modulation / Colors …)

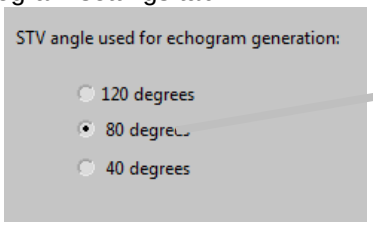
XVIII.3.4 USE ECHOGRAM VIEW

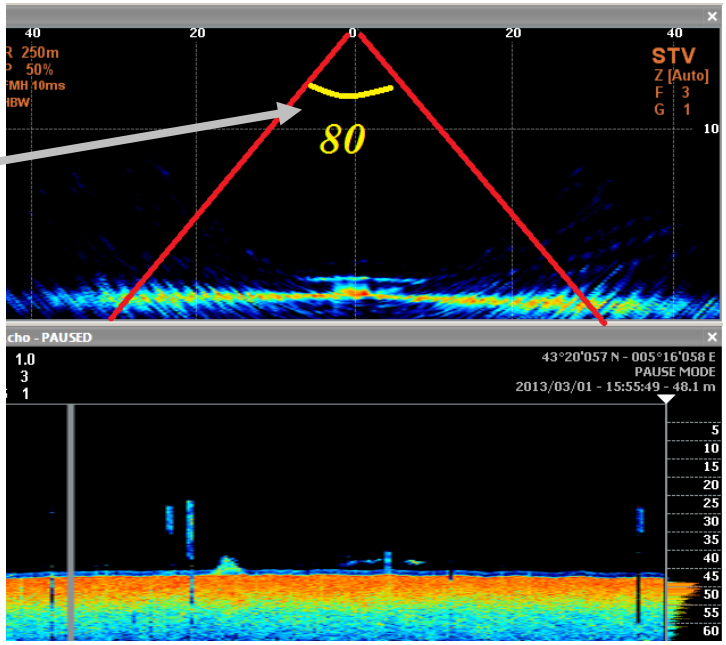
XVIII.3.4.1 Echogram Construction Angle

Echogram is built from an angular part of STV fire. This is why in settings, you can choose to use the 40 central degrees of the STV swath, or 80 degrees, or the whole 120 degrees (See SeapiX Settings: Echogram tab)

Example:

Echogram settings tab:





Here the yellow 80° angle will be used to build the echogram.

IMPORTANT:
This sector means that if fishes are out of this angular area (either on left or right), they will not appear in echogram.

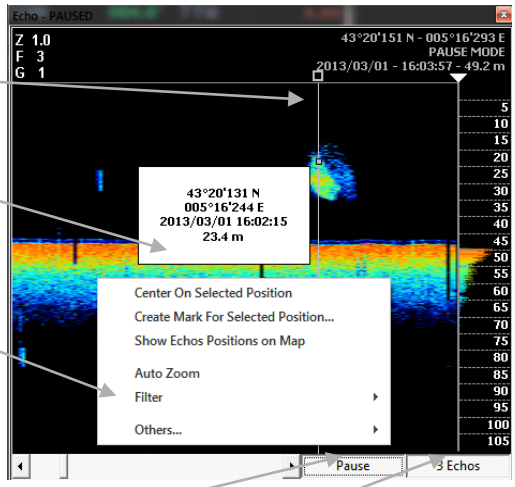
XVIII.3.4.2 Echogram Display

Double click to **select a position**.

Popup (in pause mode) used to know echo exact position:

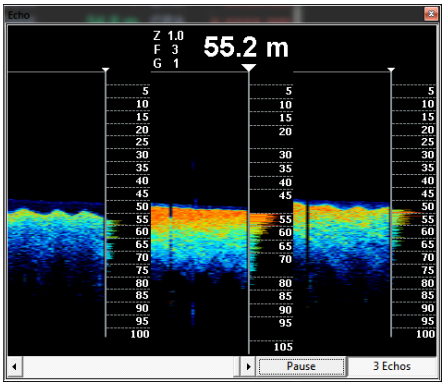
Contextual menu [right click]:

- To center 2D view on the echo.
- To create a mark at selected position.
- To keep an optimal zoom based on seafloor depth.



Enter echogram Pause mode
where last hours of record can be visualized recorded.

Enter 3-Echo mode
where 40 degrees on left/right can be visualized besides the main central echogram.



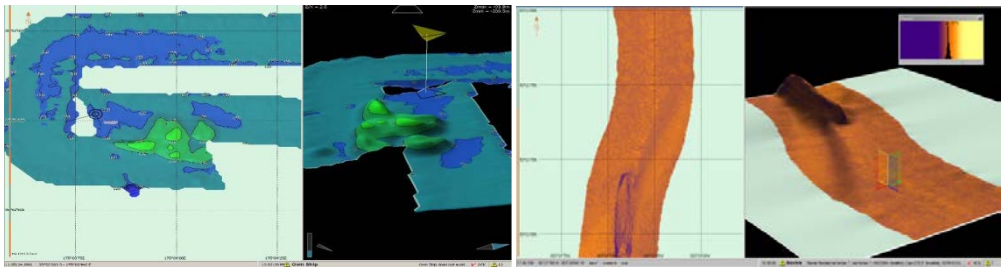
Mouse controls:

- Use mouse-roll on signal to change **Display Gain** or **Filter** (click to change between both)
- Use mouse-roll on depth to change **Zoom level Gain**
- Use mouse-roll on top of echogram to change **Depth start level**

XVIII.3.5 RECORD AND DISPLAY SEABED DATA IN REAL TIME

Step	Action

1. In **SeaXpert** menu, select **SeapiX**, and click **Start Record**:
   - To display Bathy data, click in the **Bathy** menu: **Surface** or **Isolines**.
   - To display sediments data, in the **Sediments** menu, click **Show Official Data.**



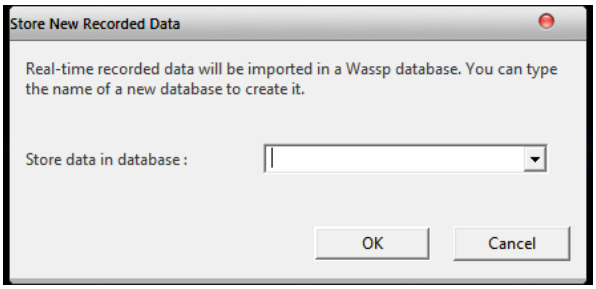
Example of Bathy display (on the left) and Sedi display-hardness (on the right)

Important

The display of sediment data in 3D view implies that you have activated the option in the 3D view parameters (right-click in the 3D view).

2. To stop recording, click again on **Start Record.**

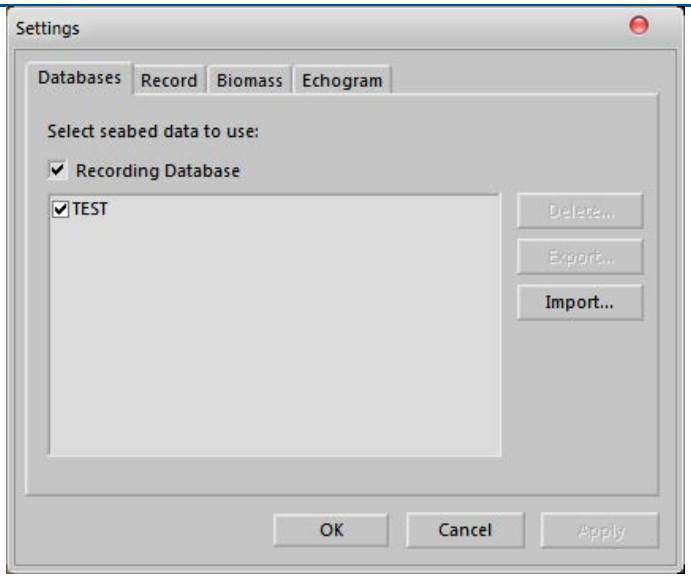
3. Seabed data acquired in real time (temporary database) can be archived on a permanent basis via the command **Archive Current Record...**


Store New Recorded Data
Real-time recorded data will be imported in a Wassp database. You can type the name of a new database to create it.
Store data in database :
OK
Cancel

The new database created with the recording in progress is listed in the Settings dialog box.

4. You can delete or export a stored database by selecting it and by clicking the button corresponding to the action you want to carry out.

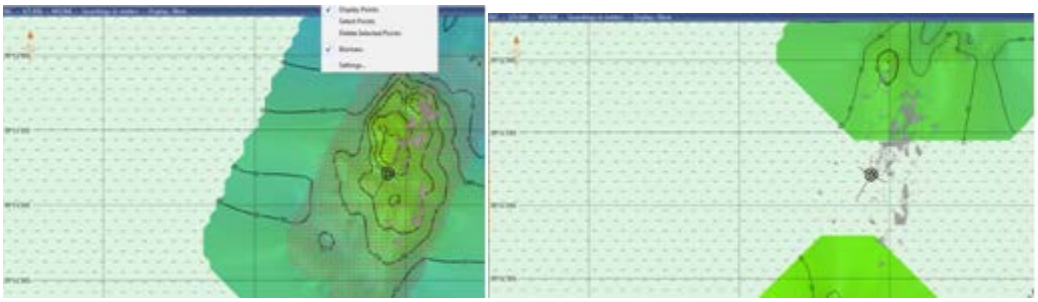
Step	Action



5. To delete points of a database displayed on the screen:
   - Select **Display points**, zoom in on the zone until you can see the row sweep points or grid points at the lowest level.
   - Choose **Select points**, and define the rectangular zone of points to be removed.
   - Click **Delete selected points**, the points disappear from the screen.

Important

This procedure is not reversible



Before deleting (on the left) after deleting (on the right)

6. End of procedure.

XVIII.3.6 RECORDING OPTIONS

XVIII.3.6.1 Overlap Management in Real Time Database

To avoid mixing data when recording on a previously acquired area, you can either choose to clear the front area before storage, either to suspend the storage to avoid mixing data until overlap ends.

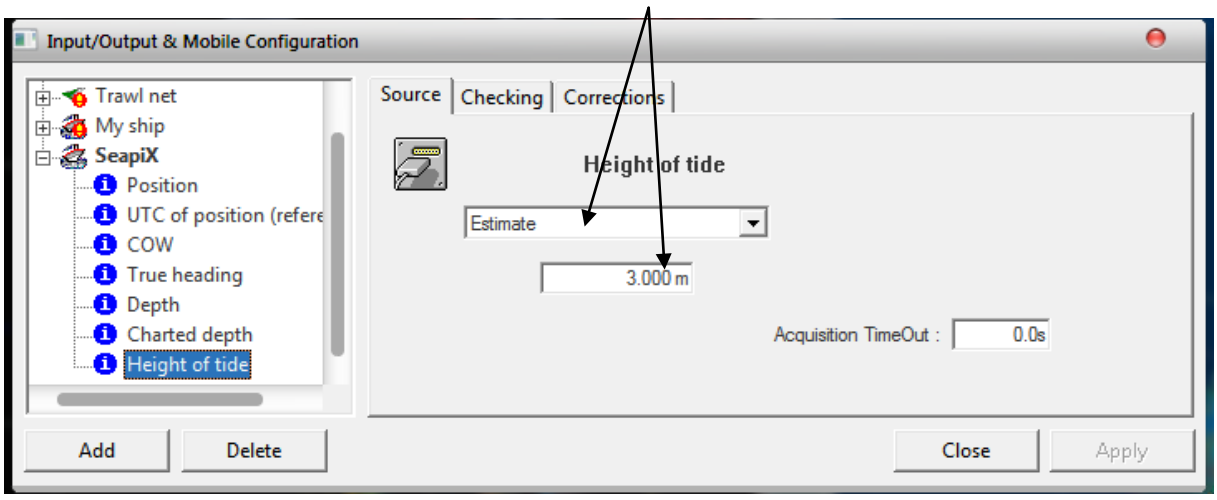
See **SeapiX** menu / **Settings** / **Recording tab**.

XVIII.3.6.2 Height of Tide Correction

Height of tide can used to correct data during acquisition:

- In *Input/Ouput & Mobile Configuration* dialog box, add **Height of tide** auxiliary information on SeapiX mobile.
- Then, this information can be either manually entered (estimation), either dynamically entered by the Tide module:
  - Either through Proudman tables (option required).
  - Either by setting a reference station.

Example Here tide is estimated to 3 meters.



In this exemple, data stored in SeapiX database will have a 3-meter correction.

Important

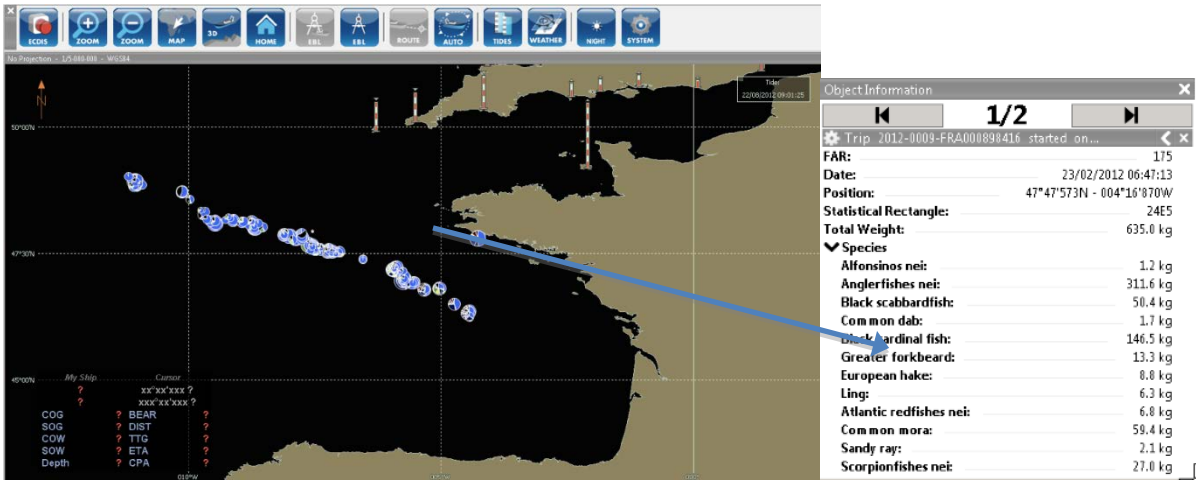
THIS CORRECTION IS PERFORMED ON DEPTH DATA BEFORE STORAGE AND IS NOT REVERSIBLE.

XIX STATISTICS MODULE

If you have Turbo Catch system, it is possible, with Gecdis, to view your fish catches (via descriptive statistics pie charts).

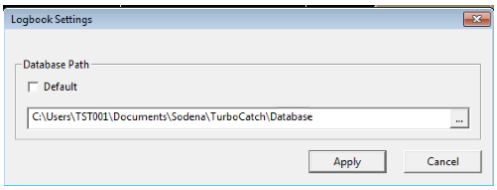
All information on catches is available by selecting the symbol on screen.

The user can proceed to a filtering in order to view the results for one or a few species.



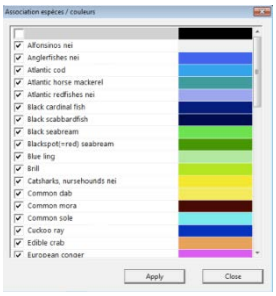
To add TurboCatch databases in Gecdis:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Statistics** menu, click **Logbook Settings**.



2.	If you are using your own customized configuration of Windows, uncheck **Default** and enter the folder path containing your TurboCatch database.
3.	Click **Apply**
4.	End of procedure.

To assign a color to a catch:

Step	Action
1.	In the **Statistics** menu, click **Color Settings**. 
2.	Assign a color to each species.
3.	Click **Apply**
4.	End of procedure.

To display all pie charts in the main view:

In the **Statistics** menu, check **Show all**.

XX CABLE AND PIPELINE MANAGEMENT MODULE

XX.1 Presentation

Hereunder is a brief summary of the functions that are included and those which are not included from the original reference (MMS-DOS version 4.11).

XX.1.1 PROVIDED FUNCTIONS

XX.1.1.1 SML Management Database

This management is comparable to the functionalities offered by the MMS-DOS version.

Exploitation

- Selective loading of one or more SMLs (system network).
- Focus on one element of an SML.
- Rules for displaying SML.
- Query, cable cut consultation.

Management

- Creating a SML (data, leg, event and environment).
- Modifying a SML.
- Removing a SML.
- Symbol library management.
- Cable reference library management.

Import-export

- Import SML from the old MMS-DOS format.
- Importing a SML from a Microsoft Excel file (CSV file format).
- Export SML to a Microsoft Excel file (CSV file format).
- Export SML to a RTF file.
- Export SML to a DXF file.

SML editing

- Edition of the general description.
- Edition of the list of positions.
- GSLD edition.
- Edit profile.

XX.1.1.2 Bathymetric Data Management

The software import bathymetric data from DXF files (depth points collection).

XX.1.2 FUNCTIONS NOT INCLUDED (AS COMPARED TO MMS-DOS VERSION)

The functionalities, not mentioned in section XX.1.1, are not provided in Gecdis. These are, most notably, the following ones:

- Area management (ban, concession and waste).
- Specific transmission problem event management and crooked.
- The complete management (data and editions) about specific repair event, namely:
  - The analysis of the defect.
  - Consumption of repair.
  - Operational report.
  - Cost of repair.
  - The repair status (Journal of Repair or RDL: Repair Data Logbook).
- Cable ship day costs management (CERC: Cableship Estimated Running Costs).
- Inventory management
- Paper trace output management
- Installation management (plow information, cable and touch down, installing and slack control windows)
- DSLD edition

XX.2 Implementation

A pipeline is identical to a submarine link (cable), apart from the fact that "cable point" symbols, cable references, transmission properties, cable lengths (i.e. slack) and GSLD are not available for pipeline.

Bathymetry management is already part of the Gecdis software. This existing functionality is extended with the ability to import bathymetric data from DXF files.

Regarding UTM coordinates management, this functionality is included in a core library of Gecdis.

XX.2.1 UTM MANAGEMENT

This function provides the ability to express and operate UTM coordinates in the software.

The software allows the following operations:

- Configure the UTM zone (automatic or between 1 and 60).
- Enter a UTM position.
- Convert a position in UTM coordinates.

The display and data input of coordinates are based on the configuration in the general configuration window. This window is extended to propose the selection of UTM coordinates.

XX.2.2 SML DATABASE MANAGEMENT

This is the main function of MMS: view, create and modify underwater lines objects and pipelines, to view or print reports.

XX.2.2.1 General Overview of Access to Functions

The ergonomics of this module are consistents with the general ergonomics of Gecdis.

Access to functions of the MMS module is via submenus and display menus.

Display menu

The main access is made from the **Display** menu.

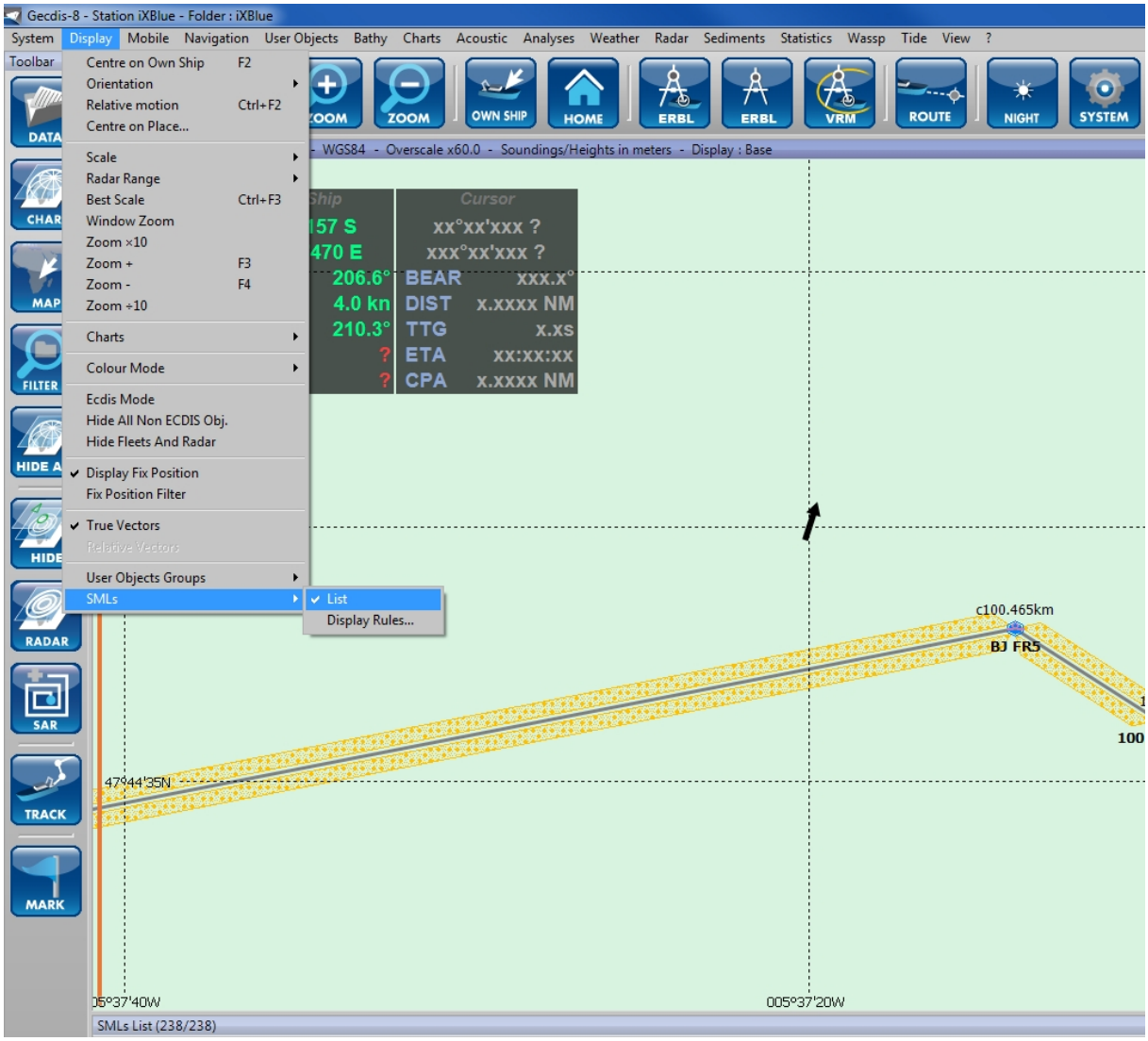


Figure 177 - Display menu

In this menu, a submenu **SMLs** can control the display of the list of SML and defines the rules for displaying items of a submarine cable.

System menu / Import

This menu is used to import external data.

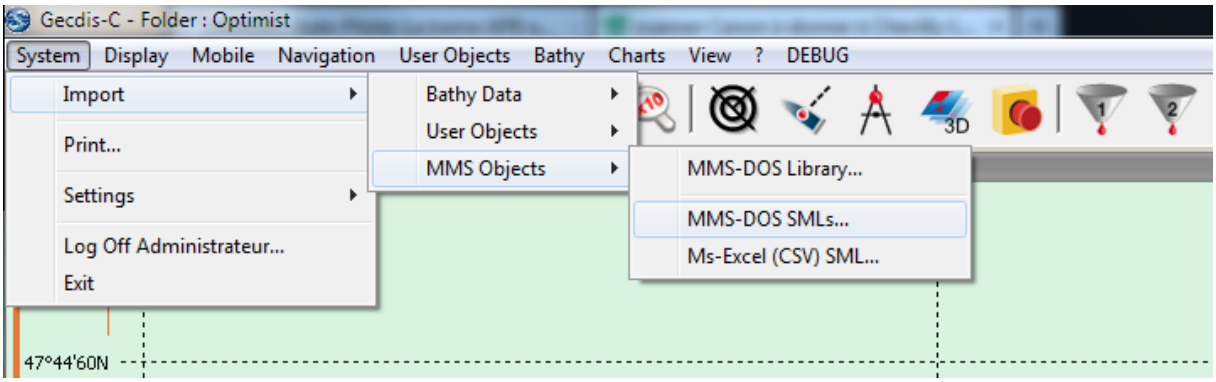


Figure 178 - System menu/Import

In this menu, a submenu **MMS Objects** can import various elements used in MMS, mainly MMS-DOS objects.

XX.2.2.2 Library Management

To function properly, the cable and pipeline management module needs two libraries for type cable SMLs:

- Symbols library to view geographically or diagrams.
- Cable specifications library used for dressing a cable point to manage the display of a cable cut when querying.

Symbols

The new library of symbols is managed by an XML file. Its edition can change the content to define the symbols used by the module.

The symbols used are the existing bitmaps from MMS-DOS and import this old library is possible via a menu: *System/Import/MMS Objects/MMS-DOS Library.*

A pipeline has no symbol and should be displayed according to its type and state:

Type	State	Drawing	Colour
Gas	In service	G G G	Red
Gas	Planned		Green
Gas	Abandoned		Magenta
Oil	In service	O O O	Red
Oil	Planned		Green
Oil	Abandoned		Magenta
Water	In service	W W W	Blue
Water	Planned		Green
Water	Abandoned		Magenta

Cables references

The new library reference cable is managed by an XML file associated with multiple image

files representing the cable cuts. Editing the file can change the content to define the reference cable used by the module.

Import the old library of MMS-DOS is possible via a menu: *System/Import/MMS Objects/MMS-DOS Library*.

Reference management for pipeline is not provided.

XX.2.2.3 Cable Link and Pipeline Selection

This is the counterpart of the user objects list, but dedicated to the SMLs in order to:

- Define SMLs to load into memory for display,
- Manage the creation, deletion, export and properties of a SML.
- Then from SML properties, manage:
  - ❑ Consultation
  - ❑ Modification
  - ❑ SML list of components
  - ❑ Refocusing on the geographical part of the SML
  - ❑ Graphs and profile edition

Memory loading

Any SML loaded in memory is displayed in the geographic and in the 3D view (if modules layers and SMLs layer are checked in the 3D view configuration).

List of SMLs

The list is managed with a display window; this window is non-blocking, it may be floating or docked to an edge. By default it is docked on the lower left edge.

It consists of several parts:

- A title bar including the number of SMLs loaded
- A control bar to manage actions of the current selection
- A header list organized in columns and used for sorting
- Content of the list

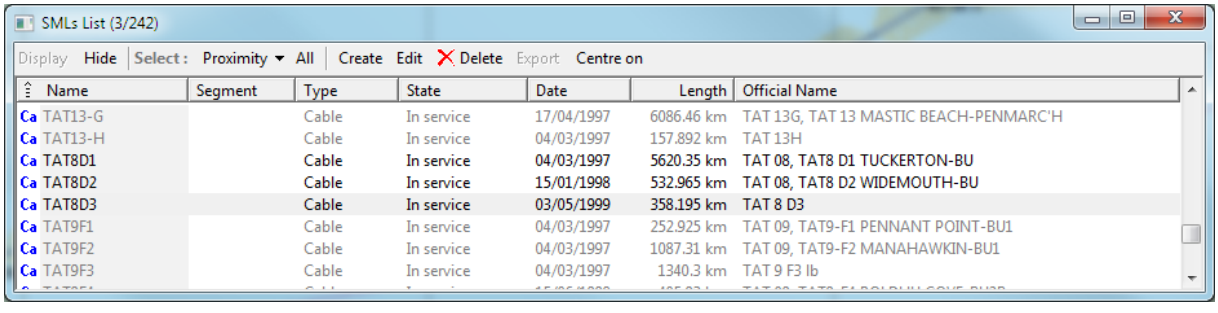

SMLs List (3/242)
Display Hide Select : Proximity All Create Edit Delete Export Centre on
Name Segment Type State Date Length Official Name
Ca TAT13-G Cable In service 17/04/1997 6086.46 km TAT 13G, TAT 13 MASTIC BEACH-PENMARC'H
Ca TAT13-H Cable In service 04/03/1997 157.892 km TAT 13H
Ca TAT8D1 Cable In service 04/03/1997 5620.35 km TAT 08, TAT8 D1 TUCKERTON-BU
Ca TAT8D2 Cable In service 15/01/1998 532.965 km TAT 08, TAT8 D2 WIDEMOUTH-BU
Ca TAT8D3 Cable In service 03/05/1999 358.195 km TAT 8 D3
Ca TAT9F1 Cable In service 04/03/1997 252.925 km TAT 09, TAT9-F1 PENNANT POINT-BU1
Ca TAT9F2 Cable In service 04/03/1997 1087.31 km TAT 09, TAT9-F2 MANAHAWKIN-BU1
Ca TAT9F3 Cable In service 04/03/1997 1340.3 km TAT 9 F3 lb

Figure 179 - SMLs list

The color of a line depends of its current load:

- In black, SML displayed
- In gray, SML hidden

The selection of lines is standard (multiple lines can be selected at once with Shift or Ctrl key) or may also be made selectively with the proximity control or all the lines with the "All" command.

Here are the details of the orders compatibility according to selection:

No selection	One single line selected	Multiple selection
Select proximity	Display	Display
Select all	Hide	Hide
Create	Select proximity	Select proximity
	Select all	Select all
	Create	Create
	Edit	Remove
	Remove	Export
	Export	
	Centre on	

Select proximity

This command via a drop down list selects lines near the centre of the main geographical view.

Ranges are taken from MMS-DOS, namely: 1, 2, 5, 10, 25, 50, 100 and 500 NM.

XX.2.2.4 Displaying Items Rules

The software distinguishes two views of SML elements:

- Automatic default mode, the display is achieved by the parameters of scale associated with each symbol.
- Manual, the user selects the display manually.

The view can be chosen globally, by items type or finely, element by element.

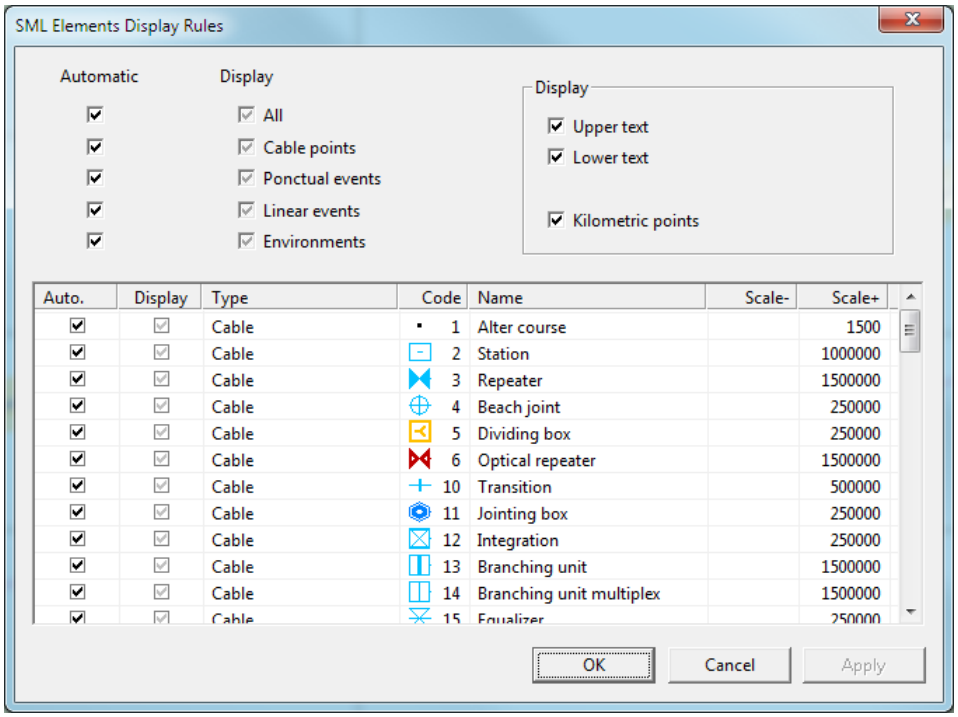


Figure 180 - Display rules definition window

Upper and lower texts as well as mileage points can be displayed or hidden.

Regardless of symbols, the colour used to draw SML depends of its state, i.e.:

- Blue, SML planned (Green in MMS-DOS)
- Dark gray, SML in service,
- Red, SML Abandoned.

XX.2.2.5 Querying

Like nearly all objects in Gecdis and as in MMS-DOS, SMLs are available in overlay.

The consultation is carried out either by a tooltip displayed closest to the cursor or by a remote window in a fixed area on the screen (docked or floating).

Here is the information set if they exist:

- Name of the SML
- Name of the questioned item
- Symbol
- Comment
- Modification date of the element
- Geographical position
- Geographical cumulative length
- Cumulated cable length (not for pipeline)
- Slack compared to the previous point (not for pipeline)
- Depth of the element
- Item level
- Item note

Here are the possible actions about an item being asked:

- View the cable cut (not for pipeline)
- Display the image associated with the item
- Centre on/refocus the screen on:
  - Geographically cumulative distance
  - Cable cumulative distance (not for pipeline)
  - A beginning or an end of segment (linear case event or environment)
- Display / hide all identical elements to those being asked
- Hide SML (unload memory)
- Remove SML (see § XX.2.2.8)
- Shift SML (see § XX.2.2.9)
- Export SML (see § XX.2.2.10)
- Edit SML (window properties)

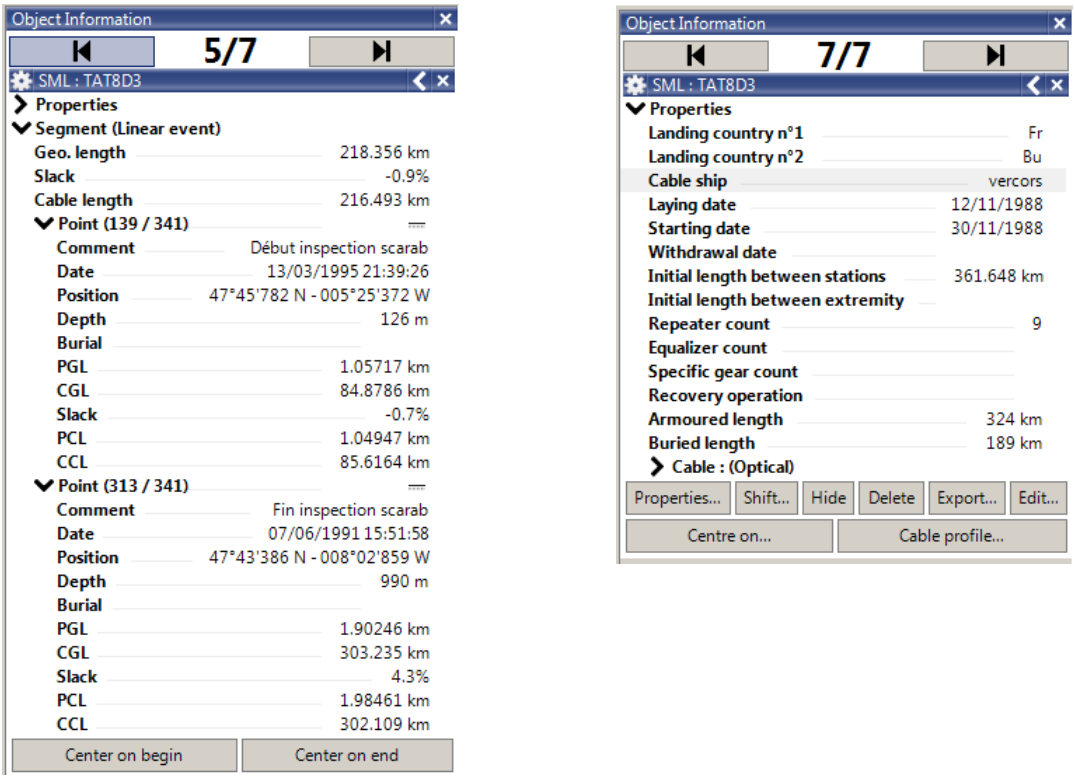


Figure 181 - SML querying samples

XX.2.2.6 SML Properties Window

This resizable window is displayed when the operator edits a SML. This is a direct access for viewing and printing the general description, the list of issues, profile and diagram of SMLs.

Consultation is possible in each dedicated page.

Printing depends of the general configuration of Windows.

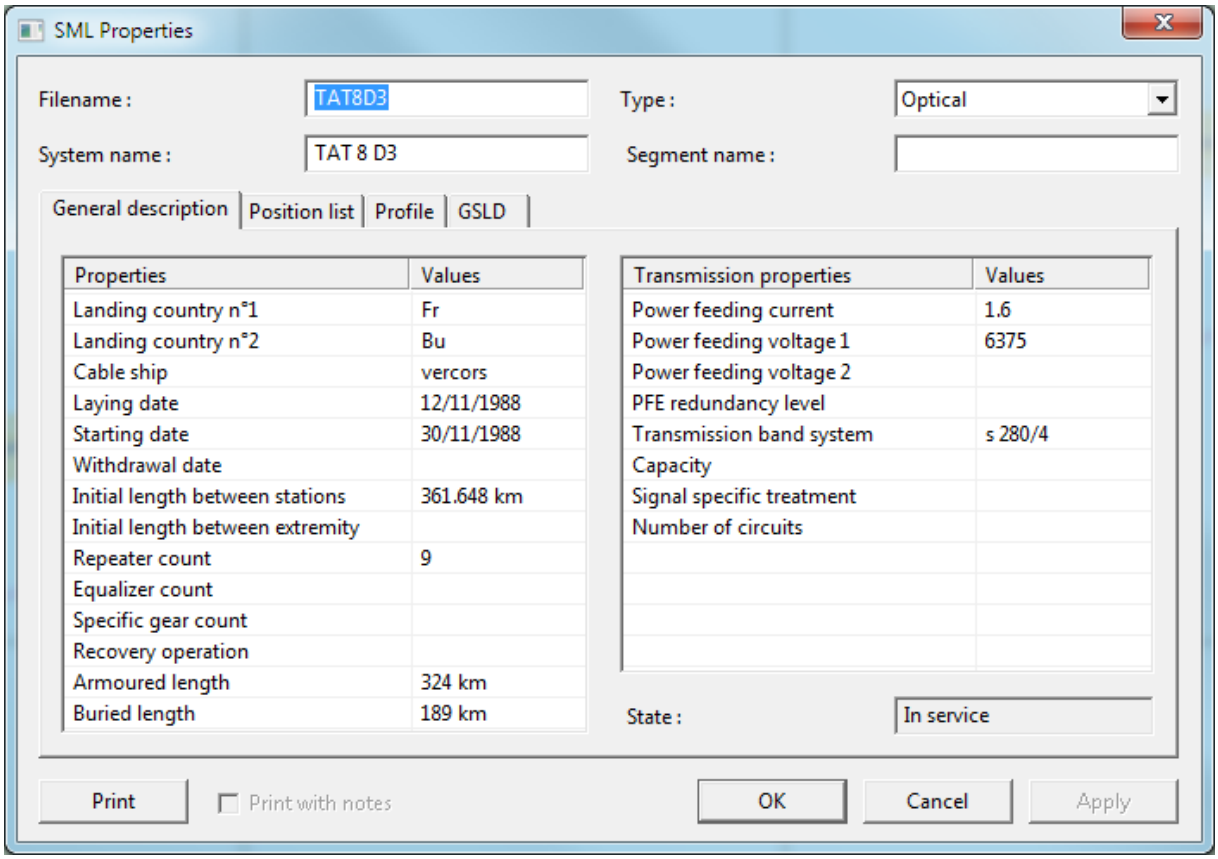


Figure 182 - SML properties window, general description

General description

The general description of the SML is divided into 3 parts grouping properties by categories: main, general and transmission.

The properties of the general description can be edited directly in the window.

Key properties

These properties are located in the upper area of the window to be shown when viewing other tabs in the SML (list of issues, profile and diagrams):

- **Filename**: SML filename, must be defined and unique for system.
- **Type**: depending of SML type:
  - For cable: Coaxial or Optical
  - For pipeline: Gas, Oil or Water
- **System Name**: system official name
- **Segment name**: system segment name

General Properties

These properties are located in the left part of the general description page:

- **Landing country n°1***:* the country's initial landing or tip # 1
- **Landing country n°2**: the country's initial landing or the tip # 2
- **Cable ship**: name of the cable ship which did the link
- **Laying date**: The date of the link installation. Also used to determine the SML status.
- **Starting date**: The date of the connection

- **Withdrawal date**: withdrawal date of the bond also used to determine the SML status
- **Initial length between stations**: initial cable length between stations
- **Initial length between extremities**: initial cable length between ends or up-link points ranges
- **Repeater count**
- **Equalizer count**
- **Specific gear count**
- **Recovery operation**: end indent marker of cables
- **Armoured length**: armoured initial length cable
- **Buried length**: buried initial cable length

Transmission properties

These properties only useful for cable type SML are located on the right side of the general description page:

- **Power feeding current**: remote power supply current
- **Power feeding voltage n°1**: remote power supply voltage at the end n°1
- **Power feeding voltage n°2**: remote power supply voltage at the end n°2
- **PFE redundancy level**: number of redundancy to ensure the remote supply
- **Transmission band system**: system maximum frequency
- **Capacity**: number of simultaneous calls on the link
- **Signal specific treatment**: compression processing and concentration (DCMS)
- **Number of circuits**: number of lanes (minimum allocable unit owner ship)

At the end of the topic, an unalterable indicator transmits the system state. This condition is automatically deducted based on installation and removal dates. Here are the possible states:

- Planned (no set date)
- In service (installation date entered, date of withdrawal empty)
- Abandoned (date of withdrawal entered)

The condition affects the default display colours near diving line in the geographical view.

List of positions

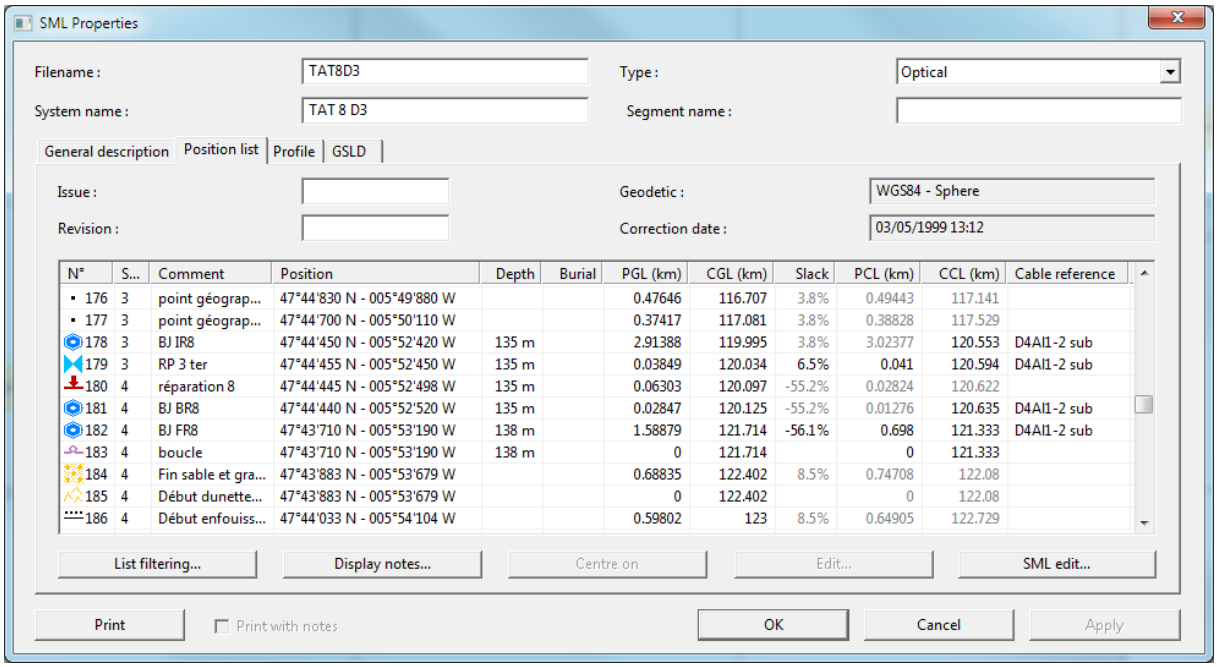


Figure 183 - List of positions window

This page shows the list of the "old" MMS-DOS positions, by presenting SML elements as a list.

Consulting the list offers the possibilities:

- To focus the geographic view on an item
- To filter the content (because of the focus control; to be consistent with the old version)
- Access to the modification elements course of the underwater line with another control window

Only one item is selected in the list.

The header of the list shows the main properties of the SML (see key properties above) with some extra indications:

- The edition number
- The revision number of the edition
- Geodesy for an expressed list with geographic coordinates with an indication of calculation on a sphere or ellipsoid
- Correction date corresponding to the most recent date among all elements

The list consists of several columns:

- N: is the point number of the line. A point with note/picture is indicate with 'n'/'p' character.
- S: section number; equivalent to the calculated one with repeaters
- Comment: the point corresponds to the commentary
- Position: corresponds to the geographic or UTM point
- Depth: corresponds to the depth point

- Burial: a negative value data shows a suspension height, while a positive value data shows a deep burying. The unit is the same as for the depth.
- PGL: corresponds to the partial geographic lengths for the point
- CGL: corresponds to the cumulative geographic lengths for the point
- Slack: corresponds to the slack between two points calculated from cable and geographic partial lengths (not for pipeline)
- PCL: corresponding to partial cable length set for the point. (not for pipeline)
- CCL: corresponding to cumulative cable length set for the point. (not for pipeline)
- Cable reference: corresponds to the cable reference. (not for pipeline)

Context menu

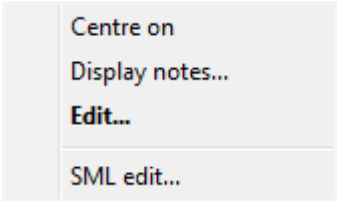


Figure 184 - Context menu list

A right click on an item opens a context menu to perform actions:

- Centre on/Refocus on the geographical point (see Center on one element)
- See details about the point
- Edit the item (see Editing an element)
- Edit SML (see Modification of the course and elements)

List filtering

The list of positions is built from all SML elements by default. By pressing the filter list button, a dialog box lets the user define the components of this list.

Filtering:

- All elements
- All elements with the same type
- An element of one type by selecting its symbol

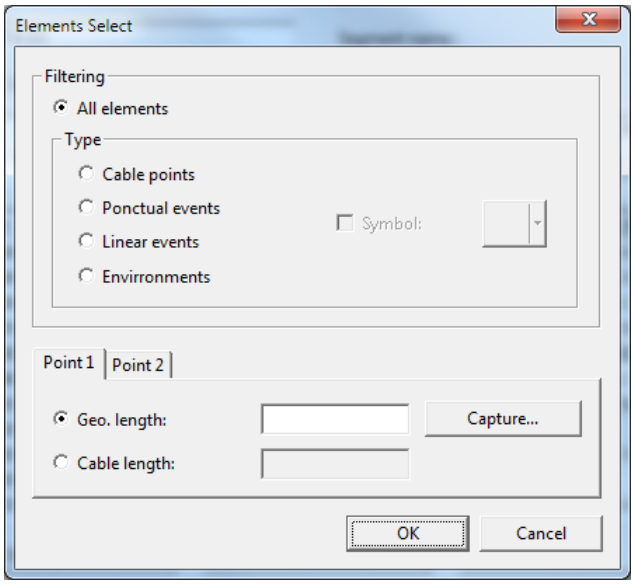


Figure 185 - List filtering

It is also possible to define both ends of the list by entering either a cumulative cable length, or a cumulative geographical length. This may also be determined after capturing a point with the cursor or from a cable point selection in a summary list.

Notes displaying

See notes button controls the notes of all the elements constituting the list. They may be printed.

Centre on one element

When an item is selected in the list, pressing the button **Centre on** refocuses the geographical view on the element.

Double clicking on an element also refocuses.

Editing an element

Editing an element is available:

- From the list of positions after selecting the item by pressing the **Edit** button.
- After inserting a new element in the change of the route (see Inserting a point).
- After capturing the point to edit from the SML edit window (see Editing a point).

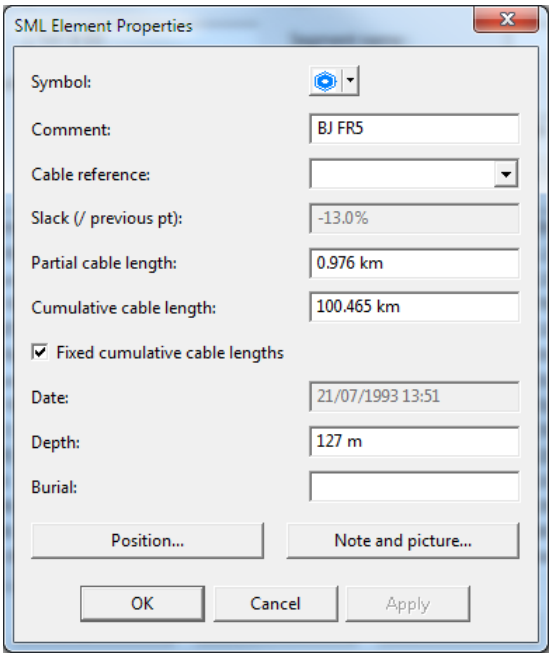


Figure 186 - SML element properties

Positioning an element

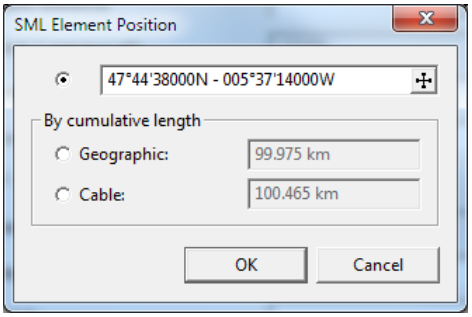


Figure 187 - SML element position

The positioning of an element is accessed from the window property but also when inserting a new point (see Inserting a point).

This positioning is managed by a window that defines its geographical position, from:

- A keyboard input or mouse cursor
- A geographic cumulative distance
- A cable cumulative distance (not for pipeline)

As in MMS-DOS, only the cable points are used to define the underwater link. Event points and environment are projected on the cable route.

This rule has direct consequences when a change occurs on the course cable when inserting, deleting or moving a cable point. In such cases, the software automatically recalculates the moving *EvenEnvi* points whose position is evaluated by the rule of three from intermediate geographic distances.

Upon validation of the window the software is refocusing on the geographical position view of the new point and returns to the editing window.

Note and picture

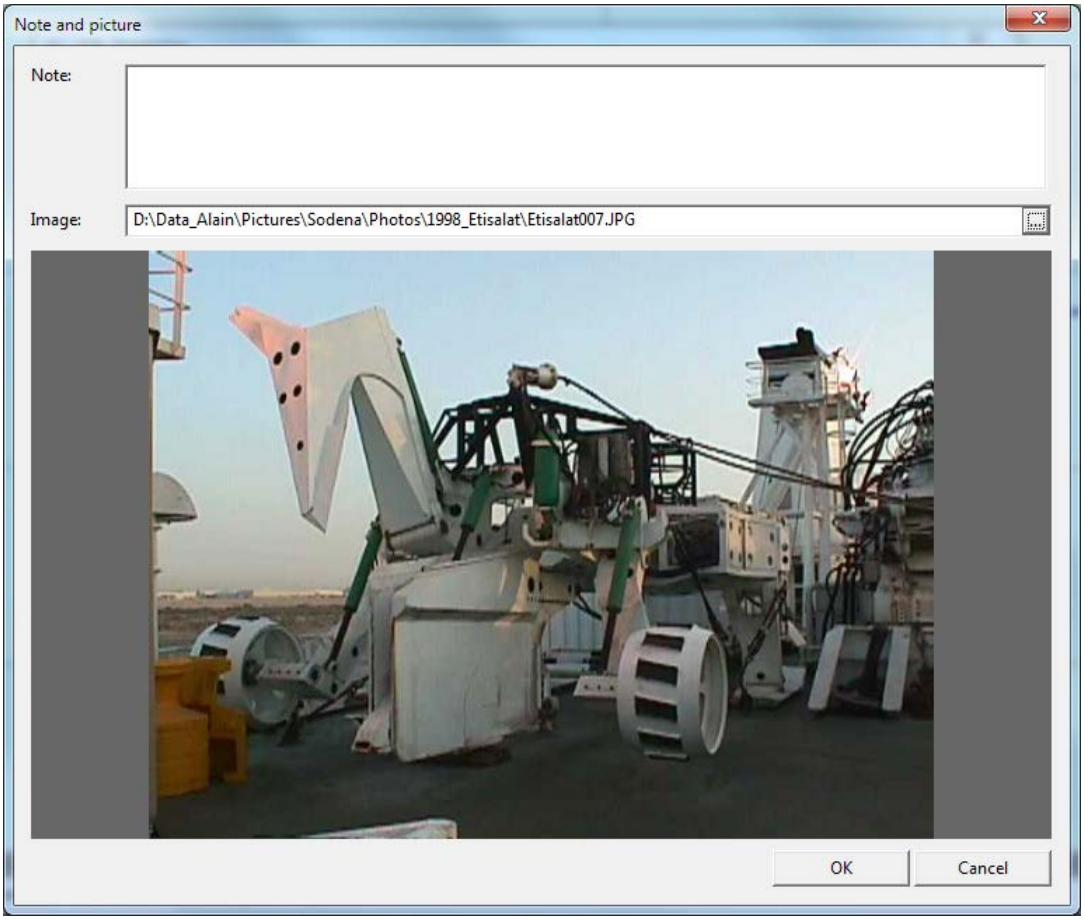


Figure 188 - Note and picture input window

A window is used to enter:

- A note
- A path to a picture

Modification of the course and elements

Modification, course, elements edition are managed by a window called from the position list page of the SML or after a query (see § XX.2.2.5).

The editing window may insert a SML, edit and delete items.

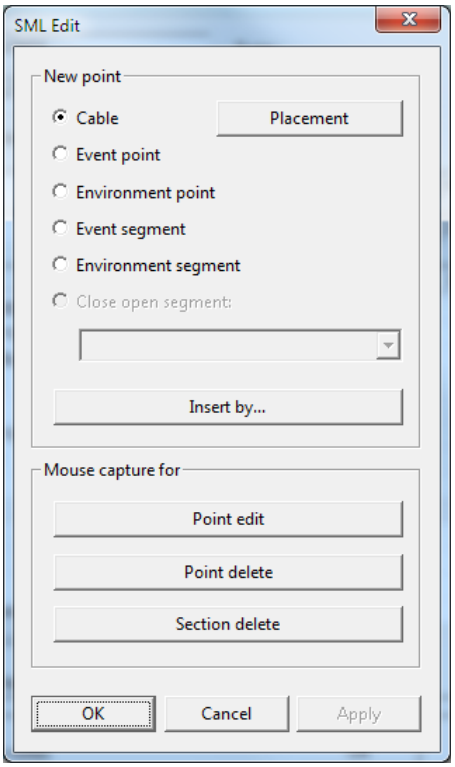


Figure 189 - SML edit window

Inserting a point

The insertion of a point depends on its type. It is possible to finish a segment by selecting the relevant segment in a list.

The *placement* button designates a point where the cable segment needs to be inserted.

The *Insert* button opens the position described in Positioning an element, and then opens the element edition described in Editing an element.

When the edition is finished, the software returns to the SML element position window to insert another point if necessary.

Editing a point

After clicking on the point edition button, the point to edit must be selected. For this, the user should use the mouse in the geographical view of the relevant SML.

After the point being validated, the sequence is the one described in Editing an element.

Deleting a point

After clicking on the delete point button, point to delete must be selected. For this, the user should use the mouse in the geographical view of the relevant SML.

The command is validate with delete validation window.

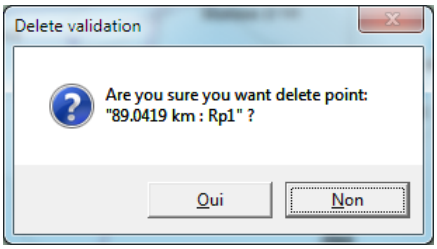


Figure 190 - Delete point validation window

After this validation, another point can be deleting.

To exit and return to the SML Edit window, press [Esc] key or the right button mouse.

Deleting a section/leg

To delete a section, the user should select the extreme points of the section by using the mouse in the geographical view of the relevant SML.

After two points selected, the command is validate with delete validation window.

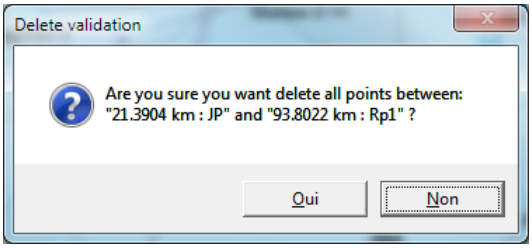


Figure 191 - Delete section validation window

After this validation, another section can be deleting.

To exit and return to the SML Edit window, press [Esc] key or the right button mouse.

Profile

At the top of the page, the button *bound* defines the extreme points of the profile using the same filtering window described in List filtering (when the *filtering* is disabled). The bounds are then shown at the top of the window.

The profile format is identical between screen edition and printer. However, the screen edition has the advantage of providing information simply by moving the mouse cursor in the area of the profile. The cursor is then redrawn on the line curve. Geographic distances, cable and upstream and downstream slack are shown. In this case, the slack is calculated with remote points three times the depth.

It is also possible to query the slack between any two points by using the left mouse button.

The profile is built from probe values of SML points and it is possible to use the interpolated values provided by the bathymetry module by checking the checkbox "Bathymetric datas used".

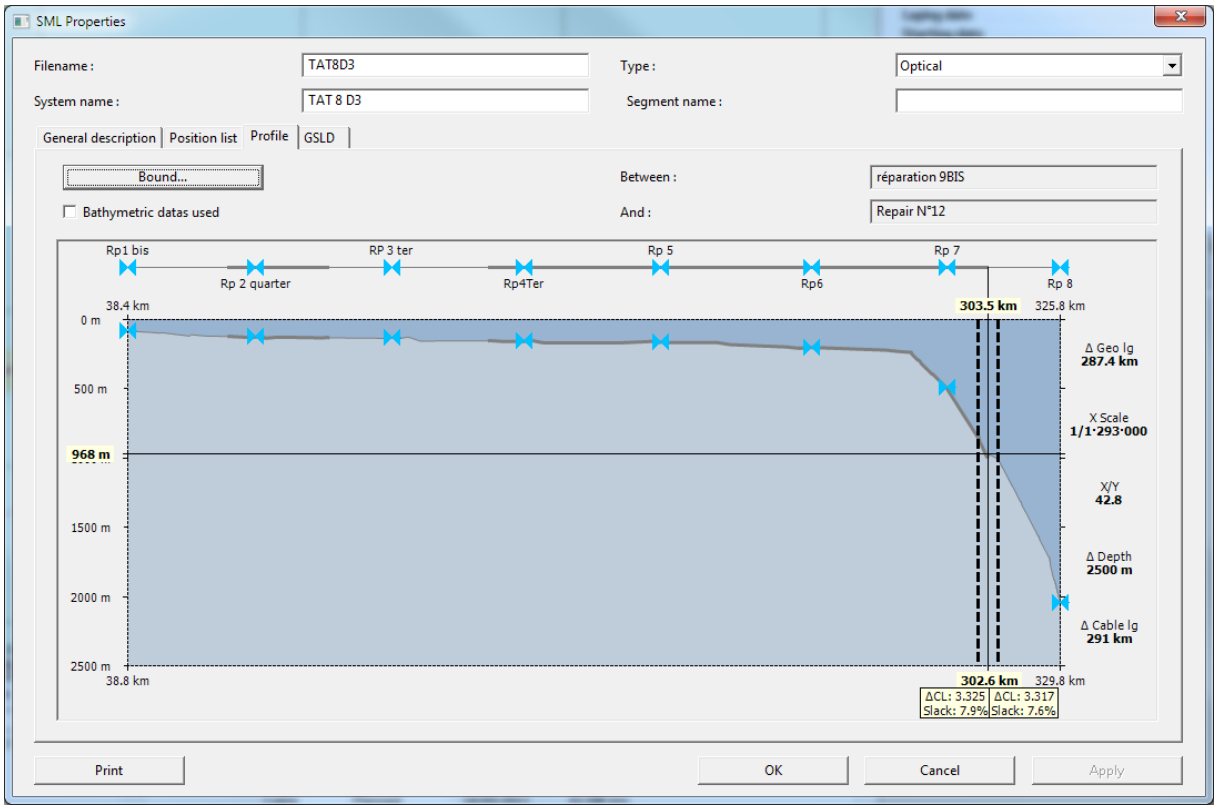


Figure 192 - SML/PL profile

GSLD

The GSLD is a SML horizontal general diagram where only cable elements are shown (with the exception of geographical points).

GSLD size varies depending on the number of cable points, knowing that it is always edited on the entire SML.

A GSLD does not exist for a pipeline.

Heading

These properties are from fields already in MMS-DOS.

The header of the diagram shows the SML main properties (see Key properties) with extra information:

- The edition number
- The revision number of the edition
- The correction date which corresponds to the most recent date among all the elements

Contents

Its format is independent of the scale. The line cable points are shown linearly in geographical length sequence and adjusted according to defined sections of repeaters.

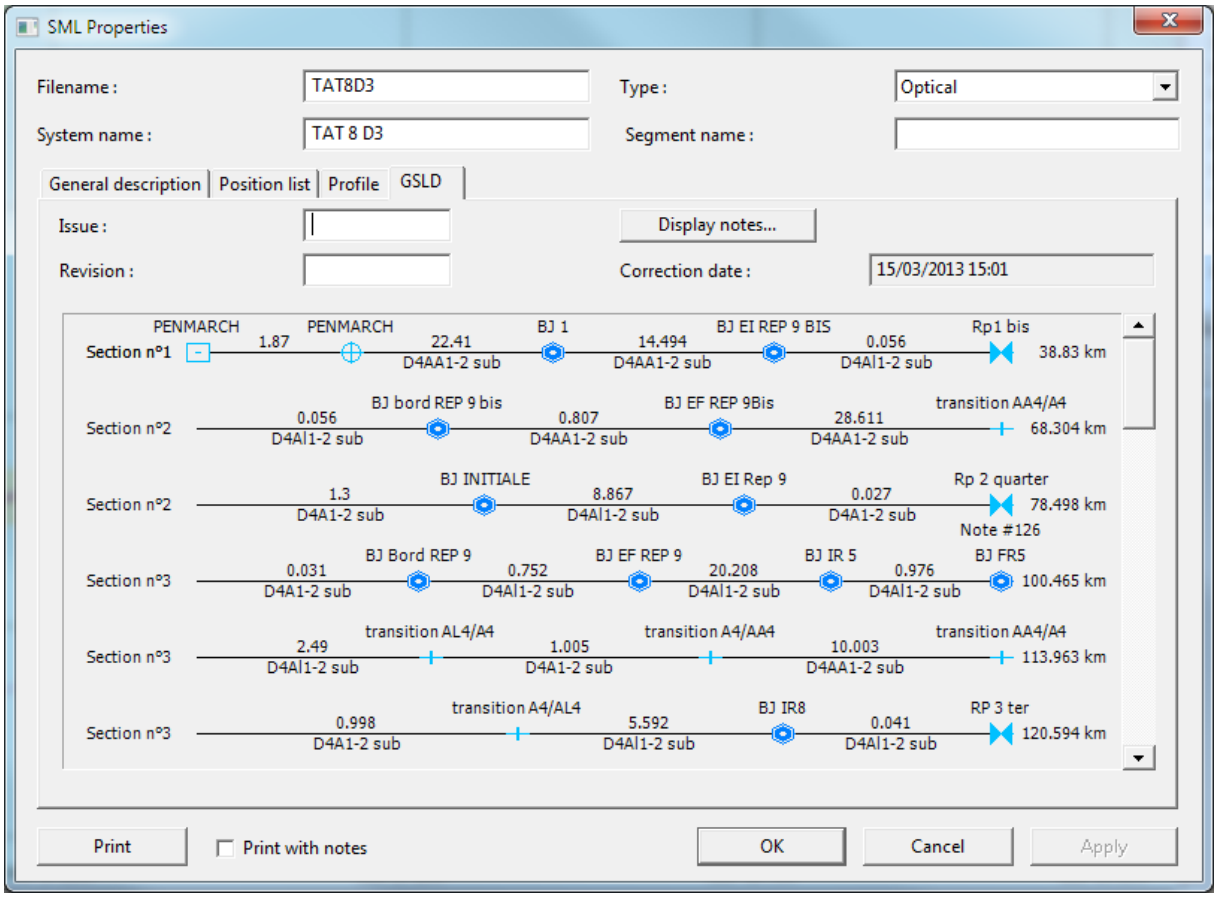
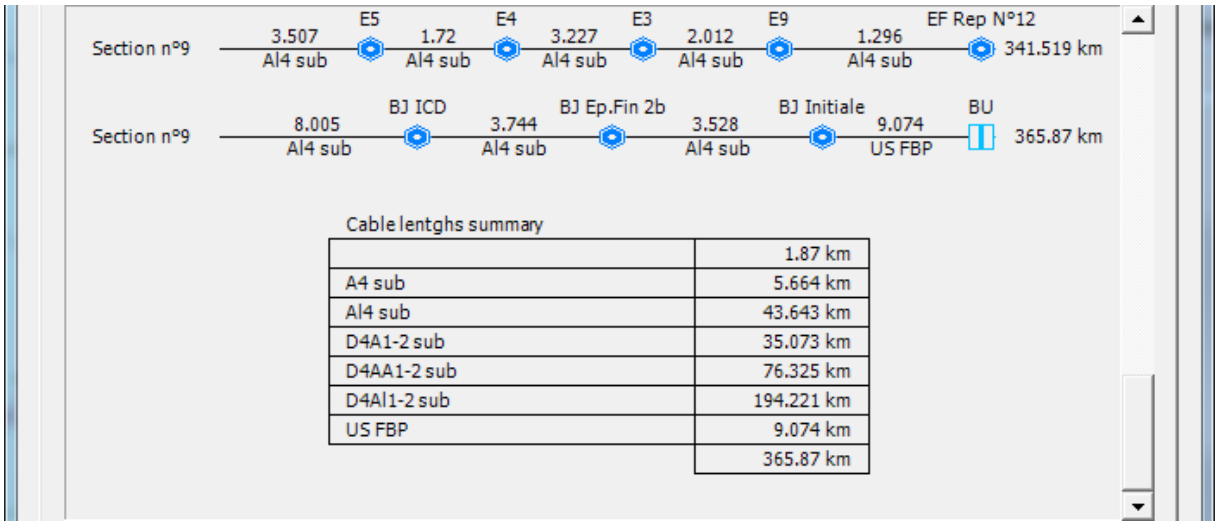


Figure 193 - GSLD of a SML

Information is the same as in the MMS-DOS version. It also has a cable lengths table with references.



	1.87 km
A4 sub	5.664 km
AI4 sub	43.643 km
D4A1-2 sub	35.073 km
D4AA1-2 sub	76.325 km
D4AI1-2 sub	194.221 km
US FBP	9.074 km
	365.87 km

Figure 194 - GSLD cable lengths summary

Display notes

The **Display notes** button controls the notes of all elements of the diagram. They are printable.

XX.2.2.7 SML creation

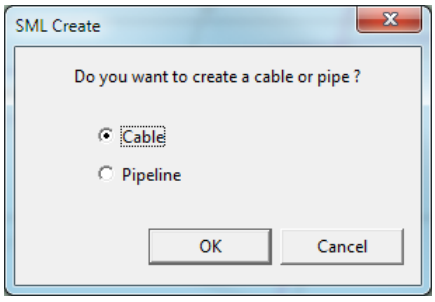


Figure 195 - SML create window

From the SMLs list (see List of SMLs), the *create* button opens a window to select type of SML: Cable or Pipeline. After validation, the software displays the properties window, and you can then enter general settings and edit the SML route/leg.

The principle is the same as for a modification (see Modification of the course and elements)

Important

AFTER VALIDATION OF SML TYPE, THIS TYPE CANNOT BE CHANGED.

XX.2.2.8 SML removing

From the SMLs list (see List of SMLs),) or a query (see XX.2.2.5), the **Delete** button removes the SMLs selected.

A confirmation window is used to prevent unwanted deletion.

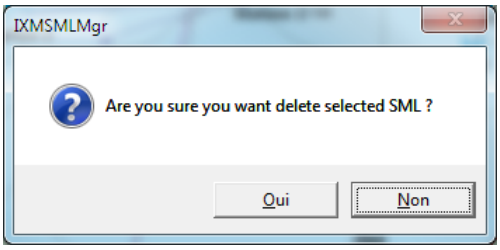


Figure 196 - SML removing validation window

XX.2.2.9 SML shifting

From a query (see XX.2.2.5), the **Shift** button shifts the selected SML.

Offset parameters are entered in a separate window.

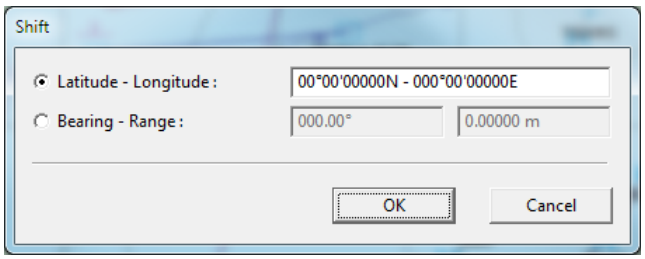


Figure 197 - SML/PL shifting window

XX.2.2.10 SML export

From the SMLs list (see List of SMLs), or a query (see XX.2.2.5) the *Export* button exports SMLs in different formats.
The exported files contain informations regarding cable bodies (i.e. repeaters, bus, joints).

SML export in Microsoft Excel file

Each SML is a file exportable in Microsoft Excel.
To avoid any risk of inconsistency, the text/csv (Character Separated Value) is used.

RTF files

Each exported SML corresponds to a RTF file.
The RTF file is composed of the same data than the previously mentioned CSV file, meaning that the data is arranged in character separated columns inside the document.

DXF file

Each exported SML corresponds to a DXF file representing the geometry of the SML.

XX.2.2.11 SML import

The SML import is accessible via a menu: **System/Import/MMS Objects** (see System menu/Import).
Two SMLs import choices are possible: the old MMS-DOS format and the Microsoft Excel format.
The information regarding cable bodies (i.e., repeaters, bus, joints) are imported for both file formats.

Old MMS-DOS format

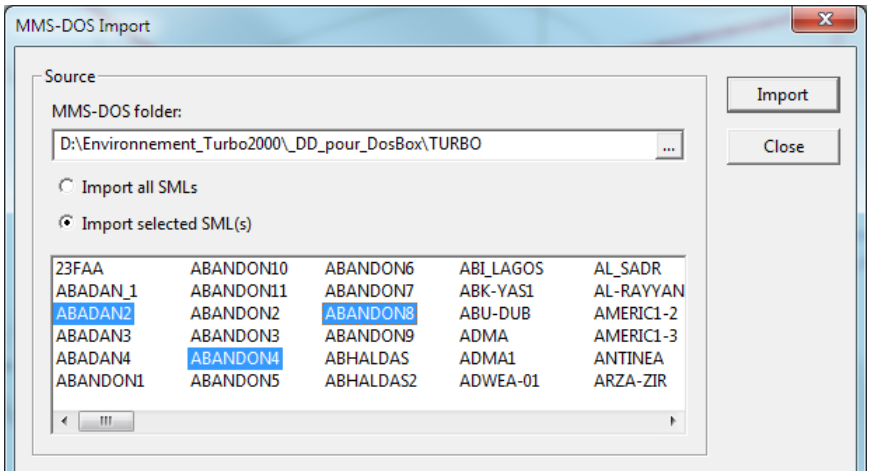


Figure 198 - SML MMS-DOS import window

After selecting the root folder of MMS-DOS, all SMLs or just selected SML in the list can be imported.
The imported SMLs are directly loading and displaying on the screen.

SML import with Microsoft Excel file

This is used to select a text/csv (Character Separated Value) file corresponding to a SML to import. The format of this file (most notably number and designation of columns) is the same as for the export of SML in CSV file

XX.2.3 BATHYMETRIC DATA MANAGEMENT

This is the use of a DXF (AutoCAD) file as a data provider for the bathymetric module. The importation consists in reading depth points (in forms of X, Y, Z coordinates) collections from a DXF file and making them available as a standard Gecdis bathymetric source. The sounding coordinates are identified from DXF TEXT objects in which Z coordinate is interpreted as a depth in meter (negative value).

XX.3 Definitions

Terms	Definition
CMS	Cable Management System
DSLD	Detail Submarine on Line Diagram
DXF	Drawing exchange Format
EvenEnvi	General type involving event and environment
GSLD	General Submarine on Line Diagram
MMS-DOS	MMS DOS Technology
SML	Submarine Link (cable or pipeline)
MMS	Marine cable Management System
PL	Pipeline

iXBlue CONTACT - SUPPORT 24/7 CUSTOMER SUPPORT HELPLINE

FOR NON-EMERGENCY SUPPORT:

support@ixblue.com

FOR GENUINE EMERGENCIES ONLY:

North America / NORAM
+1 888 600 7573 Extension 2

Europe Middle-East Africa Latin-America / EMEA-LATAM
+33 1 30 08 98 98

Asia Pacific / APAC
+65 6747 7027

iXBlue CONTACT - SALES

North America / NORAM
+1 888 600 7573

iXBlue Inc Boston area US
11 Erie Drive, Natick, MA 01760, US

Office: **Houston, US**

Europe Middle-East Africa Latin-America / EMEA-LATAM
+33 1 30 08 88 88

iXBlue SAS Marly France
52 avenue de l'Europe Marly le Roi, 78160, France
Offices: **Dubai, Germany, Netherlands, Norway, UK, Italy**

Asia Pacific / APAC
+65 6747 4912

iXBlue Pte Limited Singapore
15A Changi Business Park Central 1#04-02 Eightrium Singapore 486035

Offices: **Australia, China, India**

Appendices

A GLOSSARY

Term	Definition
Accuracy of Data	An area within which the best estimate of the overall accuracy of the data is uniform. The overall accuracy takes into account for example the source accuracy, chart scale, digitising accuracy, etc. An area with a uniform estimated degree of general data accuracy. General accuracy takes into account source accuracy, chart scale and digitization accuracy for example.
Acquisition Timeout	Delay since last acquisition after which the piece of information is considered as invalid.
Alarm	Mechanism that announces with a sound and visually a condition that requires attention.
Altitude	The vertical distance above or below a datum..
Apparent Wind	Wind value that results from two movements: the speed of the ship and the true wind. The apparent wind is the wind that a person feels on a moving ship, i.e. the wind that is acquired by and anemometer and a weather vane.
Area	Polygon that is inserted by the user and can be associated with a radar alarm.
Barometric Pressure	The measure of atmospheric pressure that is given by way of a barometer and is expressed in kilopascal.
Basic display	The information level at which no data can be eliminated from the display. This information is required in all geographical areas and in all circumstances. It is not enough however to guarantee completely safe navigation.
Bearing Line	Azimuth in which a seamark is located.
Bearing Range Lines	Navigational-aid that allows to display the relative heading and the distance between two objects on the screen.
Bridge Height	The difference between bridge height and draught.
Calculation rate	The rhythm sentences are transmitted.
Cell	A geographical area containing cartographic data. Each cell has a separate unique name. Hydrographic Offices divide their responsibility area into the cells, which they publish.
CCRP	Consistent Common Reference Point, see Conning position.
Channelling	Assignation of a display context to the leg of a route..
Chart area	Part of the screen that displays navigation chart data. Gecdis screen is made up of a number of sections that may or may not be displayed.

Term	Definition
Chart type	A cell may be compiled to six different scales according to navigation purpose. The different chart types are as follows: and Settings\All Users → 1:2,500 Harbour → 1:75,000 Approach → 1:260,000 Coastal → 1:700,000 General → 1:3,000,000 Overview → 1:15,000,000
Charted Depth	Altitude, above or below a level of reference, of a point in Earth that is constantly or periodically submerged.
Checksum	Numeric value that allows to check the validity of a received or transmitted sentence.
Clearing Line	Half line made from seamarks that allow to avoid dangers.
COG	Course make good of the ship.
Compilation Scale	The scale to which the data were initially compiled. For example, this may define the scale of the paper chart used for the digitization of the data. This scale is determined by the hydrographic agency and coded in the navigation chart.
Conning position	The reference position of the ship. If the positioning system is not located on the bridge, the value of this position is the result of the correction that is specified by the user.
Control	State of dependence of an object related to another object.
Coordinates	Geographical co-ordinates of a spot that is numerically represented on two axes.
Corrupted Data	Data altered or modified since production, issuance or retrieval.
Coverage	A geographical area that describes the coverage and extent of special objects.
COW	Leeway track of the ship that is the result of true heading and leeway angle.
CPA	Maximum closing point, i.e. point of closest distance between two mobiles.
Database	Entity in which user objects are stored in a structured way.
Datum	A set of parameters defining a coordinate system, and a set of control points whose geometric relationships are known, either through measurement or calculation.

Term	Definition
Deep Contour	Isobath that marks the boundaries of a water plane in which depth is deeper. A part of the seabed in which depth is deep compared with the surrounding points. With Gecdis, deep contour is represented in grey and waters whose depth is superior to it are in white. Equals to deep waters. An isobath connecting points of equal water depth, which is sometimes significantly displaced outside of soundings, symbols and other chart detail for clarity as well as generalization. Depth contours, therefore, often represent an approximate location of the line of equal depth as related to the surveyed line delineated on the source.
Deep Soundings	Soundings whose values are superior to the safety depth.
Deeper water contour	The area of the sea bottom that is deeper than the surrounding parts. The deeper water contour area is shown in grey and deeper water in white. The latter are particularly deep waters.
Depth	Vertical distance between the surface of the sea and the seabed, counted with positive figures to the bottom. Depth is the sum between charted depth and height of tide.
Depth contour	A line linking points that are at the same depth in the water column.
Depth soundings	Soundings deeper than the safety depth.
Display Base	The level of SENC information that cannot be removed from the display, consisting of information that is required at all times in all geographic areas and all circumstances. It is not intended to be sufficient for safe navigation.
Display Context	Specific properties of software's configuration.
Display Scale	The ratio between a distance on the display and a distance on the ground, normalized and expressed as, for example, 1:10 000.
Distance to waypoint	The distance between the Own Ship and the next waypoint.
Distance to wheel-over	The distance between the Own Ship and the next wheel-over.
DPT	Sentence that allows to acquire depth – i.e. the depth that relates to the transducer and the offset of the transducer. A positive offset indicates the distance between the transducer and the waterline. A negative offset indicates the distance between the transducer and the keel.
DR	Dead Reckonning abbreviation.
Draught	Vertical distance measured between the waterline and the lower part of the keel, in the section of the ship that is considered about.

Term	Definition
ECDIS (Electronic Chart Display and Information System)	Electronic Chart Display and Information System. When provided with adequate backup devices, this system is considered as the equivalent of an updated maritime chart in accordance with the V/20 regulation of the 1974's SOLAS Convention. It allows to display the selected information from a navigation electronic chart (SENC) and the positional information provided from navigation sensors, to help navigators to plan routes and monitor them. If desired, the system also allows to display additional information that is related to the navigation. The navigation information system which with adequate backup arrangements can be accepted as complying with the up-to-date chart required by regulation V/20 of the 1974 SOLAS Convention, by displaying selected information from a system electronic navigational chart (SENC) with positional information from navigation sensors to assist the mariner in route planning and route monitoring and by displaying additional navigation-related information.
Economic Speed	Default speed assigned to a leg if no other speed has been assigned to it.
ECS	Generic term to designate a device that displays chart data but is not intended to meet OMI's ECDIS operating standards requirements and check the need to import maritime charts.
ENC	A database standardized as to content, structure and format, issued for use with ECDIS on the authority of government authorized Hydrographic Offices. The ENC contains all the chart information necessary for safe navigation and may contain supplementary information in addition to that contained in the paper chart (e.g. sailing directions), which may be considered necessary for safe navigation.
ETA	Estimated time that is necessary to reach a destination.
State of a target	Situation of an ARPA target (Lost, To be Tracked or Tracked).
Event	Isolated object that is inserted by the user to show an event in the location of the Own Ship.
EW Size	Indication that gives the distance between the more eastern and western points of an area.
Extreme Draught	Draught that cannot be exceeded by the Own Ship.
FILE	Stream that uses a file to receive information.
Final ETA	Estimated time of arrival to the last wheel over of the route.
Folder	Element of a data classification system that allows to arrange files, documents, softwares in a coherent way.
GGA	NMEA sentence that defines data of a positioning system.
GLL	NMEA sentence that defines the geographical position.
Great Circle	Route of a ship that consists in following, in the Earth, an arc of a Great Circle – i.e. the shorter distance line to go from one point to another.

Term	Definition
HASP Key	Key that is connected on the parallel or USB port of the computer and allows to use the software. Also, it makes it possible to use a specific configuration on another computer without any enabling. In such a case, it acts as a mobile licence/configuration.
HDT (HeaDing True)	Sentence that defines heading information.
Heading to Steer	Heading that should be followed by the ship to reach the next wheel-over or waypoint. This value refers to the geographical north and moves in the same way as the Own Ship's heading.
Head-up	Chart orientation that depends on the Own Ship's heading, and is always turned to the top of the screen.
Heaving	Vertical movement of the ship on water surface.
Height of Tide	The vertical distance at any moment between the water level and chart datum.
Horizontal Datum	An area of uniform horizontal datum.
IHO (International Hydrographic Office)	Organization created in 1948 by the United Nations. This is the first international organism only devoted to maritime issues. OMI mainly tries to improve maritime security and prevent from maritime pollution provoked by ships.
Isobath	A line on a map joining points on the bed of the sea or other body or water, situated at an equal vertical distance beneath the surface.
Latitude	Scale of distance from Ecuador to north or south graduated from 0 to 90 degrees
Leeway angle	Difference between heading and the leeway track.
Leg	Section of a route that links two points. A route can be made of several sections.
Licence	Proof of the lawful use of the software.
Log	Device allowing to measure ship's speed from run distance during a certain time.
Long Time Tags	Time interval between each time mark that is associated to the ship's track.
Longitude	Angular distance measured in degrees from a point of the Earth to the original meridian.
Main view	A part of Gecdis screen that displays ENC data. Gecdis screen is composed with several parts that you can display or not.
Mark	Object that is inserted by the user and allows to indicate the location of a point in the chart.
Maximum XTE	Maximum allowed difference to a route. This difference is materialized by a line on each side of the route. When the Own Ship exceeds the maximum XTE (and the route is enabled), an alarm is generated.
MMSI	The Marine Mobile Service identification.
Navigation status	Situation of the ship that is defined with outdoor conditions.

Term	Definition
NET	UDP network stream (see UDP).
NMEA	National Maritime Electronics Association ; Official association that has defined a standard organizing interfaces on electrical signals and data transmission protocols, with the serial port of RS232 type devices.
North-up	Type of orientation that allows to orient the chart view to the geographical north.
NS Size	Indication that indicates the distance between the more northern and southern points, of an area.
OSD (Own Ship Data)	The sentence that gives Own Ship data (heading, route, speed, current, drift).
Overscale	The display of the chart information at a display scale larger than the compilation scale. Over scaling may arise from deliberate over scaling by the mariner, or from automatic over scaling by ECDIS in compiling a display when the data included is at various scales. Information displayed at a display scale greater than the compilation scale. This may be done deliberately by the user or it may occur automatically during display compilation, if the data relate to different scales.
Own Ship – Cursor Bearing	Bearing relative to the geographical north between the Own Ship and the cursor.
Pitching	Rocking movement of a mobile, in length direction.
Pivoting Position	Location of the ship from which it pivots.
Position – bow	The frontal position of the ship that can be defined in the Sizes tab of Own Ship characteristics.
Position.stern	The back position of the ship.
Presentation Library	The library of symbols defined in the display specifications in S-52, appendix 2 *Colour and Symbol Specifications for ECDIS*. It contains the following pages: Information about the chart display Shore features, ports Depth, currents Seabed, obstructions, pipelines Routes Special areas Buoys, beacons, lights, radar Paper charts buoys and beacons Mariner's symbols The presentation library is available in hard-copy or in digital form. The symbols shall be replicated in size and shape, using any convenient format. The colour tables shall be reproduces within the tolerances given in S-52, appendix 2/5.2.3. The remaining items may be implemented in any convenient form, which produces the same results as the presentation library.

Term	Definition
Quality of Data	An area within which a uniform assessment of the quality of the data exists.
Rate of Rotation	The velocity to rotate for a mobile.
Recommended Speed	The speed that is recommended to reach the next wheel-over, according to the ETA. Information is computed according to ship's position and ETA.
Reference position	The last real position value that is updated when the position changes, except if changed by a position control.
Reference Speed	The speed that is taken as a reference to define the way a mobile appears in the main view. If it is inferior to the mobile speed, the mobile will be in « early » mode and will be located below the main view. Otherwise, it will be centred and controlled on the main view..
Registration	Identification marks, that any ship should bear externally and visibly.
RENC	The regional ENC Coordinating Centre as defined by IHO (ENC distributor). Most ENC information will not be supplied directly from a Hydrographic Office to an ECDIS. Regional ENC Coordinating Centres (RENCs) will operate as central distribution nodes compliant with the IHO WEND model, receiving data from HOs and supplying distributors, agents and ECDIS users. A RENC must be able to authenticate ENC data sets provided by HOs using the digital signature files, decrypt the cell permit supplied with the data and then decrypt the data set (so that data validation can be performed), sign the data and then append its own signature. It must also be able to create/decrypt user permits and produce cell permits.
Rhumb-line	A line which crosses successive Meridians at a constant angle. This route is represented by a straight line in the chart, with the Mercator projection.
RM	Relative Motion abbreviation.
RMC	The sentence that defines the recommended GNSS minimum data (time, latitude, longitude, ground speed, heading to steer and date). This sentence is transmitted at most every two seconds.
Rolling	The rotation of a ship about its fore-and-aft axis.
ROT	The sentence that defines the rate of turn.
Route (1)	The itinerary followed by a ship, and relates two remote points, possibly separated with intermediary waypoints.
Route (2)	The heading of the leg of a route.
Route Monitoring	The process that allows to follow a route.
Safety Contour	The contour related to the own ship selected by the mariner to be used by ECDIS to distinguish the display between the safe and the unsafe water and for generating anti grounding alarms. The depth contour associated with the vessel, enabling a distinction to be made between the two-colour display mode and the four-colour mode and also allowing anti-grounding warnings to be generated.

Term	Definition
Safety Depth	The isobath above which the ship cannot navigate safely.
SCAMIN (scale minimum)	The minimum scale after which an object (mobile, fleet, etc.) is not displayed.
Sector	The object that is inserted by the user to which it is not possible to assign an alarm.
SENC (System Electronic Navigational Chart)	A database resulting from the transformation of the ENC by ECDIS for appropriate use, updates to the ENC by appropriate means, and other data added by the mariner. It is this database that is actually accessed by ECDIS for the display generation and other navigational functions, and is the equivalent to an up-to-date paper chart. The SENC may also contain information from other sources.
Shallow Contour	The isobath that gives the limits of the areas that are not as deep as the other ones. A part of the seabed in which depth is shallow compared with the surrounding points. As this contour is shallow, it is considered as dangerous for navigation. Equal to Shallow waters.
SOG (Speed Over Ground)	The speed of the ship over the ground.
Standard display	The information that must be indicated when a chart is displayed for the first time. The level of information provided by this display for route planning and verification can be modified by the navigator to match his or her needs.
SOW	The speed over water. This speed is relative to the surface of the sea.
Submersion	The depth at which a submarine is located.
Swaying course	The COG projected by the perpendicular line of the mobile and computed from the gyro.
Swaying Speed	The SOG projected on the perpendicular line of the mobile. In other words, this is the speed the ship moves on a virtual line that would be perpendicular to the ship. This piece of information is useful when docking.
TCP Stream	The protocol that allows to connect a transmitter to a receiver.
TCPA (Time to closest point of approach)	The time to the closest approaching point between two objects. This time defines the moment when two objects will be the closest the one from the other.
Tidal Amplitude	The vertical distance, indicated with positive values, between the sea surface and charted depth.
Tidal Curve	A graph that represents variations of sea level depending on time at a specific location. In normal conditions, the curve should look like a sinusoid.
Tidal Stream	In a tidal wave, the horizontal motion (the speed of the particles of water).
Tide Gauge	The device that allows to notice at any time the tidal amplitude.
Time Lag	The difference between the current time onboard and the UTC time.
TLL (Target latitude and longitude)	The sentence that acquires latitude and longitude of a target (target number, name, position and the time marker that is used in target tracking systems).

Term	Definition
TM	True Motion abbreviation.
True Heading	The heading relative to geographical north, which is the angle resulting from the crossing of the geographical north axis and the ship's headline.
True Wind	The wind vector in relation to the earth's surface. For a moving object it is the vector sum of the apparent wind and the velocity of the object.
TTG (Time To Go)	The time value, used to reach either a waypoint or a wheel over.
TTG to wapiti	The time estimated to reach the next waypoint.
TTG au wheel-over	The time estimated to reach the next wheel-over.
TTM (Tracked target message)	The sentence that allows to acquire data associated to a tracked target, relative to the Own Ship.
Turn radius starboard	The radius of the circle of a ship when turning starboard (e.g. to reach the new leg of a route).
Update	Update enabling management of the display of cartographic objects. This option lets the user: create new point objects, create new chart areas, annotate cartographic objects, delete cartographic objects, relocate point objects, cancel updates by erasing them.
User Object Filter	The operation that consists in selecting user objects, with specific criteria.
UPS	Universal Polar Stereographic: defines a conformal azimuthal projection and grid coordinates system used for both the northern and southern polar regions.
VBW	The sentence that indicates the speed on ground and on water.
Vertical Datum	Geodesics applied at water level. 30 different types of vertical datum.
VDR	The sentence that indicates stream's speed and heading.
VHW	The sentence that indicates the over water speed and true heading.
VTG	The sentence that indicates the on ground speed and heading.
Waypoint	Waypoints are used to define the points through which a route goes.
Waypoint ETA	Estimated time of arrival to a waypoint.
Wheel-over	Geographical position of the wheel-over to reach the new leg. A wheel-over is computed in relation to the turning radius.
Wheel-over ETA	Estimated time of arrival to a wheel-over.
XTE (Cross Track Error)	Alarm that is enabled when the mobile is outside the lane. A sound signal is associated to this alarm to inform the user of the danger.
ZDA	The sentence that allows to acquire date and time (UTC, day, month, year and local time lag).

B ECDIS INFORMATION MANDATORY

This appendix lists the various particulars required by the standards to find them easily.

B.1 Links Table

References	Subjects	Links
61174 - 4.6.1, 6.8.12g, G.17.5.6g	CCRP	CCRP configuration, page 114
61174 - 4.10.6, 6.9.7k	LOP	Piloting fix, page 179
61174 - 4.16, 6.10, F.7.1	Information on the application	Version, page ii Applied standards, page 320 Installation, page 2
61174 - 5.3.2, 62288 - 4.3.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.5.1	Readability	Requested screen, page 2 Screen size, page 30
61174 - 5.8.5, 6.7.3.2b	Visibility at night	Visibility at night, page 55
61174 - 6.9.4b	Twelve-hour log	Configuring the display of the events, page 65
62288 - 4.10, 4.5.1a	Terms, abbreviations, symbols	Glossary, page 311, Presentation library, page 321 Mobile representation, page 87 Vector representation, page 72 Route representation, page 200

B.2 Applied Standards

Publications	Edition	Date
IEC 61174	3.0	2008-09
IEC 62288	1.0	2008-07
IHO S-52	6.0	2010-03
IHO S-57	3.1.1	
IHO S-63	1.1.1	2012-04
IHO- Presentation Library	3.4	2008-01

C THE PRESENTATION LIBRARY, CHART 1

C.1 Information about the Chart Display (A, B)

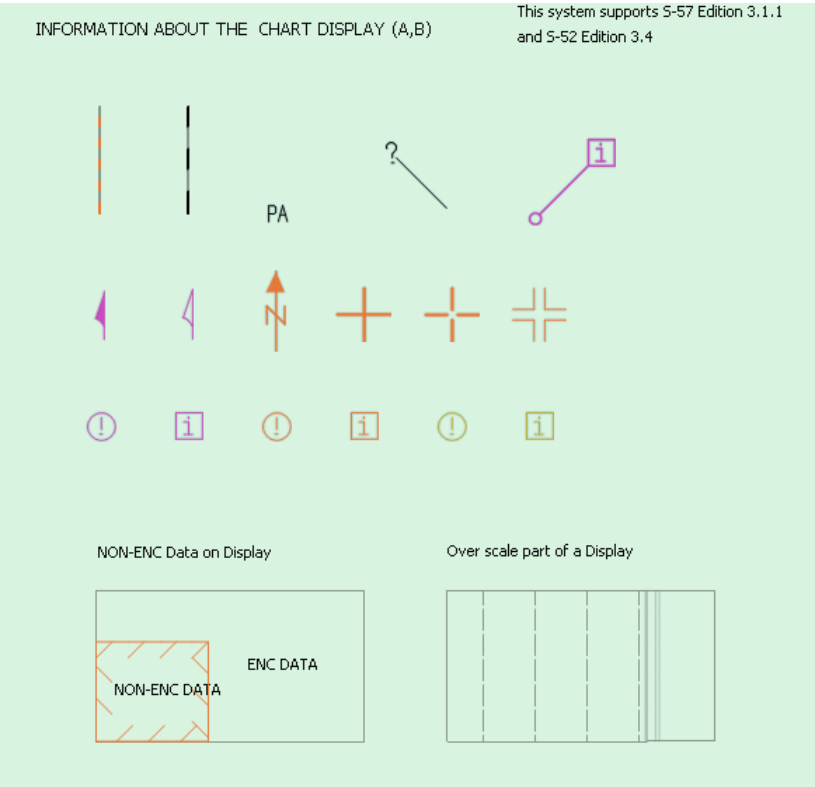


Figure 199 - Chart 1, screen 1

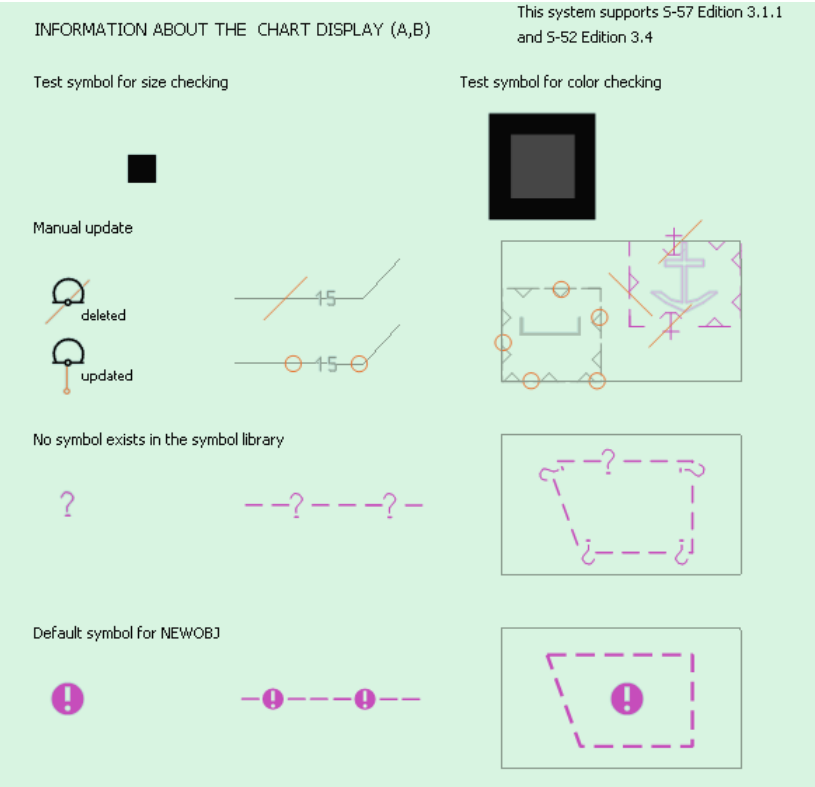


Figure 200 - Chart 1, screen 2

C.2 Natural and Man-Made Features (C, D, E)

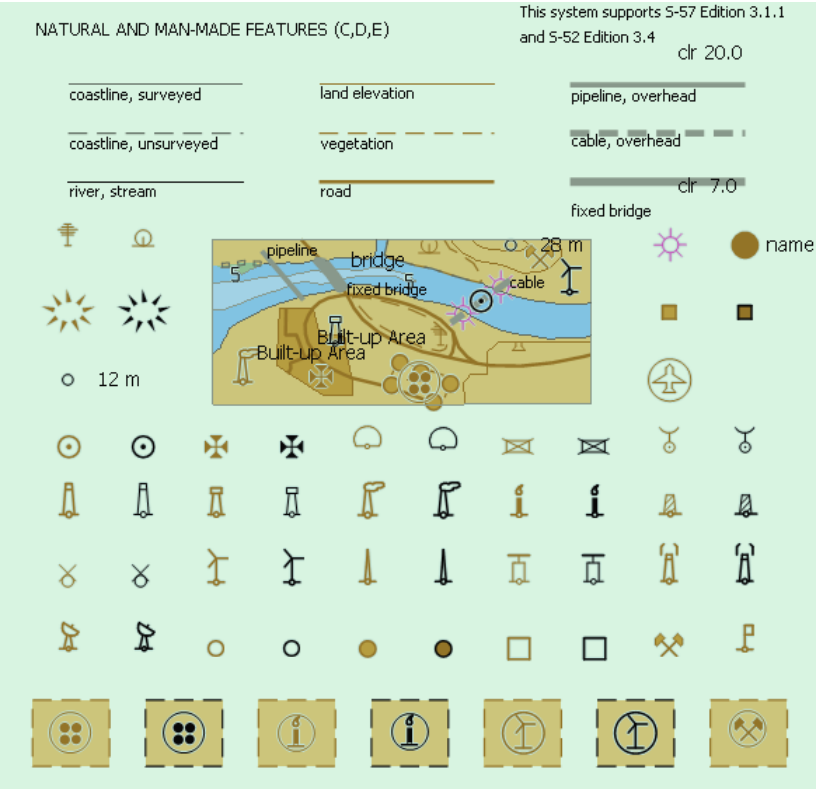


Figure 201 - Chart 1, screen 3

C.3 Port Features (F)

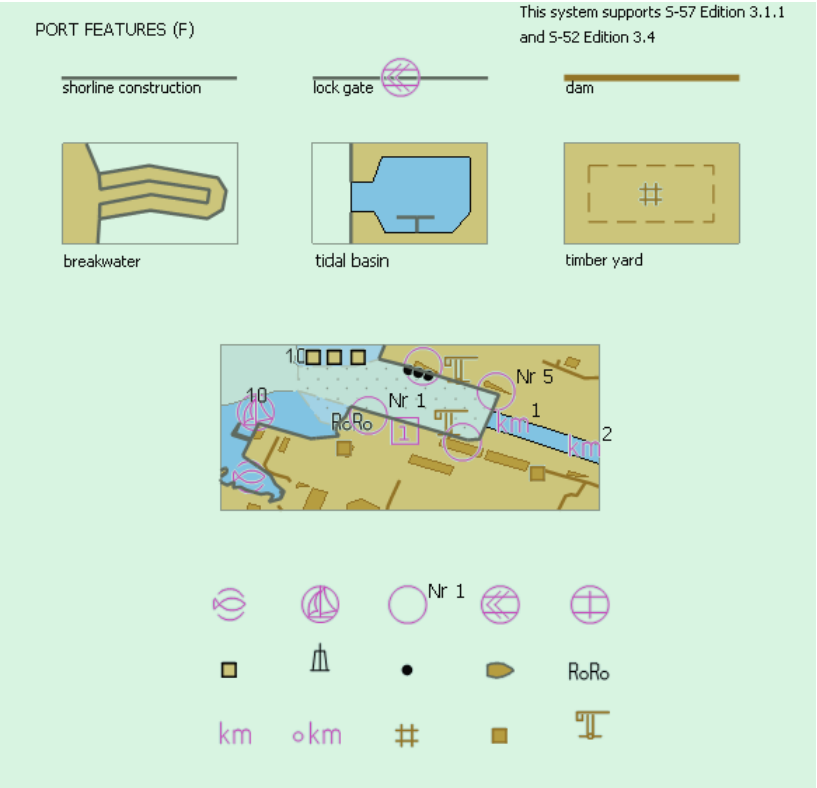


Figure 202 - Chart 1, screen 4

C.4 Depths, Currents, etc.(H, I)

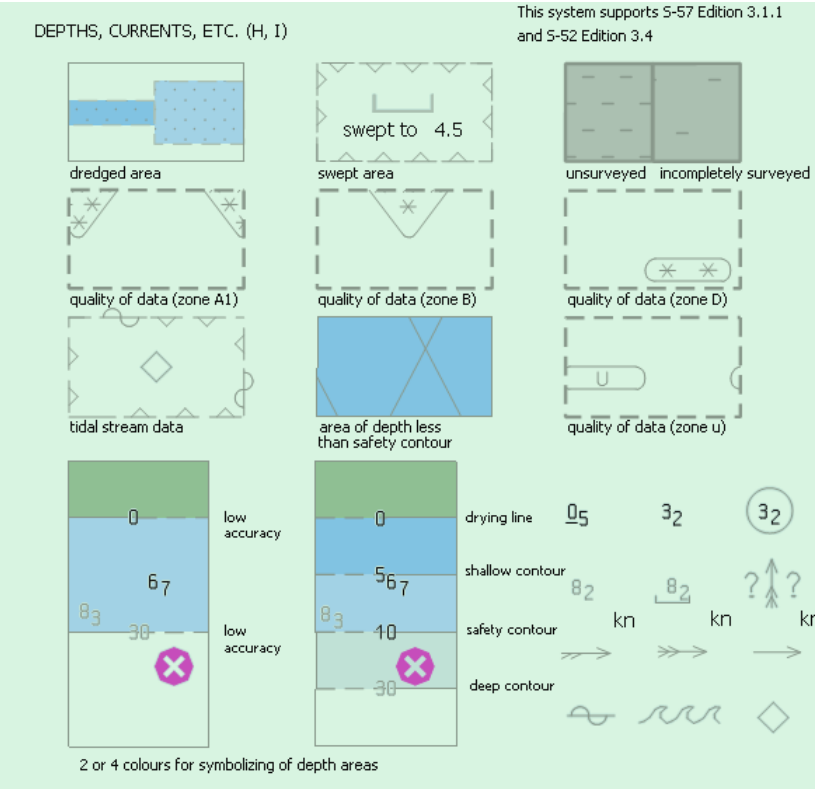


Figure 203 - Chart 1, screen 5

C.5 Seabed, Obstructions, Pipelines, etc. (J, K, L)

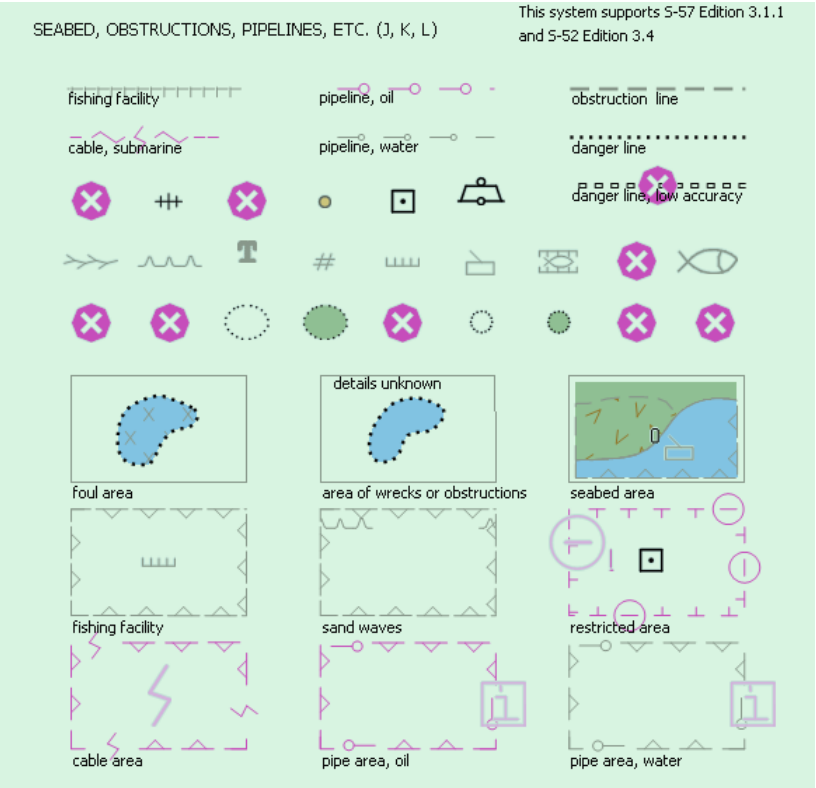


Figure 204 - Chart 1, screen 6

C.6 Traffic Routes (M)

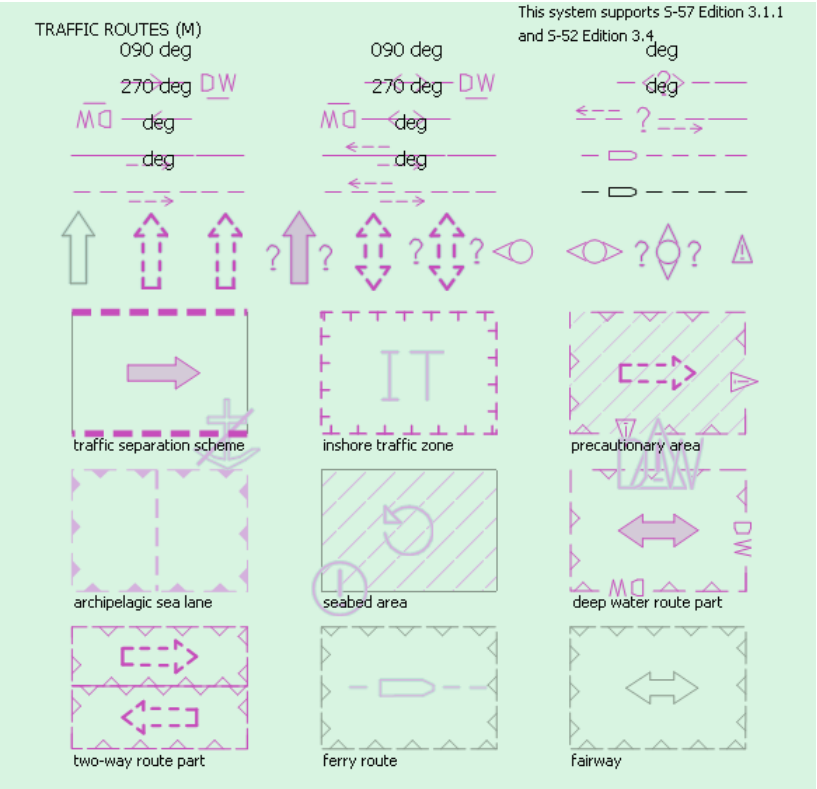


Figure 205 - Chart 1, screen 7

C.7 Special Areas (N)

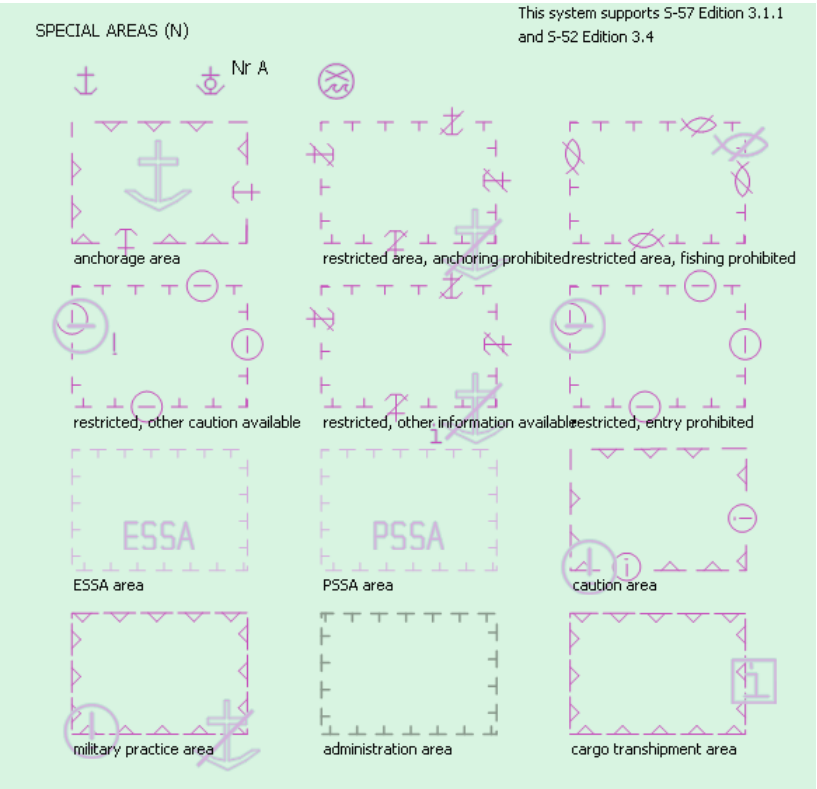


Figure 206 - Chart 1, screen 8

C.8 Aids and Services (P, R, S, T, U)

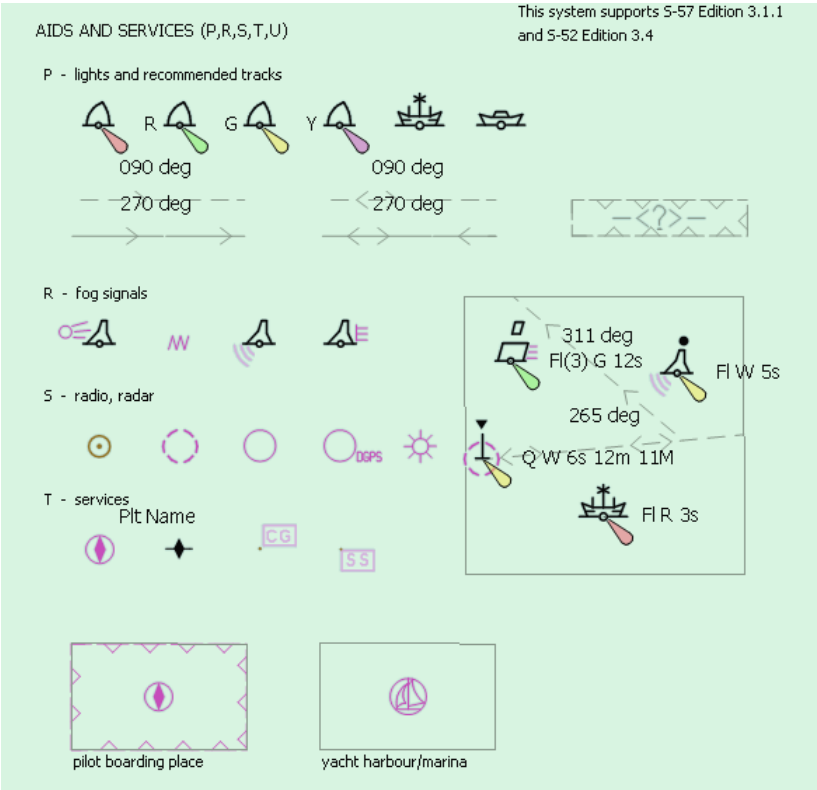


Figure 207 - Chart 1, screen 9

C.9 Buoys and Beacons (Q)

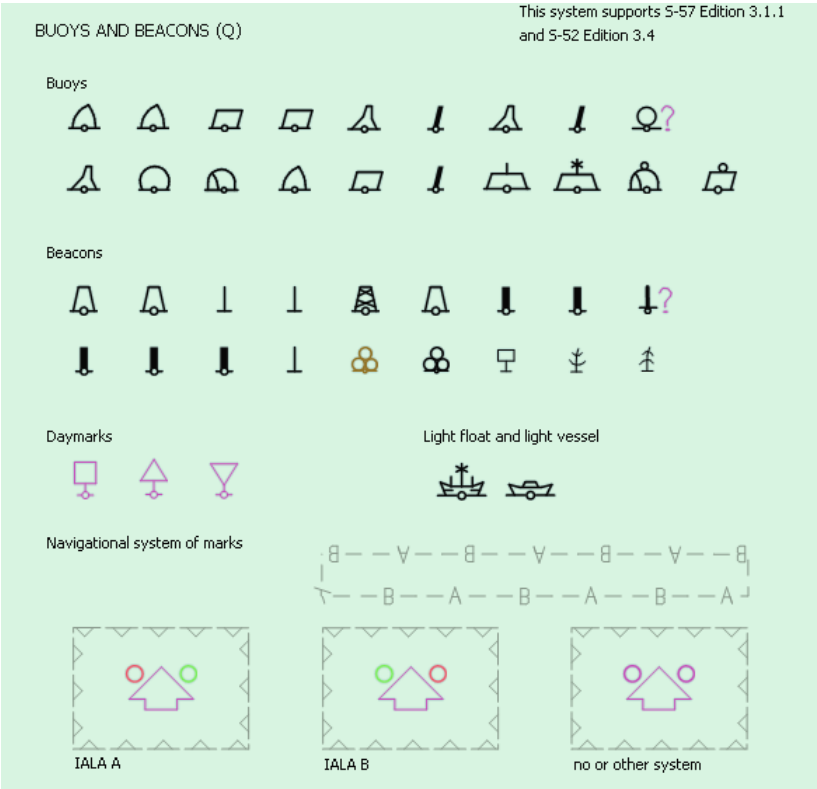


Figure 208 - Chart 1, screen 10

C.10 Topmarks (Q)

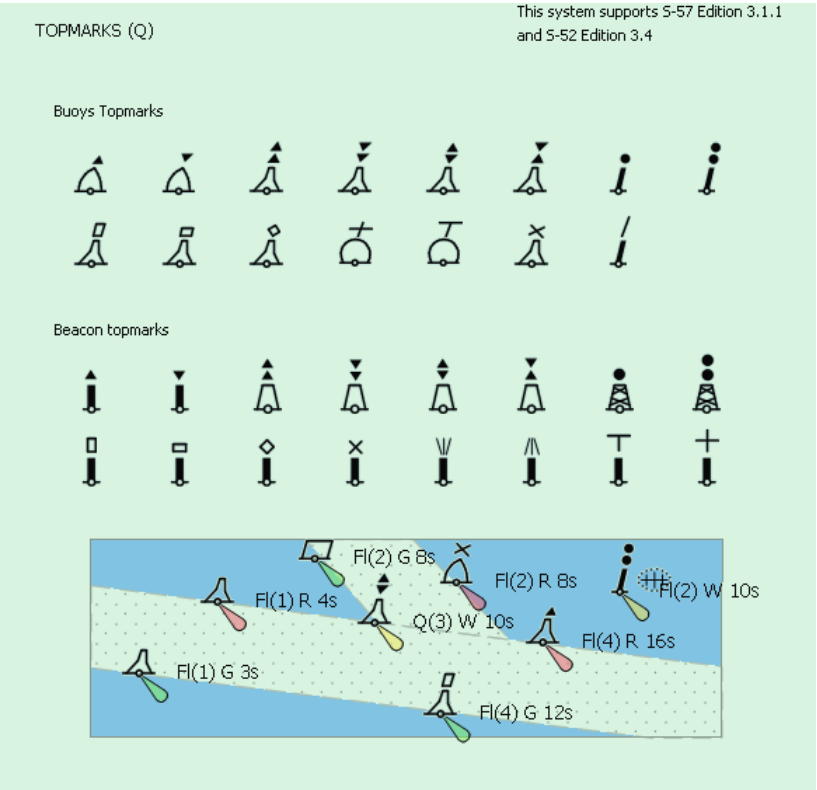


Figure 209 - Chart 1, screen 11

C.11 Color Test Diagram

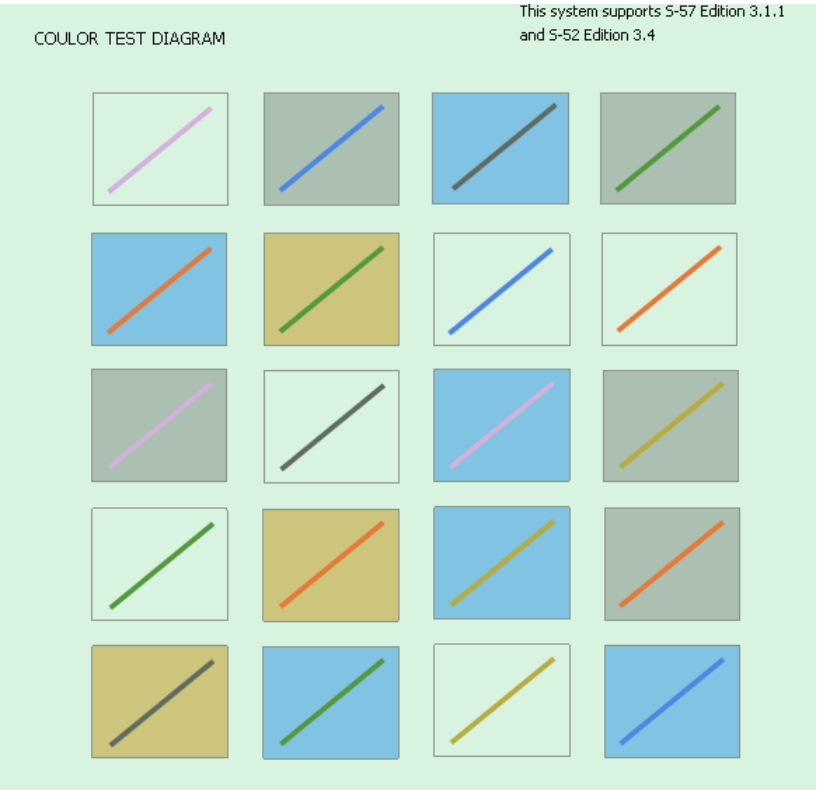


Figure 210 - Chart 1, screen 12

D EQUIPMENT THAT CAN BE INTERFACED WITH GECDIS

In general, all equipment conforming to the NMEA standard is compatible with Gecdis.

This appendix indicates all NMEA sentences managed by the software, the specific AIS compatibility, as well as various cases of NMEA extension and specific messages from different devices.

D.1 List of NMEA Sentences Used

NMEA	Description	Module*	Input	Output
ABK	AIS addressed and binary broadcast acknowledgement		x	
ABM	AIS addressed binary and safety related message			x
APA	Heading/track controller (autopilot) sentence A	IXMRoutes		x
APB	Heading/track controller (autopilot) sentence B	IXMRoutes		x
BBM	AIS broadcast binary message			x
BWC	Bearing and distance to waypoint – Great circle	IXMRoutes		x
BWR	Bearing and distance to waypoint – Rhumb line	IXMRoutes		x
DBT	Depth below transducer		x	
DBK	Depth below keel		x	
DBS	Depth below surface		x	
DPT	Depth		x	x
DTM	Datum reference		x	
HDG	Heading, deviation and variation		x	
HDM	Heading, magnetic		x	
HDT	Heading, true		x	x
HSC	Heading steering command	IXMRoutes		x
HTC	Heading/track control command	IXMRoutes		x
GGA	Global positioning system (GPS) fix data		x	x
GLL	Geographic position – Latitude/longitude		x	x
GNS	GNSS fix data		x	
GSA	GNSS DOP and active satellites		x	
GST	GNSS pseudorange noise statistics		x	
MDA	Meteorological composite		x	
MHU	Humidity		x	
MMB	Barometer		x	
MTA	Air temperature		x	
MTW	Water temperature		x	
MWD	Wind direction and speed		x	
MWV	Wind speed and angle		x	
PWP	Past waypoint information (iXBlue private sentence)	IXMRoutes		x

NMEA	Description	Module*	Input	Output
OSD	Own ship data		x	x
RMB	Recommended minimum navigation information	IXMRoutes		x
RMC	Recommended minimum specific GNSS data		x	x
ROT	Rate of turn		x	x
RPM	Revolutions		x	
RSA	Rudder sensor angle		x	
RSD	Radar system data		x	
RTE	Routes	IXMRoutes	x	x
SSD	AIS ship static data			x
THS	True heading and status		x	
TLL	Target latitude and longitude		x	x
TTM	Tracked target message		x	x
VBW	Dual ground/water speed		x	x
VDM	AIS VHF data-link message (see D.2)		x	
VDO	AIS VHF data-link own-vessel report (see D.2)		x	
VDR	Set and drift		x	x
VHW	Water speed and heading		x	x
VLW	Dual ground/water distance		x	
VSD	AIS voyage static data			x
VTG	Course over ground and ground speed		x	x
VWR	Relative (apparent) wind speed and angle		x	
VWT	True wind speed and angle		x	
WCV	Waypoint closure velocity	IXMRoutes		x
WPL	Waypoint location	IXMRoutes	x	x
XTE	Cross-track error, measured	IXMRoutes		x
ZDA	Time and date		x	x
ZLZ	Time of day		x	
ZZU	Time, UTC		x	

* Other than IXMIoMobile.

D.2 List of binary AIS Messages Used

Here is the list of binary AIS messages encapsulated in the sentence NMEA VDM/VDO used in Gecdis.

ITU-R M1371 message number	Description
1, 2, 3	Position reports
4	Base station report
5	Ship static and voyage related data
6	Addressed binary message

ITU-R M1371 message number	Description
8	Binary broadcast message
9	Standard SAR aircraft position report
11	UTC and date response
12	Addressed safety related message
14	Safety related broadcast message
18	Standard Class B equipment position report
19	Extended Class B equipment position report
21	Aids-to-navigation (AtoN) report
24	Static data report

D.3 Fleet: Mobile, Buoy, Target

This chapter presents the different equipments for managing mobile fleets.

D.3.1 Summary Table

Format / Manufacturer	Sentence type	Module	Mobile type			Timeout*
			Buoy	Target	Mobile	
ARGOS	BAP	IXMIoFormatEx			x	-
ARGOS	DR	IXMIoFormatEx			x	15 min
AUSSAGUEL	Position report	IXMIoFormatEx			x	-
DSNP	Syletrack N2	IXMIoFormatEx			x	5 min
FURUNO	FAR2800 serie	IXMIoFormatEx		x		5 min
LHG	Position report	IXMIoFormatEx			x	-
NMEA	$--TLL	IXMIoMobile		x		30 s
NMEA	$--TTM	IXMIoMobile		x		30 s
NMEA	!--VDM	IXMIoMobile			x	15 min
NMEA++	$PKHUN	IXMIoMobile		x		5 min
NMEA++ / IESM	$--BSC	IXMIoMobile	x			-
NMEA++ / iXSea	$PTSAG	IXMIoMobile			x	5 min
NMEA++ / Kelvin Hughes	$PRTGT	IXMIoMobile		x		5 min
NMEA++ / Ryokuseisha	$PRBY	IXMIoMobile	x			-
SATLINK	BAP	IXMIoFormatEx	x			-
XML	Mobile	IXMIoMobile	x	x	x	15 min

* The timeout value is the default delay from which in case of non-receipt of a new sentence for a mobile previously acquired, it is automatically deleted.

Important

NMEA++ PTSAG: PLEASE NOTE THAT THIS OWNER SENTENCE CAN EITHER BE USED FOR DECODING IXSEA GAPS MOBILE OR EITHER OF THE GEONET TRAWL NET (SEE D.4.4 AND D.4.5)

D.3.2 NMEA Information Table

Unlike XML-Mobile format that is open, the data acquired through the NMEA frames are etched in stone.

Here is a summary of the various informations and settings managed on a mobile based NMEA formats and derivatives.

Informations	TLL	TTM	VDM	*PKHUN*	*BSC*	*PTSAG*	*PRTGT*	*PRBY*
Name	x	x	x	x				
Sizes (length, beam, conning offsets)			x					
Symbol & color				x				
ID type	num	num	MMSI	num	num	num	num	num
Mobile type	target	target	x	target	buoy		target	buoy
State	x	x	x					
Geo. position	x	c	x	x or c	x	x	c	x
Geo. accuracy			x					
Sensor type			x					
SOG, COG	c	c	x	x	c	c	x	c
Bearing, distance	c	x	c	x	c	c	x	c
CPA, TCPA	c	x	c	x	c	c	x	c
Water temp.					x			x
Battery voltage					x			x
Submersion						x		
Altitude			x					

- x, acquired value
- c, computed value
- num, numeric value

D.3.3 AIS-VDM Complementary Information Table

Here is a summary of the different information from only the sentence AIS-VDM.

Navigation	Property	Track keeping
True heading	IMO number	Final destination
Rate of turn	Call sign	Final ETA
Draught	RAIM	
Navigation status	AIS version	
	AIS mobile class	

D.3.4 IXMIoFormatEx Module Information Table

Here is a summary of information from different formats supported by IXMIoFormatEx module.

Informations	ARGOS BAP	ARGOS DR	AUSSAGUEL Pos. report	DSNP Syletrack	FURUNO FAR2000	LHG Pos. rep.	SATLINK BAP
ID type	num	num	num	num	num	call sign	num
Mobile type	mobile		mobile	mobile	target	mobile	buoy
State					x		
Geo. position	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
SOG, COG	c	x	x	x	x	c	c
Bearing, distance	c		c	c	x	c	c
CPA, TCPA	c		c	c	x	c	c
Water temp.							x
Battery voltage							x
True heading						x	
SOW						x	

- x, acquired value
- c, computed value
- num, numeric value

D.4 System, Own Ship and Trawl Net

This chapter presents the different equipments for managing system, own ship and trawl net informations.

The tables summarize the different possible sources of information. The ranking of sentences indicates the priority if multiple automatic reception.

For software column, here are the abbreviations:

- c, calculated value
- e, estimated value
- m, maintained value at a regular rate
- s, software value

The software-only informations are not presented here.

D.4.1 System Information

This information is related to the overall system.

Informations	Soft.	NMEA	NMEA++	IXMIoFormatEx
Stream datum		DTM		
UTC	s m	ZDA ZLZ ZZU GGA GNS RMC GLL VDM VDO	iXSea: $PIXSE,TIME__ iXSea: $PIXSE,HSPOS_	MARELEC: # MA DD
Time lag	e s	ZDA		
Radar cursor		RSD		

D.4.2 Own Ship System Information

This information which the sensors are usually only can be inherited across all own ships.

Informations	Soft.	NMEA	NMEA++	IXMIoFormatEx
Rudder (centre, starboard and port)	e	RSA		
Propeller pitch (centre, starboard and port)	e	RPM		
Propeller speed (centre, starboard and port)	e	RPM		
Wind speed (true) *Wind bearing (true)*	e s	MWD MWV VWT MDA		
Wind speed (apparent) *Wind bearing (apparent)*	e s	MWV VWR		
Water temperature	e	MTW MDA		CHAUVIN ARNOUX: Thermometer
Air temperature	e	MTA MDA		CHAUVIN ARNOUX: Thermometer
Barometric pressure	e	MDA MMB		
Absolute humidity	e	MDA MHU		
Registration	e			
Picture	e			
Draught	e	VDO		
MMSI	e	VDO		

Informations	Soft.	NMEA	NMEA++	IXMIoFormatEx
Call sign	e	VDO		
IMO number	e	VDO		
Mobile type	e	VDO		
Navigation status	e	VDO		
AIS version		VDO		
Off-Position	e	VDO		
Position sensor	e	VDO		
Final ETA		VDO		
Final destination		VDO		

D.4.3 **Own Ship Information**

Informations	Soft.	NMEA	NMEA++	IXMIoFormatEx
Position	e m	GGA GNS RMC GLL VDO	iXSea: $PIXSE,POSITI iXSea: $PIXSE,GPSIN_ iXSea: $PIXSE,GP2IN_ iXSea: $PIXSE,USBIN_ iXSea: $PIXSE,HSPOS_ THALES: $PRPS,POSL,001 THALES: $PRPS,POSL,002 THALES: $PRPS,POSL,003 THALES: $PRPS,POSL,004	
SOG *COG*	s	RMC VTG VBW OSD VDO	iXSea: $PIXSE,SPEED_	
SOW	e	VBW OSD VHW		
True heading	e s	THS HDT HDG OSD VHW HDM VDO	JRC: $PJRCD iXSea: $PIXSE,HSATIT	GEM: Microtecnica gryo
Leeway angle	e	VBW OSD		
Drift speed & course	e s	VDR OSD		
Depth	e s	DPT DBS DBK DBT	iXSea: $PIXSE,HSPOS_ SEASCAN: $PSAP	

Informations	Soft.	NMEA	NMEA++	IXMIoFormatEx
Height of tide	e s			
Submersion	e	GGA GNS	iXSea: $PIXSE,POSITI iXSea: $PIXSE,GPSIN_ iXSea: $PIXSE,GP2IN_ iXSea: $PIXSE,USBIN_	
Altitude	e	GGA GNS VDO	iXSea: $PIXSE,POSITI iXSea: $PIXSE,GPSIN_ iXSea: $PIXSE,GP2IN_ iXSea: $PIXSE,USBIN_	
Swaying speed & course	e s			
ROT	m	ROT VDO		
Rolling *Pitching*	e		PHOTONETICS: $PHTRO JRC: $PJRCD iXSea: $PIXSE,ATITUD iXSea: $PIXSE,HSATIT	
Heaving			iXSea: $PHLIN iXSea: $PIXSE,HEAVE_ iXSea: $PIXSE,HSATIT	
Log (distance on water)	m	VLW		
Log (daily)	e m	VLW		
Run distance	m	VLW		
Run distance (daily)	e m	VLW		
Roughness	e		SEASCAN: $PSAP	
Hardness	e		SEASCAN: $PSAP JRC: $PJRCS	
Status (target)	e			
Battery voltage	e			
Horizontal accuracy	e	GST GSA GGA GNS	iXSea: $PIXSE,HSPOS_ iXSea: $PIXSE,STDPOS	
Vertical accuracy	e	GST GSA	iXSea: $PIXSE,HSPOS_ iXSea: $PIXSE,STDPOS	

D.4.4 Trawl Net Information

Informations	Soft.	NMEA	NMEA++	IXMIoFormatEx
Position	s		GEONET: $PTSAG GEONET: $PTSAL SIMRAD ITI: TPT SIMRAD ITI: TPR	
Warp length	e		MARELEC: $MA SIMRAD ITI: WWL	MARELEC: # MA DD
Submersion	e s	DBS	GEONET: $PTSAG GEONET: $PTSAL SIMRAD: $PSIMP SIMRAD ITI: TPT SIMRAD ITI: TPR SIMRAD ITI: DBS	
Horizontal spread	e		GEONET: $PTSAG GEONET: $PTSAN SCANMAR: TDS SIMRAD: $PSIMP SIMRAD ITI: TDS	
Vertical spread	e		SCANMAR: HBF SIMRAD ITI: HFB	
Rolling	e		GEONET: $PTSAG	
Water temperature	e	MTW	GEONET: $PTSAN SIMRAD: $PSIMP	CHAUVIN ARNOUX: Thermometer

D.4.5 GEONET Trawl Net

For the implementation, select the NMEA++ - $PTSAG (iXSea) source in the properties of the trawl net relevant informations previously added, namely:

- Position, corresponding to the central position of the mouth of the trawl net, this value is calculated from the ground cable length, port and starboard positions decoded frames, and its previous value (which gives the impression that it takes above and improves its stability). Note: a shift set to the position reproduces the three values of the net positions (center, port and starboard).
- Submersion, corresponding to the average of port and starboard submersions.
- Horizontal spread, corresponding to the distance between the projected onto the perpendicular to the direction of the otter boards.
- Rolling, calculated from the port and starboard submersions.

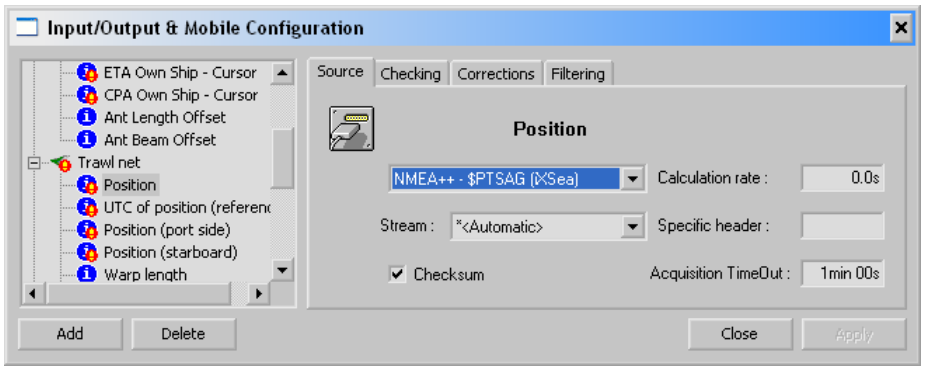


Figure 211 - GEONET Trawl position configuration

In addition, certain information must be present or recommended:

- Position (port side), necessarily software and required for proper operation.
- Position (starboard), necessarily software and required for proper operation.
- Eccentricity, necessarily software, this information corresponds to the deviation from the ship's route.
- SOG, necessarily software.
- COG, necessarily software.
- Vertical spread, estimated for a representation in the 3D view.

Normally, the time stamp in the sentence is not present, the information is then stamped with the UTC time Gecdis when decoding.

Do not forget to configure the trawl, particularly ground cable length.

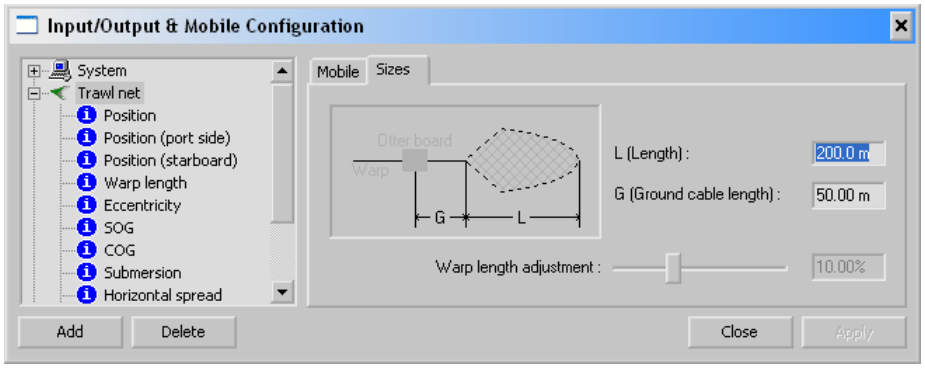


Figure 212 - Trawl net sizes configuration

On the other hand, if the jumps are recorded on certain information must activate their filtering, such as the geographical position (in this case, we must think also filter the horizontal spread).

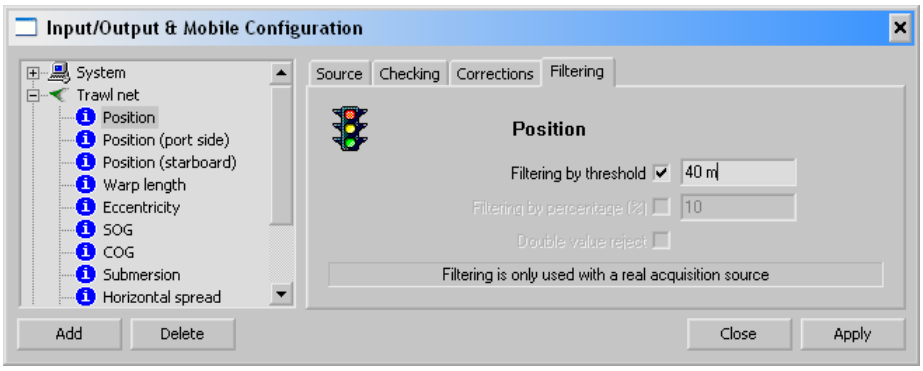


Figure 213 - Trawl net filtering

Note: To highlight the filtering on the following examples, a GAPS fleet has been added in addition to the trawl net which allows you to view the trail on the panels (green).

Before filtering, we note two jumps, one on the starboard panel (mobile one), and the center position (orange):

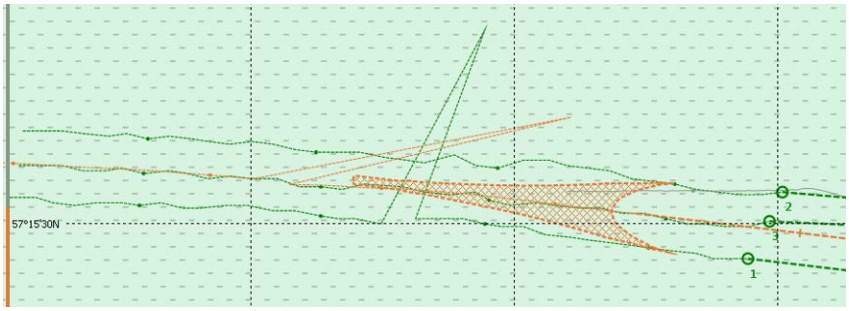


Figure 214 - Before filtering

After filtering, there is only one jump, the mobile fleet one of the GAPS (unfiltered). Orange center trace was not deflected.

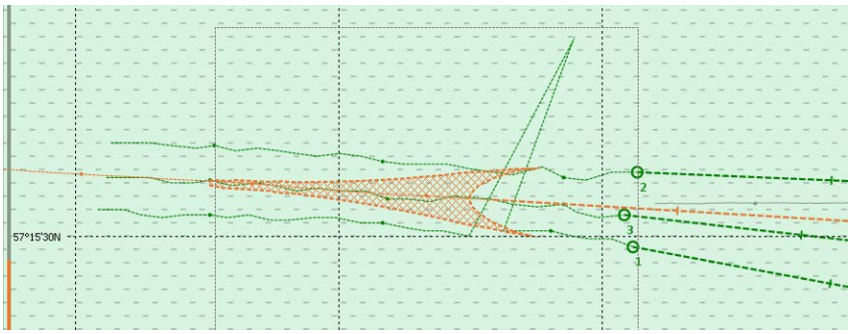


Figure 215 - After filtering

E SHIP OUTLINE

The file describing the ship's outline includes the key words used to identify the different ship's parameters followed by their values. The parameters are delimited with square brackets '**[**' and '**]**'. It is highly important to respect the parameters orders.

The ship is always represented with the stem (bow) on top. X axis is incremented to the right, Y axis to the top.

The couple of points (0,0) is used as marker reference and is located in order to get the most perfect symmetry of the ship's outline and make the shipbuilding easier.

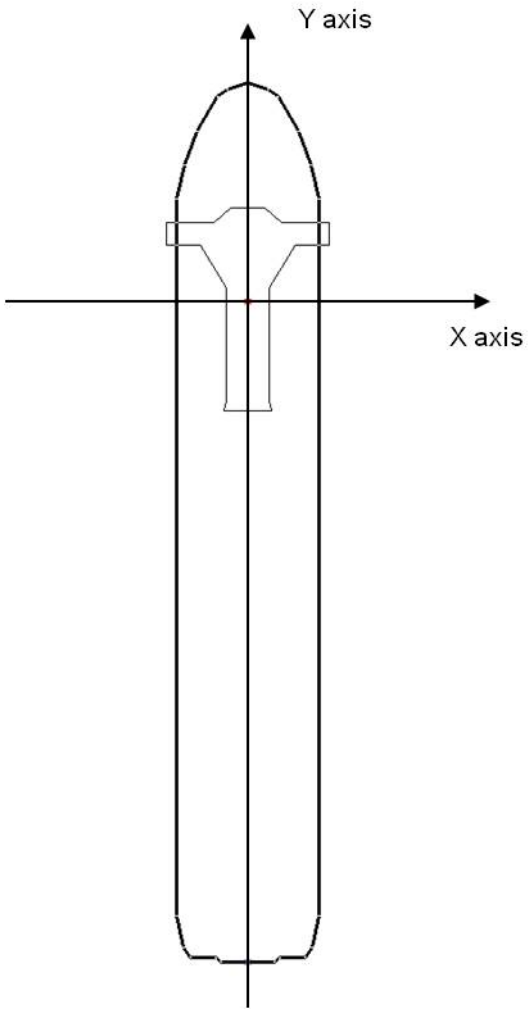
It is not necessary to take the **Sensor one** point (GPS antenna) as the marker origin.

Make sure that the lines are well closed to get a nice shape: the first and the last couple of points are identical. Be careful when defining XY values, since too small values can stop the ship's outline display (since the display depends on the scale).

- **REM**: comments or notes indicating the source file. This line is then ignored by the compiler. You can add comments/notes or empty lines (to space out the document) anywhere in the file.
- **Unit**: reference unit for the values. Three possibilities: **meter**, **fathom** and **foot**. Repect the syntax.
- **Sensor one**: position of the conning. This position is expressed according to the marker's couple of points (0,0).
- **Stern (rear track)**: not used but must be present.
- **Depth sensor position**: not used but must be present.
- **Point for event mark**: not used but must be present.
- **HULL**: defines the different vectors of the ship's hull. Be sure the shape is closed by repeating the first point into the last point.
- **DECK**: different vectors defining the ship's deck. Be sure the shape is closed by repeating the first point into the last point. You don't need to define the points for the deck, but the key word "DECK" must be written.
- **END**: end of the source file. Be sure you have not forgotten this key word since it is used to delimit the DECK.

See below an example of the file. The drawing is the representation of the values given in the file:

```
REM Nom du navire.

Unit(metre,fathom,foot)   [metre]

REM                         X        Y
Sensor one                [  0.0] [   0.0]
Stern (rear track)        [  0.0] [-121.6]
Depth sensor position     [  0.0] [   0.0]
Point for event mark      [  0.0] [   0.0]

HULL (100 pts maxi)  1 [  0.0] [  40.2]
                     2 [  3.7] [  39.0]
                     3 [  5.6] [  37.7]
                     4 [  9.3] [  31.4]
                     5 [ 11.6] [  25.1]
                     6 [ 13.0] [  18.8]
                     7 [ 13.0] [   0.0]
                     8 [ 13.0] [-113.1]
                     9 [ 11.8] [-118.7]
                    10 [ 10.5] [-120.6]
                    11 [  5.9] [-120.6]
                    12 [  5.0] [-121.6]
                    13 [  0.0] [-121.6]
                    14 [ -5.0] [-121.6]
                    15 [ -5.9] [-120.6]
                    16 [-10.5] [-120.6]
                    17 [-11.8] [-118.7]
                    18 [-13.0] [-113.1]
                    19 [-13.0] [   0.0]
                    20 [-13.0] [  18.9]
                    21 [-11.6] [  25.1]
                    22 [ -9.3] [  31.4]
                    23 [ -5.6] [  37.7]
                    24 [ -3.7] [  39.0]
                    25 [  0.0] [  40.2]

DECK (50 pts maxi)   1 [  0.0] [  17.3]
                     2 [  3.1] [  17.3]
                     3 [  6.2] [  14.5]
                     4 [ 14.9] [  14.5]
                     5 [ 14.9] [  10.4]
                     6 [  8.7] [  10.4]
                     7 [  3.9] [   2.5]
                     8 [  3.9] [ -18.2]
                     9 [  4.3] [ -20.1]
                    10 [  0.0] [ -20.1]
                    11 [ -4.3] [ -20.1]
                    12 [ -3.9] [ -18.2]
                    13 [ -3.9] [   2.5]
                    14 [ -8.7] [  10.4]
                    15 [-14.9] [  10.4]
                    16 [-14.9] [  14.4]
                    17 [ -6.2] [  14.4]
                    18 [ -3.1] [  17.3]
                    19 [  0.0] [  17.3]

END
```



Index

A

acquisition timeout 113, 114
Active window 47
adding
  piece of information 112
  UDP stream 103
Adding a COM port 101
adding a user 38
Adding information to a mobile 111
air draught 98
AIS mobiles 88
AIS pilot 110
Alarm window 63
Alarms
  configuration 37
Allowed CPA 78
altitude 98
apparent wind 99
Apparent wind 73
ARPA mobiles 88
atténuation vidéo 224

B

Bearing line 174
Bearing range line 174
Black box 64
bridge height 99

C

calculation rate 113
centring
  mobile 78
Centring
  adding a place 58
  editing a place 58
  on a place 57
  on any mobile 59
  on Own Ship 59
  removing a place 58
CFAR 224
Channel view 69
Chart 2 view 68
chart area 315
chart database 128
chart loading modes 136
Chart overview 68
charted depth 98
checking sentences 109
Checking tab 113
ckecksum 107
Clearing line 175
  deleting 177
  editing 176
  moving 177
  no more 176
  rotating 177
COG 73, 97
Colour mode
  change 55
  configuration 30
COM port 100
  adding and configuring 101
compilation scale 312
Configuration
  miscellaneous tab 43
  users' rights 39
configuring
  UDP stream 103
Configuring a COM port 101
configuring information 112
configuring system information 94
Conning position 114, 312
CONTACT 310
Control port 223
corrupted data 312
Course make good 72
coverage 312
COW 72, 97
CPA 78
creating a fleet 111
creating a mobile 110
Current drift 72
Cursor 17
cusor
  information 95

D

Datum
  configuration 34
  horizontal 315
  vertical 319
Dead reckoning 120
deep contour 313
deep soundings 313
DENC
  default configuration 127
depth 98
depth below keel 98
display base 313
Display context 69
  creating 70
  deleting 71
  selecting 70
display scale 313
draught 98
drift course 98
drift speed 97
Dynamic fleet 110

E

EBL 175
ECDIS 314

elapsed time from acq....114
elapsed time from refresh....114
ENC....314
database content....128

F

filtering
applying....116
percentage....116
threshold....116
Filtering tab....115
fixing the position of a ship....121
fleet
creating....111
specific appearance....90
Fleet....110
dynamic....110
static....111
FTC....224

G

Gecdis
launch....5
Gecdis
installation....2
uninstallation....4
Gecdis....1
Gecdis
close....5
Geographic calculations....177
Glossary....311

H

height of tide....98

I

information
Checking tab....113
configuring....112
correction tab....114
filtering tab....115
Source tab....112
Information
adding....111
Information windows....14, 51
access to modify....51
adding information....53
isobath....315

L

leeway angle....97
Leeway angle....72
Leeway track....72
list of mobiles
opening....77
List of mobiles....76
log....99

M

Man over board....20
manual autopilot....204
Mark template....215
Menu bar....11
Minimum TCPA....78
MOB....20
mobile....109
acquired....110
centring....78
creating....110
dead reckoned....110
hiding....77
label....85
past track....86
specific appearance....90
symbol....85
symbols....92
vectors....86
Mobile
dead reckoning....120
mobile and sensor synthesis....117
Mobile appearance....84
Mobile list....76
mobiles
kind of....109
Mobiles
AIS....88
ARPA....88
Mobiles alarms....78

N

Navigation tasks....25
NMEA....94

O

objet cartographique
suppression....142
objet ponctuel cartographique....142
opening a session....40
outline filename....74
overscale....316
Overview....10
Own Ship
alarms....78
Own Ship....19, 74
assign....74
sizes....74
Own Ship alarms
anti-collision....78
inconsistent depths....80
inconsistent positions....79
Own Ship characteristics....74

P

past track....86
piece of information
adding....112
pilot to one waypoint....204
Pilot view....69

Piloting fix 179
pitching 98
Planning a route 25
position
  bow 97
  conning 97
  mobile 97
  reference 97
  stern 97
positioning adjustment 115
presentation library 316
Presentation Library 148
profile
  track 211

Q

quality of data 317

R

range 224
rate of turn 98
recalage 180
Relative wind 73
RENC 317
rolling 98
Route
  calculation 26
  planning 25

S

safety contour 317
SAR
  parallel route 185
  sector route 184
  square spiral route 183
SAR diagrams 182
Scale 54
SCAMIN 85
Screen
  details 10
  size 30
sea slope 223
security 149
SENC 318
Sensitivity Time Control 224
sentences
  checking 109
Sentences
  transmission 107
Server IP 223
Session
  opening 40
shallow contour 318
Shortcut keys 6
Sizes of the Own Ship 74
SOG 73, 97
Source tab 112
SOW 72, 97
specific appearance 90
specific header 113
Static fleet 111
STC 224
steering course autopilot 204
stream
  UDP 103
Stream
  file 105
  TCP 103
Streams 100
  spying 106
submersion 98
swaying course 98
swaying speed 98
symbols 92
system (information) 94
system information
  configuration 94

T

talker 108
TCP 103
TCPA 78
time zone 94
Toolbar 35
  inserting a button 35
Tooltips
  configuration 46
track
  profile 211
Trackball 9
true heading 97
true wind 99
True wind 73
TurboWin mode 48
Tx Delay 224

U

UDP 101
UDP stream 101
User
  adding 38
User interface
  configuration 45
Users 38
Users' rights 39
UTC 94
UTC of reference position 97

V

vectors 86
View menu 67
Voyage planning 25
VRM 175

W

Warranty v

Z

zone
  création (S57) 144